HARPER'S HISTORICAL SERIES

HISTORY OF ENGLAND

10.00 5.00

shut door

shut door

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2026

https://archive.org/details/historyofengland0000john_t8c4

ENGLAND
AND HER DEPENDENCIES
Spitzbergen
Nova Zembla
GREENLAND
Baffin Bay
Davis St.
ALASKA
DOMINION OF CANADA
Behring Sea
Sitka
Q. Charlotte Is.
Aleutitin Is.
Vancouver I.
Hudson Bay
Iceland
Faroe Is.
NORWAY
SWEDEN
RUSSIAN EMPIRE
Kamtchatka
Aleutian Is.
BRITISH ISLES
DEN.
GERM.
AUST.
FRANCE
Newfoundland
Nova Scotia
MONGOLIA
Kurile Is.
San Francisco
UNITED STATES
New York
Azores
PORTUGAL
SPAIN
IT.
Gibraltar
Madeira
Canary Is.
ALG.
MAR.
TRIP.
Malta
TURKEY
PERSIA
JAPAN
PACIFIC
Bermudas
Bahamas
Cuba
West India
Jamaica Is.
C Verd Is.
Sandwich Is.
MEXICO
Sahara
EGYPT
TIBET
CHINA
INDIA
Bonin Is.
Formosa
Hong Kong
Philippine Is.
Caroline Is.
PACIFIC
Trinidad
Gambia
S. LEONE
GENE M.
S. B.W.
Perim
Aden
Andaman I.
Nicobar
Ceylon
Laccadive Is.
Seychelles
Laccadive Is.
Malay
Singapore
Celebes
Molucca
New Guinea
Galapagos
Amazon
Gold Coast
Ascension
ATLANTIC OCEAN
INDIAN OCEAN
Navigators
Marquesas
Tahiti
Fiji
New Caledonia
BRAZIL
St. Helena
Java
Keeling Is.
Madagascar
Mauritius
Bourbon
Amirante Is.
New Hebrides
Fiji
New Caledonia
Norfolk I.
OCEAN
Easter I.
Juan Fernandez
Rio de Janeiro
Rio de la Plata
Cape Colony
Natal
N. Amsterdam
St. Paul
AUSTRALIA
W.A.
S.A.
N.S.W.
NEW ZEALAND
Chatham
Tristan da Cunha
Kerguelen I.
Crozet Is.
Tasmania
New Zealand
Chatham
Stewart I.
Auckland
Falkland Is
Staten I.

A

SCHOOL HISTORY

OF

ENGLAND,

ILLUSTRATED WITH MANY ENGRAVINGS, AND A SERIES OF COLORED PROGRESSIVE MAPS SHOWING THE GEOGRAPHICAL CHANGES OF THE COUNTRY AT DIFFERENT PERIODS.

A NEW EDITION, THOROUGHLY REVISED AND GREATLY IMPROVED.

BY

JOHN J. ANDERSON, PH.D.

Author of a "New Grammar School History of the United States," a "Popular School History of the United States," a "History of France," a "New Manual of General History," "The Historical Reader," "The United States Reader," etc., etc.

NEW YORK:

MAYNARD, MERRILL, & CO., PUBLISHERS,

29, 31 & 33 EAST 19TH STREET.

1897.

tion with the portions of the text which they are designed to explain, illustrate, or expand ; and new engravings, taken from trustworthy sources, have been liberally supplied, and placed as near as possible to the matter illustrated. The publishers trust their efforts to enhance the usefulness of this well-known and successful text-book will find a cordial acceptance as well as a general appreciation and patronage.

NEW YORK, *July* 1, 1889.

MAPS.

		PAGE
1.	England and her Dependencies	*Frontispiece.*
2.	Roman Britain (*Progressive Map No.* 1)	*Facing* 15
3.	Settlements of the Saxons and Angles (*Progressive Map No.* 2)	*Facing* 28
4.	Saxon England (*Progressive Map No.* 3)	*Facing* 39
5.	Environs of London	41
6.	France and the Neighboring Countries	73
7.	Dominions of the Angevins	96
8.	Christian Kingdoms of Syria and Palestine	103
9.	England in the time of the Wars of the Roses (*Progressive Map No.* 4)	*Facing* 146
10.	Great Britain (Modern) (*Progressive Map No.* 5)	*Facing* 172
11.	Southern Europe (*Progressive Map No.* 6)	*Facing* 219
12.	Ireland	271
13.	British India	305
14.	The Crimea	358

GENEALOGICAL TABLES.

		PAGE
1.	Of the Saxon and Danish Kings	70
2.	Of the Norman Kings	93
3.	Of the Plantagenets	144
4.	Of the Lancastrian and York Families	169
5.	Of the Tudor Family	217
6.	Of the Stuart Family	291
7.	Of the Brunswick Kings	391

CONTENTS.

PAGE

INTRODUCTION 7

I. Geography of the British Isles (7) ; II. Origin of the English language (9) ; III. Legendary history of Britain (10) ; Topical review (14).

PART I.—ANCIENT BRITAIN.

SECTION I.—BRITAIN UNDER THE ROMANS 15

The Britons (18) ; Progress of civilization (25).

SECTION II.—BRITAIN UNDER THE SAXONS 28

Character of the Saxons (32) ; Union of the Heptarchy, and foundation of the kingdom of England (34) ; Anglo-Saxon literature (34) ; Topical review (37).

PART II.—ENGLAND IN THE MIDDLE AGES.

SECTION I.—THE ANGLO-SAXON AND DANISH KINGS 39

Egbert (39) ; Ethelwolf (41) ; Ethelbald and Ethelbert (42) ; Ethelred (42) ; Alfred the Great (43) ; Edward the Elder (47) ; Athelstan (48) ; Edmund (49) ; Edred (49) ; Edwy (49) ; Edgar (50) ; Edward the Martyr (51) ; Ethelred II. (52) ; Edmund Ironside (55). THE DANISH KINGS—Canute (56) ; Harold I. (58) ; Hardicanute (59). SAXON KINGS RESTORED—Edward the Confessor (60) ; Harold II. (64) ; State of society among the Anglo-Saxons (66) ; Chronological recapitulation of the Saxon and Danish kings (70) ; Genealogical table of the Saxon kings (70) ; Topical review (71).

SECTION II.—THE NORMAN FAMILY 72

William I. (72) ; William II. (79) ; Henry I. (81) ; Stephen (84) ; State of society under the Norman kings (86) ; Chronological recapitulation (93) ; Genealogical table of the Norman kings (93) ; Topical review (94).

SECTION III.—THE PLANTAGENETS 95

Henry II. (95) ; Richard I. (102) ; John (106) ; Henry III. (111) ; Edward I. (114) ; Edward II. (122) ; Edward III. (126) ; Richard II. (134) ; State of society under the Plantagenets (138) ; Chronological recapitulation (143) ; Genealogical table of the Plantagenets (144) ; Topical review (144).

PAGE

SECTION IV.—THE HOUSES OF YORK AND LANCASTER..... 146
Henry IV. (146); Henry V. (148); Henry VI. (151); Edward IV. (157); Edward V. (160); Richard III. (161); State of society under the houses of York and Lancaster (164); Chronological recapitulation (168); Genealogical table of the Lancastrian and York families (169); Topical review (170).

PART III.—MODERN ENGLAND.

SECTION I.—THE TUDOR FAMILY..... 171
Henry VII. (171); Henry VIII. (175); Edward VI. (189); Mary (194); Elizabeth (198); State of society under the Tudors (208); Chronological recapitulation (216); Genealogical table of the Tudors (217); Topical review (217).

SECTION II.—THE STUART FAMILY..... 219
James I. (219); Charles I. (226); The commonwealth (243); Richard Cromwell (250); Charles II. (251); James II. (262); William and Mary (269); William III. (274); Anne (275); State of society under the Stuarts (280); Chronological recapitulation (289); Genealogical table of the Stuarts (291); Topical review (292).

SECTION III.—THE HOUSE OF BRUNSWICK..... 293
George I. (293); George II. (296); Conquests in India (304); George III. (308); State of society under the first three Brunswick kings (332); George IV. (344); William IV. (348); Victoria (351); State of society since the accession of George IV. (380); Chronological recapitulation (389); Genealogical table of the house of Brunswick (391); Topical review (391); Table of the Sovereigns of England..... 394

APPENDIX.

I. THE BRITISH CONSTITUTION..... 1
II. GENERAL VIEW OF THE BRITISH EMPIRE..... 4
GENERAL INDEX..... 15

INTRODUCTION.

I. GEOGRAPHY OF THE BRITISH ISLES.

1. The British Isles lie between the 49th and 61st degrees of north latitude, and the 2d of east and the 11th of west longitude. The largest of these, *Great Britain*, comprising the three countries, England, Wales, and Scotland, contains nearly 90,000 square miles, or nearly twice the area of the State of New York. Its entire population, according to the census of 1881, was about thirty millions. Ireland, lying to the west of Great Britain, contains about 32,500 square miles, and in 1881 had a population of about five millions.

Population.

2. These countries are now divided into counties, or *shires*, of which England has 40, Wales 12, Scotland 33, and Ireland 32. The Romans divided the island of Britain into five provinces: viz., 1. *Britannia Prima*, situated south of the Thames and the Severn rivers; 2. *Britannia Secunda*, now Wales (nearly); 3. *Flavia Cæsarien'sis* (Flavia Cæsarian province), situated to the north of the Thames, east of the Severn, and south of the Mersey and Humber rivers; 4. *Maxima Cæsariensis* (the great Cæsarian province), extending from the Mersey and the Humber as far as the wall of Hadrian, or Severus; and 5. *Valentia* (from the emperor Valens), situated between the wall of Hadrian, or Severus, and the rampart of Agricola. The region to the north of Valentia was called by the Romans *Caledonia* (from

Divisions.

Questions. **1.** How are the British Isles situated? What does Great Britain comprise? Its extent? Population? Extent and population of Ireland?

2. How are these countries divided? Roman divisions of Britain? Situation of each? Caledonia? Municipal towns? Colonies?

a word meaning people of the woods). The municipal towns were *Ebor'acum* (York) and *Verula'mium* (St. Albans). There were nine colonies, the chief of which were *Londinium* (London), *Aquæ Solis* (Bath), *Deva* (Chester), and *Lindum* (Lincoln).

3. The first of these provinces became, after the Saxon conquest, Kent, Sussex, and Wessex; the second, North and South Wales; the third, Essex, Middlesex, East Anglia, and Mercia. East Anglia comprised Norfolk and Suffolk. The Great Cæsarian province became Northumbria, comprising Deira and Bernicia; and Valentia became Strathclyde, a British kingdom, and a part of the Saxon kingdom of Deira. Beyond the mainland of Scotland lie the Orkney Islands on the north, and the Hebrides on the west. These were scarcely known to the Romans, but in after time were occupied by the Northmen.

Provinces.

4. Ireland was never occupied by the Romans or the Saxons; but before its conquest by the English was divided into the five kingdoms of *Munster*, *Leinster*, *Meath*, *Ulster*, and *Connaught*. Four of these names are still preserved as the designations of provinces. Munster occupies the south and southwest; Leinster, the east; Connaught, the west; and Ulster, the north. Ireland was called by its ancient Celtic inhabitants *Ir*, *Eri*, and *Erin*; the Greeks called it I-er'nis or I-er'ne; and the Romans, Hibernia.* Its present name is doubtless derived from its ancient appellation.

Ireland.

* In the *Argonautica*, an ancient Greek poem, it is called *Iernis*; the ancient geographer Strabo mentions it under the name *Ierne*; Cæsar, Tacitus, and Pliny, Roman writers, call it *Hibernia*.

3. What did Britannia Prima comprise under the Saxons? Britannia Secunda? The Flavia Cæsarian Province? The Great Cæsarian Province? Valentia? What islands lie beyond? By whom were they occupied?

4. Ireland? Its ancient divisions? Modern provinces and their situation? Its ancient names? Greek and Roman names? Modern name?

II. ORIGIN OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE.

5. Before the Roman conquest of Britain, the language spoken was the Celtic, of which we still find many relics, in the names of places and things: as in Avon River (*avon*, a stream); Pen Mon, head of Mona Island (*pen*, a headland or mountain); Ben More, great mountain (*ben*, Gaelic for *pen*); Aberdeen, mouth of the Dee (*aber*, mouth); Carlisle, Cardiff, Cærnarvon (*car* or *cær*, a rock); Strathclyde (*strath*, a valley); Athlone (*ath*, a ford); Bangor, the great circle (*gor*, circle); and Cambridge, the bridge over the Cam (crooked river—*cam*, crooked). As examples of Celtic names of things we have *basket*, *cradle*, *cart*, and the Gaelic (Celtic used in Scotland), clan, claymore, kilt, plaid, whisky (*usque-baugh*, from *uisge*, water, and *beatha*, life).

Celtic Element.

6. In the four centuries during which the Romans held sway over the island a great deal of Latin became intermingled with the native speech, as in such words as *castra*, a camp, changed in the terminations of Man*chester*, West*chester*, Lan*caster*, Leic*ester*, and others; *stratum*, a street, as in Streatham, Stratford, etc.; *vallum*, a wall, as in Thirlwall; *fossa*, a moat, as in Fossbrooke, Fossway, etc.; *colonia*, a settlement, as in Colne, Colchester, and Lincoln; *portus*, a harbor, as in Portsmouth, Portway, etc. The incursions of the races from Norway and Denmark brought into the language the Scandinavian element, as in Ashby, Rugby, and Whitby (*by*, town); Althorpe (*thorpe*, village); Scarsfell (*fell*, mountain); Caithness (*ness*, nose, cape); Faroe, Chelsea, Ely, Anglesey (*oe*, *ey*, or *ea*, island); Greenwich, Ipswich, etc. (*wick* or *wich*, creek or bay).

Latin Element.

Scandinavian Element.

5. The Celtic language? Relics? Examples?

6. Latin element? Examples? Meaning of the terminations *caster*, *cester*, and *chester*? Scandinavian element? Examples?

7. After the Angles, Saxons, and other Teutonic tribes had fully established themselves in the island, the language became what is known as the Anglo-Saxon, which is the basis of our present English. The surviving Britons were called *Wealhas*, Welsh, foreigners. Hence the name of their portion of the island, Wales. These continued to use their own language, Cymric (*kim'ric*), a branch of the Celtic.* After the conquest by the Normans, the language underwent a further modification by the use of Norman French, a mixture of Teutonic, Celtic, and corrupt Latin.

Anglo-Saxon.

Norman French.

III. LEGENDARY HISTORY OF BRITAIN.

8. The early history of Britain, as of most other countries, consists of stories or legends, of the truth of which no satisfactory evidence can be adduced. Previous to the account of the inhabitants given by Cæsar, in his "Commentaries," nothing, as far as is known, was recorded of the events occurring among them. The Druids, indeed, prohibited such records as irreligious and unlawful. Therefore, as remarked by Milton, "from the first peopling of Britain to the coming of Julius Cæsar, there is nothing certainly known, either by tradition, history, or ancient fame."

Legends.

9. The old chroniclers, however, and particularly Geoffrey of Monmouth, give what purports to be the history of an almost uninterrupted series of events from the earliest ages down to the period of authentic history. According to these, the ancient inhabitants of the

Early History.

* The Celtic group of languages contains also Gaelic, in Scotland; Erse, in Ireland; Manx, in the Isle of Man; Cornish (now dead), in Cornwall, or West Wales; and Armorican or Breton, in Brittany, in France.

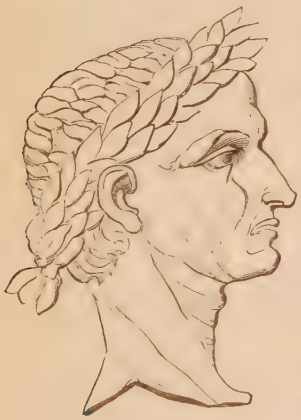
7. What language followed? Language of the Welsh? Norman French?
8. Early history of Britain? Early records?
9. What history is given of the early times? By whom? What is said of Brutus?

island, called Albion.* were a race of giants, who, being greatly reduced in number by the fierce wars which they waged among themselves, were finally subdued and destroyed by Brut, or Brutus, a Trojan prince, and a descendant of Æneas, who had fled to Italy from the ruins of Troy.

10. This Brutus divided Albion, which he found in a waste condition, among his own people, and built a great city on the Thames River, which he called New Troy. The time assigned for these events is the period of the Judges in Jewish history; and from that remote age, down to the coming of Cæsar, the long line of kings, descendants of Brutus, are given in this mythological history with great particularity, both as to dates and names. Among these was Bladud, who becoming a leper, and therefore being obliged to flee from his father's court, was cured by bathing in the hot springs of the Avon, where he afterward founded the city of Bath.

Brutus.

Bladud.



CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR.
(From a Roman Coin.)

11. The son and successor of this king was Lear, whose story forms the foundation of one of Shakspeare's greatest tragedies. According to the legend, this king, in his old age, in order to be relieved from the care and labor of government, divided his dominions between his

Lear.

* A Celtic word meaning *high* and *white land*, from *alb* or *alp*, as in the name Alps. Albion is the name by which Britain was known to the ancient Greeks and Romans, perhaps from the white cliffs on the southern shore (Dover cliffs), or as some think from the Highlands in the northwestern part.

10. What was done by Brutus? His successors? Bladud?
11. The legend of King Lear? At what period is it placed?

two daughters Gon'er-il and Re'gan, discarding his youngest daughter Cor-de'lia, because he thought she was wanting in affection for him, since her protestations of filial love were less vehement than those of her sisters. Cordelia, however, proved the more sincere; for the too indulgent father, having been treated with the basest ingratitude and unkindness by those whom he had endowed with his power and possessions, was finally compelled to seek a refuge with her whom he had disowned, and was by her and her husband, a Gaulish prince, restored to his throne. This reign is placed by the chroniclers in the sixth century before Christ.

12. Many years after this there reigned a king named *Lud*, who enlarged, and built walls around, the city of New Troy. After him it was called *Caerlud*, or *Lud's Town*, changed in course of time to *London*.* Lud is described as a brave and warlike monarch, genial in disposition, and festive in his habits; and hence is said to have been very popular. He was buried in a part of London, now called *Ludgate*. It was during the reign of his son, *Cas-sib'e-laun*,† as it is said, that the invasion of Cæsar took place; and among his later descendants was *Cu-nob'e-line*, or *Cymbeline* (*sim'be-lin* or *-line*), whose history forms the foundation of another of Shakspeare's plays.

Lud.

13. Such is the story of the Trojan kings of Britain, thoroughly believed in by many of the old writers, but evidently fictitious, being based, in part, upon names derived

* The first authentic notice of the existence of London occurs in the *Annals* of Tacitus, a Roman historian, who, in his account of the British campaign of the Roman general Suetonius (A. D. 61), remarks: "Suetonius marched through the heart of the country as far as London, a place not dignified with the name of *colony*, but the chief residence of merchants, and a great mart of trade and commerce."

† Also called Cassivelaunus. (See ¶ 3, p. 17.)

12. What is narrated of King Lud? During whose reign is Cæsar's invasion placed? What is said of Cymbeline?

13. What is remarked of these legends? Their antiquity and origin?

from a very different origin. The legend is, however, of very great antiquity. According to Sir Francis Palgrave, there is some reason to believe that the story of Brutus was invented by the bards, to gain favor with those who prided themselves on being descended from Æneas, the Trojan prince, and thus related to the kings of Rome. This, however, cannot be determined; but it is certainly more probable that the name of *Britain* gave rise to the story of Brutus than that the island received its ancient appellation from the name of that mythical prince.

Trojan Kings.

14. This legendary history, although now set aside as fabulous, did important service in the formation of the British character: and hence the people were wise in clinging as long as possible to their faith in those ennobling traditions. That proud ancestry, and the lofty achievements which were attributed, in the songs of the bards, to the early British race, inspired each succeeding generation with a love of brave exploits, a contempt of danger, and a lofty patriotism, which could be crushed out only after the nation had for centuries been trodden under the iron heel of the Roman invader.

Legendary History.

15. An attachment to the legends of the past seems to be an almost universal sentiment among mankind. Those shadowy periods, so dim and vague from their distance, are the chosen theater in which fancy delights to present her favorite characters and to enact her fondest dramas; and the charm with which these creations of the imagination are cherished, is the more powerful in proportion as they are contrasted with the sober and often repulsive scenes of real life and history. Hence, as remarked by a great historian, there are two distinct periods in the existence of every nation, —the age of *historical faith* and the age of *historical reason.*

14. Value of the legendary history? In what way was this influence exerted?

15. What leads to an attachment to the legends of the past? What two periods in a nation's history are referred to?

TOPICAL REVIEW.

[The numbers are those of the pages on which the topics are referred to. The letter *n* refers to a note upon the same subject.]

GEOGRAPHICAL.

Where were they situated?

(*See Progressive Map No.* 1.)

PAGE

Britannia Prima ... 7
Britannia Secunda ... 7
Flavia Cæsariensis ... 7
Maxima Cæsariensis ... 7
Valentia ... 7
Caledonia ... 7
Kent ... 8
Sussex ... 8
Wessex ... 8
North Wales ... 8
South Wales ... 8
Essex ... 8
Middlesex ... 8
East Anglia ... 8
  Norfolk ... 8
  Suffolk ... 8
Northumbria ... 8
  Deira ... 8
  Bernicia ... 8
Strathclyde ... 8
Orkney Islands ... 8
Hebrides ... 8
Ireland, or Hibernia ... 8
  Munster ... 8
  Leinster ... 8
  Meath ... 8
  Ulster ... 8
  Connaught ... 8
Eboracum, or York ... 8
Verulamium, or St. Albans ... 8
Aquæ Solis, or Bath ... 8
Deva, or Chester ... 8
Lindum, or Lincoln ... 8
Londinium, or London ... 8, 12 *n*
Thames River ... 11
New Troy ... 11
Caerlud ... 12
Ludgate ... 12

ETYMOLOGICAL.

From what is the word derived?
What is its literal meaning?

PAGE

Ireland ... 8 *n*
Avon River ... 9
Pen Mon ... 9
Ben More ... 9
Aberdeen ... 9
Carlisle ... 9
Cardiff ... 9
Caernarvon ... 9
Strathclyde ... 9
Athlone ... 9
Bangor ... 9
Cambridge ... 9
Manchester ... 9
Westchester ... 9
Lancaster ... 9
Fossbrooke ... 9
Portsmouth ... 9
Colchester ... 9
Lincoln ... 9
Ashby ... 9
Althorpe ... 9
Scarsfell ... 9
Caithness ... 9
Anglesey ... 9
Greenwich ... 9
Wales ... 10
Albion ... 11 *n*

LEGENDARY HISTORY.

Who were they?
With what legends connected?

The Trojan kings ... 11, 12
Brutus ... 11
Bladud ... 11
Lear ... 11
Lud ... 12
Cassibelaun ... 12
Cunobeline, or Cymbeline ... 12

No. 1.

ROMAN BRITAIN
Scale of Statute Miles
0 20 40 60
6 Long. W. 4 2 of Greenwich 0 2
58
56
54
52
CALEDONIA
Grampian Hills
Devana
Tava
Boderia
ROMAN WALL
OCEANUS GERMANICUS
VALENTIA
Clota
Bremenium
ROMAN WALL
Tina R.
Luguvallium
Ituna
MAXIMA CÆSARIENSIS
Catarractonium
Mona or Monaœda
HIBERNIA
OCEANUS HIBERNICUS
Coccium
Lancaster
EBORACUM
BRIGANTES
Cambodunum
Danum
Mancunium
LINDUM
Abus Fl.
Mona
DEVA
Segontium
Dovium
Uriconium
Metaris
Branodunum
FLAVIA CÆSARIENSIS
Rutæ
Venta Icenorum
Garianonum
PROVINCES
BRITANNIA SECUNDA
WATLING ST.
Magnis
CAMBORICUM ?
Menapia
DEMETARUM
Isca Silurum
Glevum
Corinium
VERULAMIUM
CATUVELLANI
TRINOBANTES
Othona
LONDINIUM
Tamesis
Regnlbium
OCEANUS VERGIVIUS
THERMÆ
Aquæ Solis
Stonehenge
Sorbiodunum
Durobrivæ
Catuvellorum
Verulamium
Durobrivæ
Antipolis
Deal
RHUTUPLE
Dubræ
BRITANNIA PRIMA
Portus Magnus
Portus Adurni?
Vectis I.
Portus Itius
GAUL
OCEANUS BRITANNICUS
DUMNONII
Belerium Pr.
Vectis I.
0 4 2 0
Fisk & Co. N.Y.

History of England.

PART I.

ANCIENT BRITAIN.

SECTION I.

BRITAIN UNDER THE ROMANS.

Extending from the Landing of Cæsar (55 *B. C.*) *to the Invasion of the Saxons* (449 *A. D.*).

1. The southwestern shores of Britain were visited by Phœnician (*fe-nish'e-an*) and Carthaginian navigators many centuries previous to the Christian era, their chief object being to obtain a supply of tin from the extensive mines of that metal existing in the island.* This is thought by some to be the origin of the

Earliest Visits.

* "Tin was the attractive thing which drew the first thin rills of civilization to our islands. Some stray Phœnician sailors, not improbably from Gades

Map Questions. (*Progressive Map, No. 1.*) Into what five provinces were the Roman possessions divided? Where was Britan'nia Pri'ma? Britannia Secunda? Fla'via Cæsarien'sis? Max'ima Cæsariensis? Valen'tia? What was the northern part of the island called? Where was the country of the Cantii (*kan'she-i*)? Of the Damno'nii? Of the Belgæ? Of the Ice'ni? Of the Silu'res? Of the Corita'ni? Of the Brigan'tes? Where was Londin'ium (*London*)? Ebor'acum (*York*)? A'quæ So'lis (*Bath*)? Ander'ida (*Pev'ensey*)? Lindum (*Lincoln*)? Ra'tæ (*Leicester*)? Verula'mium (*St. Albans*)? What island near the southern shore of Britain? What islands between Britain and Hibernia (*Ireland*)? Where did Cæsar land? Where was the wall of Agricola? Of Adrian?

1. By whom was Britain visited? When? For what purpose? What is the origin of the name *Britain?*

name *Britannia,* or *Britain,* supposed to mean the "Land of Tin;" but by others it is derived from the Celtic *brith* or *brit,* meaning *painted;* as the Britons were in the habit of painting or staining their bodies.*

Cæsar's Invasion.

2. Its authentic history commences with the invasion by Julius Cæsar (55 B. C.), a Roman general, who, having made a conquest of Gaul, determined to carry his victorious arms against the bold islanders who had given important aid to his enemies, the Gauls. Accordingly, he crossed the channel, and with great difficulty effected a landing on the southeastern shore (at Deal), being vigorously opposed by the Britons, who had assembled in large numbers to repel the invaders of their country. Roman skill and discipline, however, prevailed; and Cæsar, having gained a great victory over the rude forces of the Britons, made a temporary peace with them, and returned to Gaul.†

(Cadiz), on the Iberian coast, beating aimlessly about among the Biscay waves, saw, perhaps through clearing mist, shifting glimpses of a white shore, upon which they found abundance of this precious metal to be had almost for the picking up. Tin was really a precious metal then. The Homeric warriors had fought with weapons of bronze; and for many centuries, until the art of tempering iron had reached some degree of forwardness, swords and spear-heads of mingled copper and tin continued to decide the battles of the ancient world."—*Collier.*

* The earliest notice of Britain is found in Herodotus (450 B. C.), who mentions the "Tin Islands," meaning probably the Scilly Isles and Britain. Aristotle, a century later, mentions Albion and Ierne. Cæsar was the first to apply the name Britannia to the larger island.

† "From the close connection between the insular Celts and the Celts of the continent, especially the maritime cantons, it may readily be conceived that they had at least sympathized with the national resistance; and if they did not grant armed assistance to the patriots, they gave at any rate an honorable asylum in their sea-protected isle to every one who was no longer safe in his native land. This certainly involved a danger, if not for the present, at any rate for the future; it seemed judicious, if not to undertake the conquest of the island itself, at any rate to conduct there also defensive operations by offensive means, and to show the islanders by a landing on the coast that the arm of the Romans reached even across the Channel."—Mommsen's *History of Rome.*

2. How and when does its authentic history begin? Describe Cæsar's invasion.

3. In the spring of the next year, he made a second expedition to Britain with a fleet of eight hundred ships, carrying thither an army of more than 20,000 men. He landed at the same place as before, and marched into the country, being obstinately opposed by a British chieftain named Caswall'on (called by the Romans *Cas-si-ve-laun'us*), whom, however, he defeated in every battle. After he had penetrated into the country beyond the Thames, the Britons sued for peace, which Cæsar, wishing to return to Rome, granted, on condition that a tribute should be paid to the Roman republic. Notwithstanding his many victories, Cæsar on his departure had made no permanent conquest of any part of the island; and almost a century elapsed before any other attempt was made by the Romans to subdue it.*

Second Invasion.

DRUIDS. (*Bas-relief at Autun.*)

4. The inhabitants of Britain had made at this time but

* "Cæsar, after various fortunes, carried back his soldiers in the same year (B. C. 55) to Gaul. He set sail by night, in fear, he says, of the equinoctial gales. He left no body of men behind him—he erected no fortress. It is probable that he took back captives to adorn his triumph. But the Romans, with all their national pride, did not hold Cæsar's expedition to be a conquest. Tacitus says, 'He did not conquer Britain, but only showed it to the Romans.' Horace, calling upon Augustus to achieve the conquest, speaks of Britain as 'intactus' (untouched); and Propertius, in the same spirit, describes her as 'invictus' (unconquered)."—*Knight.*

3. Describe the second invasion by Cæsar. What was the result of these invasions? When did the Romans renew the attempt at conquest?

4. What is said of the ancient Britons? Their habitations? Their clothing?

little advancement in civilization; but the southeastern tribes were much superior in this respect to those of the other parts. They practiced tillage with a certain rude skill, and built round huts of timber and reeds, resting on foundations of stone, and covered with a conical roof, in the center of which was an aperture for the passage of smoke. Their habitations were frequently changed, either in hope of plunder, or in quest of better pasture for their

The Britons.

THE DRUIDS' LAST SACRIFICE. (*Midnight Scene.*)

flocks and herds. They wore very little clothing, notwithstanding the coldness of the climate, but painted or tattooed their bodies, using for the purpose a plant called *woad*, which yields a juice of a blue color.

5. Their arms consisted of a shield and javelins, and a sword. Their forces were mostly on foot; but they also fought on horseback, and in chariots with scythes and hooks affixed to the axles; and these they

Warfare.

5. What arms did they use? How did they fight? What was their religion? What is said of the Druids? What was their chief residence?

managed with wonderful dexterity. Their religion was a terrible superstition called *Druidism;* the priests, called *Druids*, being not only the ministers of religion, but judges, physicians, and teachers. They worshiped the sun and moon, fire, the serpent, and many other false deities; and among the rites which they practiced, human sacrifice was quite frequent; immense figures, or cages, formed of osiers, being often filled with human beings, and then set on fire. The Druids were accustomed to live in caverns or amid the gloom of deep forests; and their veneration for the oak and mistletoe was quite remarkable.* They wore their hair short, but their beards long. A kind of loose gown, reaching down to the ground, was their chief garment; and in their hands they carried a wand. The isle of Anglesey (*ang'gl-se*) was their principal residence, in which was their chief seminary.†

The Druids.

* In the cut (p. 17) the figure having on his head a wreath of oak-leaves and holding a scepter is supposed to represent the Arch-Druid. The other figure holds in his hand a crescent, representing the form of the moon on the sixth day of the month, the appointed day for cutting the mistletoe. This cut is from *Montfaucon's Antiquities.*

† There are many remains of this curious religion, the most remarkable of which is Stonehenge (Saxon, *raised stones*) on Salisbury Plain. This singular

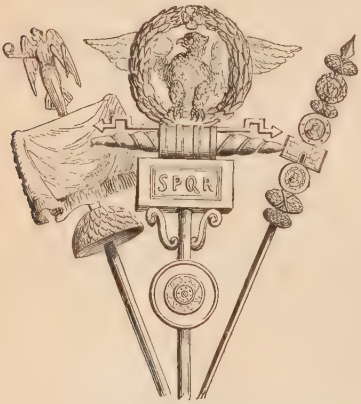
STONEHENGE.

monument originally was a circle (*cromlech*) of thirty stones, fourteen feet high, surmounted with large flat stones. Such circles were called "doom

6. One class of the Druids, called *Bards*, were poets and musicians. These attended the chieftains in their halls, and sang their praises; and in battle they cheered on their countrymen by their music on the harp. The various tribes of the Britons were each governed by a chieftain, but in times of great danger they united for self-defense, and selected a commander-in-chief. At other times jealousies and animosities among neighboring tribes occasioned continual contests, so that war was the principal occupation, and military glory the chief object of ambition among all the people.

Bards.

7. The civil wars in which the Romans were so long engaged prevented them from enforcing a fulfillment of the treaty which the vanquished Britons had made to Cæsar. It was contrary to the policy of Augustus, the Roman emperor, to extend the territorial domain of the empire, and the same policy was observed by his immediate successors. Meanwhile, the Britons kept up their intercourse with Rome, sending some of their young men thither to be educated; and by this means the manners and habits of the Britons were improved. At length, the



ROMAN STANDARD.

rings," and each contained in the center an altar (*dolmen*), on which victims were sacrificed. Besides these there were "rocking-stones" (*loggans*),—vast masses of granite or sandstone, sometimes weighing more than 500 tons, so nicely poised on another stone as to be moved by the least touch.

6. What is said of the Bards? How were the Britons governed? What was their chief employment?

7. Why was the conquest of Britain not prosecuted? What intercourse was established? When and by whom was the conquest resumed?

Emperor Claudius, instigated by a British exile, determined to undertake their subjugation (A. D. 43).

8. Accordingly, a considerable army was sent to Britain, under the command of Au'lus Plautius (*plau'she-us*); and although the Britons fought bravely for their liberty, they were defeated in many battles; so that, when Claudius himself arrived, several of the tribes in the southeastern part of the island made submission to him. The other Britons, however, under a brave leader named Car'adoc, or Carac'tacus, still held out, until being defeated by a Roman general named Osto'rius, Caractacus was made a prisoner and carried to Rome (A. D. 51). His noble bearing, and the magnanimity which he displayed, excited the respect of his conquerors, and he was set at liberty.

9. Many of the western tribes still maintained a stubborn resistance, and for years baffled all the efforts of the invaders. In the reign of Nero, Suetonius (*swe-to'ne-us*) received the command of the Roman legion in Britain (A. D. 59); and finding that the hostility of the Britons was sustained through the influence of the Druids, he succeeded in reducing the island of Anglesey (*ang'gl-se*), known to the Romans as Mona, which was their chief place of residence. Their altars were overturned, their sacred groves leveled with the ground, and many of the priests and priestesses were either massacred, or consumed in the flames of their burning shrines.

10. Meanwhile, the Britons of the eastern counties, exasperated by the wicked and tyrannical conduct of the Roman governor, revolted; and, led by their brave queen Boadicea (*bo-ah-dis'e-ah*),* who, with her daughters, had been treated in the most ignominious

Boadicea.

* "Boadicea was of the largest size, most terrible of aspect, most savage of countenance, and harsh of voice; having a profusion of yellow hair, which fell down to her hips, and wearing a large golden collar. She had on a party-

8. What was done by Plautius? What is said of Caractacus?

9. What was accomplished by Suetonius?

10. What is said of Boadicea? What city was destroyed?

manner, attacked and destroyed many of the Roman settlements. The principal of these was London, which Suetonius was compelled to abandon to the fury of its British assailants, by whom it was reduced to ashes. More than 70,000 Romans are said to have been slain by Boadicea's army. Defeated, however, after a long and fierce battle, by Suetonius, she terminated her life by taking poison (A. D. 62).

11. Several other generals were successively sent to Britain to carry on the work of subjugation: but it was not until Julius Agric'ola obtained the command (A. D. 78) that the Roman dominion was finally established in the island (A. D. 85). This able and excellent man, during the six years of his administration, sought to make the Roman yoke easy to the conquered people. He encouraged agriculture, introduced the arts and sciences, as well as the study of the Latin language, improved the government, and thus gave to the rude Britons the benefit of Roman civilization. He extended his sway into the northern part of the island, called *Caledo'nia* (now Scotland), which was inhabited by a wild and very warlike people, over whom Agricola gained a great victory near the Gram'pian Hills.

Agricola.

12. The Caledonians, although defeated, were by no means subdued; and for many years afterward, continued to harass the Britons and their governors, having destroyed the line of forts (between the Forth and Clyde) which Agricola had erected to prevent their incursions. The emperor Had'rian, after ineffectual efforts to subdue them, constructed an earthen rampart between the

Caledonians.

---

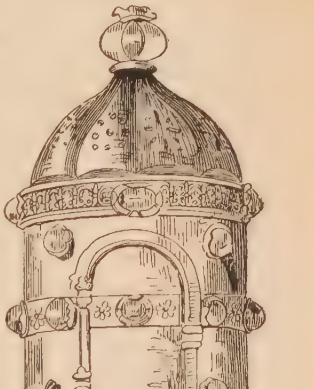
colored floating vest, drawn close about her bosom, and over this she wore a thick mantle, connected by a clasp. Such was her usual dress, but at this time she also bore a spear, that she might appear more formidable to all."—*Monumenta Historica Britannica.*

11. What was effected by Agricola? In what way? How far did his conquests extend? Where was Caledonia? What is it now called?

12. What is further said of the Caledonians? What three walls and fortifications were built? With what effect?

Tyne River and Solway Frith (A. D. 121). This was afterward called Hadrian's Wall, sometimes the "Picts' Wall." Considerable remains of it still exist. During the reign of his successor, Antoni'nus, the continued attacks of the northern tribes necessitated the construction of another chain of fortifications extending between the friths of Forth and Clyde (A. D. 140). Subsequently, the emperor Seve'rus, after pursuing these fierce barbarians to their northern wilds, made a treaty with them; and on his return constructed a solid wall of stone, twelve feet high, along the line of Hadrian's fortifications (A. D. 208). For more than seventy years after this, Britain remained comparatively undisturbed.

13. In the latter part of the third century, the eastern coasts were so much harassed by the attacks of Saxon pirates that the emperor Diocle'tian appointed a special officer to protect this part of the province. Carausius (*ca-rau'she-us*), who received this appointment, disowned his allegiance, and making an alliance with the Saxons, asserted for himself supreme authority in Britain (A. D. 286). He was, a few years afterward, assassinated by one of his own officers, who in turn usurped the supreme power, but was defeated by the emperor Constantius (*con-stan'she-us*) (A. D. 296). This emperor died in York (A. D. 306); and there his son, Constantine the Great, was saluted emperor. This illustrious monarch was the son of a British princess, whom Constantius had married.



SAXON LANTERN. (*From Strutt's Chronology of England.*)

13. What is said of Carausius? Of Constantius? Of Constantine?

14. Under Constantine and his immediate successors, Britain enjoyed many years of tranquillity; the incursions of the barbarians were repressed, and commerce and the arts of peace were encouraged. But the northern tribes, now under the name of *Scots* and *Picts,* soon renewed their ravages. The former appear to have been a wild race from Ireland, while the Picts were probably a Caledonian tribe of British origin. During the reign of Valentinian I., these savage hordes penetrated as far as London, but were driven back by Theodosius, father of the great emperor of the same name (A. D. 368).

Scots and Picts.

15. During the subsequent reigns, the Scots and Picts, although often vanquished by the Roman legions, continued to be a terror to the Britons, whose distresses were greatly increased by the withdrawal of the Roman armies, which were needed to protect the territories of the Empire against the incursions of the Goths. Some temporary assistance was supplied by the Roman general Stilicho (*stil'-e-ko*) (396 A. D.); and, at the earnest entreaty of the Britons, the island was once more visited by a Roman army (A. D. 418), on the occasion of a new inroad of the Scots and Picts. The Romans, however, remained only long enough to repel the enemy, when they took their final leave, after repairing the fortresses, and instructing the inhabitants in the means necessary for their defense (428).

Roman Retreat.

16. Notwithstanding this, the Britons soon found themselves entirely unable to repel the incursions of the Scots and Picts, who took advantage of their unprotected state, and burned and plundered worse than at any previous time. The attacks of the Saxons also added to

Saxons.

14. What was the condition of Britain under Constantine and his successors? What is said of the Scots and Picts?

15. What other invasions were made by them? Why did the Romans leave Britain? Give an account of their last visit.

16. Describe the distresses of the Britons. By whom was the country invaded? What appeal did they make to the Romans?

their embarrassment and misery. In 446 the unhappy Britons made a most piteous appeal to their former conquerors to send them aid. They addressed a letter to the Roman patrician Aëtius (*a-e'she-us*), recounting their distresses, and bearing the inscription "the Groans of the Britons." "The barbarians," they said, "on the one hand chase us into the sea; the sea on the other throws us back upon the barbarians: and we have only the hard choice left us of perishing by the sword or by the waves."

17. Aëtius was, however, too much pressed by the Huns, under their terrific leader, At'tila, to be able to afford them any aid; and, at length, in desperation, they formed an alliance with the piratical Saxons* in order to repel their other enemies, the Scots and Picts, being guided, it is said, by the counsels of a powerful British king, named Vor'ti-gern (*-ghern*). The Saxon forces, under their leaders, Hen'gist and Hor'sa, two brothers, landed on the island of Than'et, in accordance with this invitation, having readily agreed to the terms proposed by the Britons (A. D. 449). This event marks the close of Roman influence in the island, and the commencement of that of the Saxons.

Saxon Alliance.

18. On the departure of the Romans, five centuries had elapsed since the landing of Cæsar, during about four of which a large part of the island had been under Roman dominion, and had assumed a condition of considerable prosperity. Agriculture and the useful arts had made so much progress that considerable quantities of grain were exported to the other provinces of the empire, and British builders and artisans were in request on the conti-

Civilization.

* The Saxons were a confederacy of tribes extending from Denmark to the mouth of the Rhine. The origin of the name is uncertain.

17. What did they at last do? What was done by the Saxons? What does this event mark?

18. How long was Britain in the possession of the Romans? What changes took place?

nent. The mining and smelting of iron were extensively carried on. Roman towns, light-houses, roads, and bridges continued to exist for some time; and in many of the towns there were theaters, temples, and palaces. On the present site of Westminster Abbey, stood a temple of Apollo, and on that of St. Paul's Cathedral, a temple of Diana.

19. The country was not, however, completely Romanized; for the occupation of Britain by the Romans was essentially only a military one. The people continued to speak their own language; and while the conquerors and their descendants occupied the towns, they alone possessing municipal privileges, the natives were generally peasants, occupying a rank in society but little above that of serfs. The country was divided into five provinces, each having its own ruler, and the whole was under the government of a *Vica'rius*, or Deputy, who resided at *Eb-or'a-cum* (York).*

People.

Government.

20. Christianity was introduced into Britain at an early period, probably during the second half of the second century, not directly from Rome but from Gaul, where it had made considerable progress. During the reign of the Roman emperor Diocle'tian (*-she-an*), the British Christians suffered a severe persecution. The churches were razed, and many of the worshipers suffered torture and death,—among them, the proto-martyr St. Al'ban,† long cele-

Christianity.

* The emperor Diocletian divided the Roman empire into four *prefectures* (divisions, each governed by a prefect), and Britain formed a part of the prefecture of the Gauls.

† Alban, a pagan when this persecution began, was converted to Christianity by a fugitive priest, to whom he had granted a shelter. The latter's hiding-place having been discovered, Alban disguised himself in the priest's

19. Was the country completely Romanized? Condition of the natives? Describe the people. How was the country divided? How governed?

20. When and how was Christianity introduced? What persecution was suffered? Under what emperor? What is said of St. Alban? What further of the British Christians? Who were represented in the Council of Arles?

brated both in his own country and abroad. The Bible had been translated into the British tongue, and many of the ecclesiastics gained great fame for their learning and piety. The British Christians were represented in the Council of Arles (*arl*)* by three bishops (A. D. 314). These were the bishops of London, Lincoln, and York. Thus it is evident that Christianity had, even in those early times, made considerable progress among the Britons.

---

gown, and was led bound before the Roman magistrate, to whom he boldly declared, as Bede relates, "My name is Alban, and I worship the only true and living God, who created all things." The two perished together.

Alban was born at Verulamium (now St. Albans) in the latter part of the third century. When a young man he went to Rome, and for seven years served as a soldier in the army of Diocletian. After his return to his own country, he became a convert to Christianity. As to the precise date of his martyrdom authors differ. Bede places it at 286. Between four and five centuries after his death, Offa, King of the Mercians, disentombed his remains, and transferred them to the church consecrated to him, near Verulamium, and also built a monastery there. Around this the present town of St. Albans was gradually settled. In regard to the removal of St. Alban's remains, the noted chronicler, Roger of Wendover (died 1237), in his "Flowers of History," says: "This treasure, which had been hidden so long under the sod, the archbishops with their bishops lifted out of the tomb with holy fear, and in solemn procession, with hymns and thanksgivings, transferred to a certain church which had been formerly consecrated in honor of the blessed martyr outside of the city of Verulamium: and there they laid up the pious pledges of the father in a coffer of gold and silver and precious stones; and to this very day miracles continue to be wrought at that spot; for, in the sight of numbers of witnesses, the deaf recover their hearing, the lame walk, the blind see, and all who in faith invoke the aid of the blessed martyr obtain of God the wished-for blessing, whether of mind or body."

* A town on the Rhone River, of considerable importance even in Cæsar's time, and subsequently a prosperous Roman colony. It was for a time the residence of Constantine, and later the capital of Burgundy. It was the birth-place of the emperor Constantine II., eldest son of Constantine. It contains numerous Roman antiquities, among which is an amphitheater, which, in size and magnificence, is supposed to have been second only to the Colosseum of Rome. The Council of Arles was a general synod of the bishops of the Western Church, convoked by the emperor Constantine in A. D. 314. Three other church councils were held at Arles, in 354, 452, and 475 A. D.

SECTION II.

BRITAIN UNDER THE SAXONS.

Extending from the Landing of Hengist and Horsa (A. D. 449) to the Union of the Saxon Kingdoms under Egbert (A. D. 827).

Landing of the Saxons.

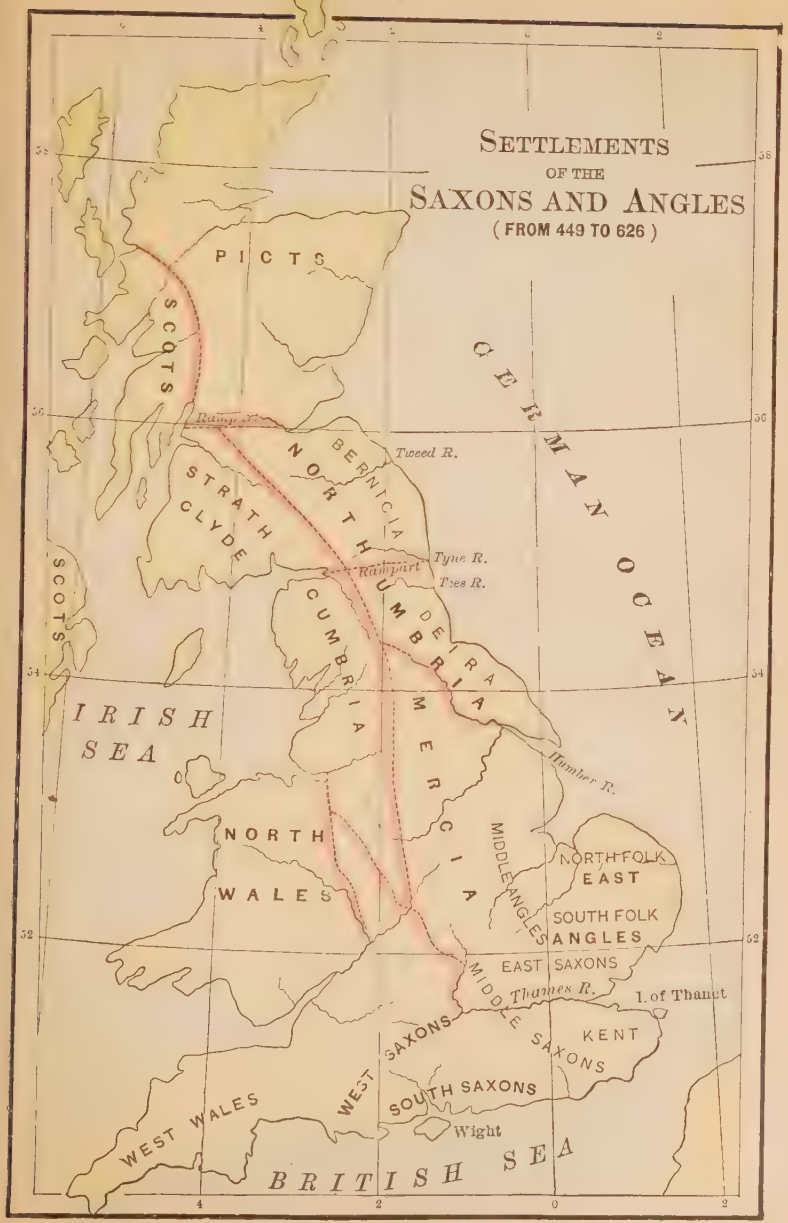
1. With the aid of the Saxons under Hengist and Horsa, the Britons were enabled to drive back the Scots and Picts; and in return for the services thus rendered, the brothers were allowed to settle, with their companions, on the Isle of Thanet,* where they were soon joined by others of their countrymen, whom they invited over. It is said that a beautiful daughter of Hengist (*heng-ghist*), Rowe'na by name, captivated the British king, Vort'igern, and that, becoming his bride, she per-

* "It is with the landing of Hengist and his war band at Ebbsfleet, on the shores of the Isle of Thanet, that English history begins. No spot in Britain can be so sacred to Englishmen as that which first felt the tread of English feet. There is little indeed to catch the eye in Ebbsfleet itself, a mere lift of higher ground, with a few gray cottages dotted over it, cut off nowadays from the sea by a reclaimed meadow and a sea-wall. But taken as a whole, the scene has a wild beauty of its own. . . . . Everything in the character of the spot confirms the national tradition which fixed here the first landing-place of our English fathers, for great as the physical changes of the country have been since the fifth century, they have told little on its main features."—Green, *A Short History of the English People.*

MAP QUESTIONS.—(*Progressive Map, No.* 2.) Where were the settlements of the South Saxons? Of the West Saxons? Of the East Saxons? Of the Middle Saxons? Where was Kent? Where were the East Angles? How divided? Where were the Middle Angles? Where was Mercia? Northumbria? Why so called? (*Ans.*—Because north of the Humber River.) How divided? Where was Damnonia, or West Wales? North Wales? Cumbria? Strath Clyde? Where was the country of the Picts? Of the Scots? Thanet Island? Wight?

1. What was done with the aid of the Saxons? How were they rewarded? What legend is mentioned? What is certainly true?

No. 2.


SETTLEMENTS
OF THE
SAXONS AND ANGLES
(FROM 449 TO 626)
PICTS
SCOTS
SCOTS
Roman Wall
BERNICIA
NORTHUMBRIA
Tweed R.
STRATH CLYDE
Tyne R.
Ribble R.
Tees R.
CUMBRIA
DEIRA
GERMAN OCEAN
IRISH SEA
MERCIA
Humber R.
NORTH WALES
MIDDLE ANGLES
NORTH FOLK
EAST ANGLES
SOUTH FOLK
EAST SAXONS
Thames R.
I. of Thanet
KENT
MIDDLE SAXONS
WEST SAXONS
SOUTH SAXONS
Wight
WEST WALES
BRITISH SEA
56
54
52
4
2
0
2

suaded him to give up to her countrymen the whole of Kent. Whether this be true or not, it is certain that the Saxons soon began to encroach upon the lands of the Britons, and that their numbers were constantly augmented by new accessions from Germany.

2. Fierce battles were fought between the forces of Hengist and Horsa and the Britons. In one of these Horsa was slain (A. D. 455). The Saxons were, however, generally victorious, and finally succeeded in completely securing their possessions in Kent, which thus became the first Saxon kingdom founded in the island. It remained a powerful state for more than a century afterward.

Conquest of Kent.

3. In the mean time, other bodies of Saxons arrived and settled in different parts of the island, after committing the most dreadful outrages and devastations: while Vortigern, unable to defend his people, retired into Wales. Among the Saxons a kindred race, called *Angles*, came over, also from Germany, and made their home in such territories as they could wrest from the native inhabitants. They seem to have been a more numerous and energetic people even than the Saxons, as they occupied larger districts, and at length gave their name to the whole country.

Angles.

4. By these invasions the following states were formed: 1. Kent; 2. Sussex, or the South Saxons; 3. Wessex, or the West Saxons; 4. Essex, or the East Saxons, including Middlesex, or the Middle Saxons; 5. East Anglia, formed by Angles, originally consisting of two tribes, *North-folk* and *South-folk* (hence, *Norfolk* and *Suffolk*); 6. *Northumbria*, that is, the country north of the

Heptarchy.

2. What battles were fought? With what result? Which was the first Saxon kingdom? How long did its power last?

3. What other settlers arrived? What is said of the Angles?

4. What states were formed? What is said of East Anglia? Northumbria? Mercia? When and by whom was this state conquered? What did they constitute?

Humber River, which at first consisted of two states, called in Latin *De-i'ra* and *Bernicia; 7. Mercia*, or the *March*, or boundary, being situated on the border of Deira and East Anglia. It was conquered by Anglian chieftains in the seventh century (A. D. 626). These seven states constituted what is known in history as the *Saxon Heptarchy;* although the number of independent Saxon kingdoms was at no time exactly seven.*

5. The different Saxon kingdoms of the Heptarchy were almost incessantly engaged in fierce wars with one another. Their common enemies, the British, or *Welsh*, as they called them (meaning in their language *foreigners*), and the Scots, obliged them, however, to form some kind of alliance; and they usually acknowledged the sovereign of one of the states, supreme commander, or as they called him, *Bret'wal-da*, that is, *Britain-wielder*, or ruler of Britain. Several of the Saxon monarchs held this office and title, the most distinguished of whom was Eth'elbert, King of Kent, who was Bretwalda for about fifty years.†

Bretwalda.

* "The old notion of an Heptarchy, of a regular system of seven kingdoms, united under the regular supremacy of a single over-lord (or Bretwalda), is a dream which has passed away before the light of historic criticism. The English kingdoms in Britain were ever fluctuating, alike in their number and in their relations to one another. Yet it is certain that, among the mass of smaller and more obscure principalities, seven kingdoms do stand out in a marked way, seven kingdoms which alone supplied candidates for the dominion of the whole island. . Of these the earliest was the Jutish Kingdom of Kent."—*Freeman.*

† The title of *Bretwalda*, which implied greater power and dignity than that of *king*, was at first conferred upon a great military leader, to whom was intrusted the execution of the decrees of the Witenagemôt (see page 66). It seems to have been assumed in imitation of the Roman imperial authority, because the idea of such a supremacy appears to be entirely at variance with any species of rule exercised by the Saxons before their settlement in England. The last king who assumed the title of Bretwalda was Oswy, of Wessex, who died in 670. Some writers, however, continue the title to Ethelbald, the Mercian King, who obtained a paramount rule (737).

5. In what were they engaged? Why did they form an alliance? What is meant by *Bretwalda?* By whom was this office held?

6. During the period of these encroachments, comprehending about a century and a half, the British or Welsh made a stubborn but ineffectual resistance, and were driven into the western parts of the island, and formed several small states. In the southwest lay Dam-no'ni-a, or West Wales, founded, as tradition says, by the famous King Arthur, whose exploits in connection with the legendary "Knights of the Round Table," have been so widely celebrated in poetry and song.* In Cambria, or Wales, were several other states, and still others (Cumbria and Strathclyde) in the mountainous region to the north of Wales, so distinguished for its picturesque beauty. Others of the Britons crossed the Channel to Gaul (France), and settled in Armor'ica, called afterward Bretagne (*bret-ahn'*) or Brittany. Still others probably remained interspersed among their conquerors in the condition of serfs.

British Resistance.

7. These conquering Saxons and Angles, intermingled with whom were a people from Denmark, called *Jutes*, were, at the time of their invasion of Britain, pagan barbarians, professing a bloody faith that made them contemn and hate the Christian and peaceful Britons. They delighted in ravage and slaughter, and revenge they

Saxons, etc.

*"In the fastnesses of Wales, on the heights of Caledonia, and on the friendly land of Armorica, are yet tracked the fugitive and ruined Britons. It is most generally conceded that they retreated to the western coasts of England, and that, often discomfited, they took their last refuge in those 'mountain heights' of Cambria. Their shadowy Arthur has left an undying name in romance, and is a nonenity in history. Whether Arthur was a mortal commander, heading some kings of Britain, or whether religion and policy were driven to the desperate effort for rallying their fugitives by a national name and 'a hope deferred,' like the Sebastian of Portugal, this far-famed chieftain could never have been a fortunate general; he displayed his invincibility but in some obscure and remote locality; he struck no terror among his enemies, for they have left his name unchronicled."—*Disraeli.*

6. What became of the Welsh? What and where was *Damnonia?* By whom was it founded? What other Welsh states were there? What and where was Brittany?

7. What was the character of the Saxons, Angles, and Jutes? What do the names of the days of the week commemorate? What belief did these people entertain?

deemed a religious duty. The names of the days of the week still commemorate the deities which they adored.* They believed in the immortality of the soul, and indulged in the hope of a heaven, the chief delight of which was to intoxicate themselves with ale drunk from the skulls of their enemies slain in battle.

ST. AUGUSTINE.

8. The Saxons possessed the most terrific courage and energy. No perils, however great, and no difficulties, however apparently insurmountable, were able to check their activity in any enterprise which they had undertaken. They trusted themselves in their rude and frail barks, without a compass, to the mercy of the winds and waves of the stormy ocean, fearless of shipwreck, eager to obtain booty at the peril of their lives. In the words of an old writer, "before they quit their own shores, they devote to the altars of their gods the tenth part of the principal captives; and when they are on the point of returning, the lots are cast with an affectation of equity, and the impious vow is fulfilled." Such was the character of the barbarous Saxons on their first invasion of Britain, but in the course of years it became greatly modified and softened.

The Saxons.

* Thus Sunday and Monday (*Sunnandæg* and *Monandæg*) were the days sacred to the sun and moon; Tuesday, to *Tuisco;* Wednesday (*Wodensdæg*), to Woden, or Odin, the god of war; Thursday, to *Thor*, the Thunderer, corresponding to Jupiter, among the Romans; Friday (*Freyadæg*), to Freya, the northern Venus; and Saturday, to *Seator*, a marine deity.

8. What else is said of the character of the Saxons?

9. Christianity was first preached in the kingdom of Kent (A. D. 597) by Augustine,* a Roman monk commissioned for the purpose by Gregory, afterward Pope Gregory, called the Great. It is said he was induced to do this by seeing some Anglian youths of remarkable beauty exposed for sale in the market-place of Rome. Struck with their fair complexion and blooming countenances, he inquired who they were; and being informed they were *Angles*, he remarked they might have been called *Angels* if they had been Christians; and some time afterward he resolved to undertake the conversion of a people whose name and personal appearance seemed so interesting.

Preaching of Christianity.

10. Augustine was very kindly received by Ethelbert, King of Kent, who was already favorably disposed toward Christianity, having married a Christian princess; and the king becoming converted and being baptized, great numbers followed his example, as many, it is said, as ten thousand in a single day (A. D. 597). Augustine was made Archbishop of Canterbury, and soon afterward succeeded in introducing

Ethelbert a Christian.

SHRINE OF ETHELBERT, KING OF THE EAST SAXONS, FORMERLY ON THE HIGH ALTAR OF HEREFORD CATHEDRAL.

* Augustine was afterward canonized under the title of *Saint Austin*, which is an abbreviation of *Saint Augustine*.

9. When and by whom was Christianity first preached in Kent? By whom was Augustine commissioned? What circumstance led to this?

10. Give an account of Augustine's mission and its results. What kingdoms embraced Christianity?

Christianity in Essex also, where a church dedicated to St. Paul was erected on the site of a temple of Diana, and one to St. Peter on a small island in the Thames. The latter is now Westminster Abbey. The other kingdoms, one after the other, also embraced the same faith.*

11. The history of the various Saxon kingdoms which constituted the Heptarchy presents but little more than a continued scene of perfidy, treason, and murder. Finally, Egbert, King of Wessex, a descendant of Cerdic, the founder of Wessex, triumphed over all his competitors, and obtained the control of the entire country (A. D. 827), to which was given the name of ENGLAND (*England*, i. e., *Land of the Angles*).†

England.

12. Two distinguished scholars flourished during the period of the Heptarchy;—Bede, or *Beda*, and Alcuin (*al'kwin*). The former, styled the "Venerable Bede," was educated in a monastery on the banks of the Tyne River, and is said to have been versed in all the learning that had survived the destruction of the Roman Empire. His chief literary work was the "Ecclesiastical History of the Angles." He died in the year 735.‡

Bede and Alcuin.

* We have seen that Christianity was introduced into various parts of Britain about 400 years before this period (¶ 20, p. 26). The historian Bede asserts that Augustine found seven bishops in Wales, with whom he held conferences for the purpose of inducing them to conform in practice to the Roman time of celebrating Easter, and to the Roman manner of baptism. This they not only refused to do, but would not even acknowledge that he had any authority over them or their church.

† "So King Ecgbehrt was Lord from the Irish Sea to the German Ocean and from the English Channel to the Frith of Forth. So it is not wonderful if, in his charters, he not only called himself King of the West-Saxons, or King of the West-Saxons and Kentishmen, but sometimes *Rex Anglorum*, or King of the English."—Freeman, *Old English for Children*.

‡ Bede was born about 675, at a village near the mouth of the Tyne. His whole life was given up to study and composition. All his writings, which are very numerous, are in Latin, and mostly upon Scriptural and theological subjects.

11. What is said of the history of these kingdoms? Which finally obtained the predominance? What is the origin of the name *England*?

12. What scholars lived during this period? What is said of Bede? Of Alcuin?

Alcuin (735–804) was a native of York; and he acquired so extensive a reputation for learning, that students flocked to him from different parts of Europe. He was afterward invited to the court of Charlemagne (*shar'le-mahn*), in France, where he spent the greater part of his life. His writings, which were in Latin, consisted chiefly of poems, scientific and theological essays, and letters to the distinguished personages of the time.

13. The first Anglo-Saxon writer of note who composed in his own language, was Cædmon (*ked'mon*), a monk of Whitby, whose works were poems on the Bible histories, and on other religious subjects.* Many portions are still extant, and indicate considerable poetic

Cædmon.

* "Cædmon the Saxonists hail as the 'Father of English Song.' The personal history of this bard is given in the taste of the age. Cædmon was a herdsman who had never read a single poem. Sitting in his 'beership,' whenever the circling harp, that 'word of joy,' as the Saxon gleemen have called it, was offered to his hand, all unskilled, the peasant, stung with shame, would hurry homeward. Already past the middle of life, never had the peasant dreamed that he was a sublime poet, or at least a poet composing on sublime themes, incapable as he was even of reading his own Saxon. As once he lay slumbering in a stall, the apparition of a strange man thus familiarly greeted him: 'Cædmon, sing some song to me!' The cowherd modestly urged that he was mute and unmusical. 'Nevertheless, thou shalt sing,' retorted the benignant apparition. 'What shall I sing?' rejoined the minstrel, who had never sung. 'Sing the origin of things!' The peasant, amazed, found his tongue loosened, and listened to his own voice—a voice which was to reach posterity. He flew in the morning to the town reeve to announce a wonder, that he had become a poet in the course of a single night. He recited the poem, which however (for we possess it) only proves that, between sleeping and waking, eighteen lines of dreamy periphrasis may express a single idea. Venerable Bede held this effusion as a pure inspiration; the modern historian of the Anglo Saxons indulgently discovers three ideas; Conybeare, more critical, acknowledges that the eighteen lines expand the mere proposition of 'Let us praise God, the maker of heaven and earth.' But this was only the first attempt of a great enterprise; it was a thing to be magnified for the neighboring monastery of Whitby, who gladly received such a new brother."—Disraeli, *Amenities of Literature.*

13. Who was the first Anglo-Saxon writer of note? Who was Cædmon? What is said of his writings? Date of his death? What is said of Gildas? His writings? His death? What is said of Bede's "Ecclesiastical History"?

genius and imagination. Some passages have a singular resemblance to parts of Milton's "Paradise Lost."* Cædmon died about 680. The first British historian was Gildas, called "the wise," born at Dumbarton † about the beginning of the sixth century. He wrote during the time of the Saxon invasions, and in his "History of the Destruction of Britain," fiercely inveighs against the vices of his countrymen and their rulers. This work, written in Latin, does not possess much merit, though in some respects it is important. Bede's "Ecclesiastical History" (written in Latin) is a work of far greater importance. Gildas died in 570.‡

Gildas.

* "The startling similarities which have led away critical judgments, if calmly scrutinized, may be found to be those apparent resemblances or coincidences which poets drawing from the same source would fall into."—*Disraeli.*

† Dumbarton is a town in Scotland, about 15 miles northwest from Glasgow. It is supposed to have been the Roman station Theodosia, and the principal town of the British kingdom in the valley of the Clyde.

‡ "Gildas had seen the English invasion, and it is to him we owe our knowledge of the English conquest of Kent. But we look in vain to his book for any account of the life or settlement of the English conquerors. Across the border of the new England that was growing up along the southern shores of Britain, Gildas gives us but a glimpse—doubtless he had but a glimpse himself—of forsaken walls, of shrines polluted by heathen impiety. His silence and his ignorance mark the character of the struggle. No British neck had, as yet, bowed before the English invader; no British pen was to record his conquest. A century after their landing, the English are still known to their British foes only as 'barbarians,' 'wolves,' 'dogs,' 'whelps from the kennel of barbarism,' 'hateful to God and man.' Their victories seemed victories of the powers of evil, chastisements of a divine justice for national sin. Their ravage, terrible as it had been, was held to be almost at an end: in another century—so ran old prophecies—their last hold on the land would be shaken off. But of submission to, or even of intercourse with, the strangers, there is not a word. Gildas tells us nothing of their fortunes or of their leaders."—Green's *History of the English People.*

TOPICAL REVIEW.

NARRATIVE.

When did the event occur?
What circumstances or events led to it?
What resulted therefrom?

PAGE

Phœnician and Carthaginian voyages to Britain 15
Invasion of Britain by Cæsar 16
Cæsar's second expedition 17
Invasion of Britain by Plautius 21
Defeat of Caractacus 21
Massacre of the Druids 21
Defeat of Boadicea 21, 22
Burning of London 22
Exploits of Agricola 22
Invasion of Caledonia 22
Construction of forts and walls 22, 23
Expedition of the Emperor Severus 23
Invasions by the Scots and Picts 24, 25
"Groans of the Britons" 25
Landing of the Saxons 25
Progress of civilization under the Romans 25, 26
Introduction of Christianity 26
Persecution of British Christians 26
Martyrdom of St. Alban 26
Council of Arles 27
Settlement of the Saxons in Britain 29
Foundation of Kent 29
Invasion by the Angles and Jutes 29, 31
Formation of the Heptarchy 30
Preaching of Christianity 33
Union of the Heptarchy 34

BIOGRAPHICAL.

Who were they?
With what events were they connected?
Other incidents of their lives?

Julius Cæsar ..... 16, 17 *n*
Caswallon, or Cassivelaunus 17
Aulus Plautius 21
Caradoc, or Caractacus 21
Ostorius 21
Suetonius 21, 22
Boadicea 21, 22
Julius Agricola 22
Emperor Severus 23
Carausius 23
Emperor Constantius 23
Constantine the Great 23
Emperor Diocletian ..... 23, 26 *n*
Valentinian I 24
Theodosius 24
Stilicho 24
Aëtius 25
Attila 25
Vortigern 25, 28, 29
Henghist 25, 28, 29
Horsa 25, 28, 29
St. Alban ..... 26 *n*
Roger of Wendover ..... 27 *n*
Rowena 28
Ethelbert of Kent 30, 33
King Arthur 31
Augustine 33
Pope Gregory 33
Egbert of Wessex 34
Bede, or Beda 34
Alcuin 34, 35
Cædmon ..... 35 *n*
Gildas ..... 36 *n*

GEOGRAPHICAL.

Where were they situated?
With what events were they connected?

(*See Progressive Map No.* 3.)

Gaul (France) 16, 31
Anglesey 19
Caledonia 22
Solway Firth, or Frith 23
Isle of Thanet 25, 28
Arles ..... 27 *n*
Kent 29
Mercia, or the March 30
Damnonia, or West Wales 31
Cambria 31
Armorica, or Bretagne 31
Canterbury (*Cantwara-byric*) 33
Wessex 34
England 34
Tyne river 34
York 35
Dumbarton ..... 36 *n*

ETHNOLOGICAL, ETC.

Who were they?
What were their characteristics?
What were their manners and customs?

PAGE
Britons....16, 18, 25
Druids and Druidism....19, 21
Caledonians....22
Scots and Picts....24, 25, 28
Saxons....25, 28, 29, 32
Angles....29, 30, 33
Welsh....30, 31
Jutes....31

OFFICES, TITLES, ETC.

By whom established?
Their character and function?

Bards....20
Vicarius....26
Bretwalda....30 *n*

MODEL EXERCISE FOR THE BLACKBOARD.

Periods.	*Noted Personages.*	*Leading Events.*
LEGENDARY.	Brutus. Lear. Bladud. Lud. Cymbeline.	Building of New Troy, afterward London. Founding of Bath.
ROMAN.	Cæsar. Agricola. Constantine. Caswallon. Caradoc. Boadicea. Henghist and Horsa. Vortigern. Rowena.	Roman invasion. Roman conquest. British revolts. Incursions of the Scots and Picts. Invasions by the Saxons, Angles, and Jutes. Distresses of the Britons.
SAXON.	King Arthur. Ethelbert. Augustine. Egbert. Bede. Alcuin. Cædmon. Gildas.	Saxon conquest. Resistance of the British. Introduction of Christianity. Formation of the Heptarchy. Union of the Heptarchy, and establishment of the English monarchy.

No. 3.

SAXON ENGLAND
A.D. 900.
Scale of Statute Miles
0 10 20 30 40 50 60
Picts
Firth of Tay
Firth of Forth
Bebban Burh
Bamborough
Lindisfarne Is
Firth of Clyde
STRATHCLYDE
Reged
Caerleol
Solway Firth
R. Tyne
Egferths-minster
Wearmouth
R. Tees
Cumbria
Scarborough
Mevania
Stamford
Bridge
Egforwic
York
Fulford
Leeds
R. Humber
Gainsborough
Lindisfaras
Lincoln
Anglesey
Snowdon
Gwynedd
Derby
Nottingham
Leicester
Stamford
Northfolk
NORTH MERCIA
Wodnesbeorg
EAST ANGLIA
DANELAGH
Bury St. Edmunds
Southfolk
Ceredigion
R. Severn
R. Wye
WALES
Dyfed
Gwent
Morgan-wg
ESSEX
LUNDENBYRIG
Ashdune
Wibbandun
Ethandun
Surrey
Wiltsætas
Stonehenge
Sumorsætas
Ælthelingay
Cordicea-ford
Mount Badon?
Dorsætas
Warcham
Corfe Castle
SUSSEX
Winton-ceaster
Cissa-ceaster
Selsac Battle
× 1066
KENT
Deal
Boulogne
Andredes-ceaster
Pevensey
Damnonia
WEST WALES
Cernau
Dynnaint
I. of Wight
Cygnenes-ora
R. Stour
R. Avon
R. Frome
R. Thames
MIDDLESEX
Creccanford
Ægeles-ford
Canturia-byric
Rochester
Lof Thanet
Pegwell Bay
Richborough
Walmer
W. of Greenwich

PART II.

ENGLAND IN THE MIDDLE AGES.

SECTION I.

THE ANGLO-SAXON AND DANISH KINGS.

Extending from the Foundation of the English Monarchy under Egbert (*A. D.* 827) *to the reign of William the Conqueror* (*A. D.* 1066).

1. Egbert and his immediate successors styled themselves "Kings of Wessex:" since it was that kingdom which absorbed into itself all the smaller states in the south, and finally succeeded in making tributary to itself the larger kingdoms of *Mercia, East Anglia,* and *Northumbria.* These kingdoms continued for some time to be ruled by their own monarchs, and governed by their own laws. The sway of Egbert, however, extended over the whole of Roman Britain except Cumbria and Strathclyde; for he had waged repeated wars with the Welsh, both in North and West Wales, and defeated them in so many great battles, that nearly all submitted to his power.

Egbert.

MAP QUESTIONS.—(*Progressive Map, No.* 3.) What were the situation and boundaries of Wessex? Of Essex? Of Mercia? Of East Anglia? Of Northumbria? Of Strathclyde? Of Wales? Of West Wales? Where was Kent? Where was the country of the Picts? Of the Scots? What was the situation of Canterbury? Winchester? York? Worcester? Bath? Exeter? St. Albans? Shrewsbury? Lincoln? Berwick? Glastonbury? Athelingay? Edinburgh? Where is the Thames R.? Severn R.? Trent R.? Humber R.? Tees R.? Tyne R.? Tweed R.? Forth R.? Clyde R.? Solway Frith? Anglesey Island? Isle of Man? Isle of Wight?

1. What did Egbert and his successors style themselves? Why? How far did Egbert's sway extend? How had it been effected?

2. But a dreadful peril now confronted his newly-founded kingdom. This was an invasion by a fierce and barbarous people called, in the English chronicles, the *Danes*. They were Northmen, a Scandinavian race, inhabiting Norway, Sweden, and Denmark, who in the previous century (787 A. D.) had commenced their ravages, landing on the coast, plundering and killing the inhabitants, laying waste their lands, and burning their habitations. England was more particularly exposed to the attacks of the invaders from Denmark, and Scotland to those of the Norwegians.

Danish Invasion.

3. At first these piratical marauders landed only for booty, and when this was obtained, retired to their ships; but during the last few years of Egbert's reign, they came as conquerors, and showed a fierce determination to settle in the lands from which they had driven the inhabitants. Thus the Anglo-Saxons were now threatened with the very same calamities which their ancestors had inflicted on the wretched Britons; for the Danes of this century were similar in race and character to the Saxons three or four centuries earlier.

DANISH BOAT, OR CHIULE. (*From Bayeux Tapestry.*)

4. They plundered, massacred, and devastated, with the same merciless ferocity, the terrified inhabitants fleeing from them, as from the vengeance of Heaven. Their blood-red flag bore the figure of a black raven; and when, as the banner waved in the breeze, the bird seemed

Danes.

2. What peril confronted the new kingdom? Who were the Danes?

3. What was the object of their invasions? With what were the Anglo-Saxons now threatened? Whom did the Danes resemble?

4. What is said of the Danes' mode of attack? Their banner and weapons? What did Egbert accomplish? When did he die? Who was his successor?

to flutter its wings, they hailed it as the sure harbinger of victory. Their swords and battle-axes were ponderous and formidable weapons. Egbert was at first vanquished by these fierce invaders, but subsequently gained a great victory over them, although they had formed an alliance with the revolted Welsh in Cornwall (835). The next year he died, and the government was bestowed upon his son Eth'el-wolf (836).*

5. Ethelwolf possessed but little of the energy and talent of his father, being more disposed to religious exercises than to the active duties of a king. He began his reign by delivering to his eldest son the provinces of Kent, Essex, and Sussex. The Danes made constant incursions during the whole of this reign, keeping the people everywhere in constant alarm; and, though they were sometimes repulsed, they always succeeded in ravaging the country and carrying off the spoil. Having effected a settlement

Ethelwolf.

* This name is variously spelled *Ethelwolf*, *Ethelwulf*, and *Æthelwulf*.

5. What was Ethelwolf's character? How did he begin his reign? What is said of the Danes? Where is the Isle of Thanet? (See *Progressive Map, No.* 2.)

on the Isle of Thanet, they advanced against London and Canterbury, both of which places they sacked. Ethelwolf, roused by the danger, marched against them, and defeated them in a bloody battle. They, however, still maintained their settlement, but removed from Thanet to the Isle of Shep'pey, nearer London.

6. Notwithstanding these troubles, Ethelwolf went on a pilgrimage to Rome, taking with him his youngest son, Alfred, then six years old (855). He spent a year there, occupied in exercises of devotion, and distinguished himself by his acts of liberality to the Church. While returning he visited Charles the Bald, king of France, and married Judith, his daughter. During his absence, his eldest son had died; and Eth'el-bald, his second son, conspired with many of the nobles to exclude him from the throne. Ethelwolf, however, to avoid the calamities of a civil war, yielded to his son Ethelbald the western half of the kingdom. He died soon afterward (858).

Ethelbald. Ethelbert.

7. On the death of his father, Ethelbald retained the western part of the kingdom, but the eastern portion was left to his brother Ethelbert. The latter, in 860, by the death of Ethelbald, became ruler over the whole; but his reign was short, lasting only six years.

Ethelred.

Ethelred, his brother, succeeded him (866). The continued and harassing incursions of the Danes occupied these three reigns. These invaders penetrated into the kingdom of Northumbria, seized the city of York, and then passed into Mercia, where they took up their quarters for the winter (870). Expelled thence by Ethelred, they invaded East Anglia, and seizing Edmund, its king, barbarously put him to death, for refusing to renounce his

6. Describe Ethelwolf's pilgrimage. What occurred during his absence? How did he avoid a civil war? When did his death occur?

7. Describe the reigns of Ethelbald and Ethelbert. When did Ethelred ascend the throne? What is said of the incursions of the Danes? What happened to Edmund? Death of Ethelred? By whom was he succeeded?

faith. On this account, Edmund was afterward canonized as a saint and martyr. Ethelred died of a wound received in a battle with the Danes, and was succeeded by his brother Alfred (871).

8. Alfred was only twenty-two years of age when he ascended the throne, but he had already given indications of the virtues and talents which afterward so greatly distinguished him. In several actions with the Danes, he had shown a martial skill and courage far beyond his years; and he had diligently cultivated his mind by the study of authors not only in the Anglo-Saxon, but in the Latin language. Indeed, he took so much pleasure in literary pursuits that he assumed the government of the kingdom with regret rather than with eagerness; but the will of his father and the general voice of his countrymen forbade that he should decline it.

Alfred.

KING ALFRED.

9. The Danes poured into the kingdom in ever-increasing numbers, and committed the most dreadful ravages. Mercia was desolated with fire and sword; and its last king, fleeing in dismay, took refuge in a Roman cloister. Alfred was constantly in arms against the invaders, in one year fighting with them, it is said, as many as eight battles. Pushed to the utmost extremity, they were glad to come to terms, and promised to settle quietly in such parts

Danish Invasions.

8. What is said of Alfred? Why did he accept the kingdom?
9. Of the further incursions of the Danes? Of the condition of Alfred?

of the country as might be assigned them. But no treaties could bind them; and new swarms arriving, and their ravages being again commenced, the wretched Saxons yielded to despair, some fleeing to Wales, and others quitting the island altogether. The king could therefore collect no forces to oppose the invaders (878).

10. In this dreadful extremity, Alfred displayed the true greatness of his character. Although compelled to give up all that pertains to a king, and to take refuge in a peasant's rude hut, he was far from resigning himself to indolent despair. Collecting some of his retainers, he took up a position in a marshy district in Somersetshire,* secure on account of the unknown and almost inaccessible roads by which it was approached, and thence made frequent sallies upon the Danes. One of his earls, in another part of the country, was so successful, that he put the enemy to rout with great slaughter, and captured their famous red flag with the black raven, in which they so much trusted.

11. These successes again inspired the English with confidence, and they rallied around their noble king; but he would not risk an engagement with the Danes without having certain information of their numbers and condition. To obtain this knowledge, he, in the disguise of a *glee-man*, or harper, entered the Danish camp, and passed unsuspected through every part of it, being introduced to the Danish prince Guth'rum, whom he greatly entertained with his merry songs and jokes. Soon after this, he made a vigorous attack upon the enemy, and so signally routed them that Guthrum was glad to accept any terms of peace.

12. Alfred not only gave them their lives, but formed a

* At a place called by Alfred *Athelingay*, or the *Isle of Nobles;* now *Athelney*. Somersetshire is in the southwestern part of England.

10. What course did he pursue? What defeat did the Danes suffer?

11. How did Alfred discover the enemy's condition? What was the result?

12. What terms did Alfred grant to the conquered Danes? What region was called Danelagh? Why was it so called? What road was called Watling Street?

plan for converting them into useful subjects. East Anglia and Northumbria having been laid waste by the ravages of their countrymen, he proposed to Guthrum and his followers to form permanent settlements there, thinking that in this way he should erect a rampart against other incursions. The proposal was accepted, and Guthrum, with several of his officers, was admitted to baptism, Alfred having insisted that they should declare themselves Christians, as a pledge of their submission (878). He afterward ceded the eastern part of Mercia to them, and these districts continued to form a Danish state (called *Danelagh*) for many years afterward, its chief boundary being the old Roman road called Watling Street, which ran from London across England to the Irish Channel.*

Danelagh.

13. A period of tranquillity ensued, which Alfred improved by rebuilding the ruined cities, particularly London; restoring order to the government, and putting the kingdom in a position of defense against future assaults. For this purpose he established a regular militia in every part of the country, so that it might be ready at any time to repel an invasion without leaving other parts defenseless. He also constructed a fleet, and stationed vessels at proper points of the coast, so as to be able to meet the piratical Danes and Norwegians on their own element. In this way he succeeded

* "Alfred never subdued the Danes, nor became master of the whole kingdom. The Thames, the Lea, the Ouse, and the Roman road called Watling Street determined the limits of Alfred's dominions. To the northeast of this boundary were spread the invaders, still denominated the *armies* of East Anglia and Northumberland; a name terribly expressive of foreign confederacy without melting into the mass of their subject population. Three able and active sovereigns—Edward, Athelstan, and Edmund, the successors of Alfred—pursued the course of victory, and finally rendered the English monarchy coextensive with the present limits of England. Yet even Edgar, the most powerful of the Anglo-Saxon kings, did not venture to interfere with the legal customs of his Danish subjects."—Hallam, *History of the Middle Ages.*

13. What measures did Alfred adopt afterward? With what results?

in preserving his kingdom in a state of peace and quietude for several years.

14. At length, however, the Danes, under a famous leader, named Hastings, came with a powerful fleet from France, and landed on the coast of Kent (893). A long war ensued, in which Alfred displayed his characteristic skill and vigor. The pirates were at last entirely subdued, and compelled to quit the country, or were dispersed among their countrymen in Northumbria and East Anglia. The king survived this victory but a few years, dying after a glorious reign of nearly thirty years (901), in which his achievements, and the virtues and talents which he displayed in every circumstance of his life, justly won for him the title of "Alfred the Great."

Hastings.

15. It was not only by his military achievements and statesmanship that Alfred was a benefactor to his people. He endeavored to rescue them from the gross ignorance and barbarism in which he found them at his accession. He translated many interesting and useful works from Latin into Anglo-Saxon, established schools for the instruction of the people, founded, or at least repaired, the University of Oxford, and invited into the kingdom scholars from various parts of Europe. He introduced and encouraged manufactures, offered rewards for useful inventions, and actively promoted navigation and commerce.* His great reputation

Character of Alfred.

COIN OF ALFRED.

* Alfred was exceedingly systematic in the use of time. It is said that he devoted each day, eight hours to his meals, exercise, and sleep; eight, to the affairs of government; and eight, to study and devotion. There were no instruments for measuring time in his day other than, probably, the sun-dial; hence he had *time-candles* constructed, of uniform size, so as to show, by

14. What is said of the invasion under Hastings? When did Alfred's death occur?
15. In what way did Alfred promote the good of his people? What of his merit?

as a monarch has, however, caused him to be considered the founder of many institutions which had existed among the Anglo-Saxons before his time, and which he only restored or supported. His peculiar merit, indeed, was not so much that of a lawgiver as of a wise and energetic administrator of government, and an earnest patron of whatever promised to promote the good of his people.

Edward the Elder.

16. Alfred was succeeded by his second son Edward, surnamed the Elder,* who inherited the energy and military talents of his father, but without his genius for science and literature. His claim to the throne was disputed by his nephew Ethelwold, who, in order to gain the object of his ambition, formed an alliance with the Danes in Northumbria and East Anglia, whom he stirred up to revolt. Edward, however, soon subdued the rebellion, and in one of the battles Ethelwold was slain (905). The remainder of this reign is occupied with contests carried on with the

MILITARY COSTUME OF THE SAXONS.

means of notches, the lapse of the hours. Afterward, to avoid the disturbing action of the currents of air, he had lanterns made of wood and white horn, which were the first used in England. So says Asser, the learned monk, whom Alfred invited to his court, to be his companion and instructor, and who afterward wrote his life.

* Edmund, Alfred's eldest son, died during his father's life; his third son, Ethelward, inherited his passion for letters, and lived a retired life. Edward was called the "Elder" because he was the first English king of that name.

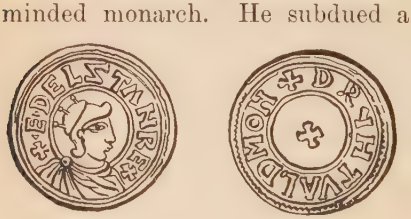
16. Who succeeded him? What rebellion occurred? How was it ended? What is said of the remainder of this reign?

Danish settlers and their countrymen, who invaded England from Normandy and Brittany.

17. Edward was generally victorious in his various engagements with the enemy, and finally reduced them to submission. He thus acquired the dominion of Northumbria and East Anglia, and subsequently also of Mercia. The Welsh in Strathclyde also became tributary to him; and even the Scots, who had some years previously subdued the Picts, were obliged to yield him submission. In these military achievements and conquests he was greatly assisted by his heroic sister Ethelfle'da, widow of the Earl of Mercia. Edward was thus the first king of the West Saxons whose sway extended over all Britain, he being now the only English king, for the other kings and princes in the island had become his vassals. His death soon followed these great accessions of power (925).

18. Athelstan, son of Edward the Elder, was the successor of that king. Like his father and grandfather, he possessed great energy of character, and was not only an able general, but a wise and liberal-minded monarch. He subdued a revolt in Northumbria, and in a great battle defeated the Welsh, Scots, and Danes, who had entered into a league to destroy his power (937). This victory gave tranquillity to the country during the remainder of his reign, which lasted till 941. In order to encourage commerce and navigation, Athelstan enacted the singular law that any merchant who had made

Athelstan.



SILVER COIN OF ATHELSTAN.

---

17. What conquests did Edward make? By whom was he aided? How is he distinguished? When did he die?

18. Who was his successor? How characterized? What did Athelstan accomplish? What singular law did he enact?

three long sea voyages on his own account should be admitted to the rank of *thane,* or gentleman.

19. Edmund, the brother of Athelstan, was only eighteen years old when he was crowned * king; but he showed considerable vigor and talent in his expeditions against the revolted Northumbrians and North Welsh. His reign was brought to a close in a very singular manner. Noticing, on the occasion of a festival, the presence of Leolf, a notorious robber, whom he had previously banished, he ordered him to leave the hall; and enraged at his refusal to obey, he leaped on him and seized him by the hair. The ruffian thereupon drew his dagger, and inflicted upon Edmund a wound of which he immediately expired (946).

Edmund.

20. Edred, the brother of Edmund, succeeded him on the throne. The Danes in Northumbria again rebelled, and were again subdued; and the king, in order to prevent future revolts, appointed over this district an English governor, and placed garrisons in the principal towns. Edred was greatly influenced, in both religious and temporal affairs, by the famous Dunstan (commonly called St. Dunstan), abbot of Glastonbury, whom he raised to the highest offices, and who possessed among the people a very great reputation for sanctity and learning. Edred's death happened in 955, when he was succeeded by his nephew Edwy, eldest son of Edmund.

Edred.

21. Edwy, surnamed the Fair, was but a mere youth

* The crowning-stone of the Anglo-Saxon kings was invested with peculiar sanctity, like the coronation chair at Westminster Abbey (p. 115). After the fall of the ancient chapel of St. Mary, at Kingston-on-Thames, about seventy years ago, it was set up on a pedestal in that town. Until the burning of Winchester by the Danes, during Ethelbert's reign, the Anglo-Saxon kings were crowned at that town; subsequently, the coronation took place at Kingston.

19. What is said of Edmund? How and when did his reign end?

20. Who succeeded Edmund? What rebellion occurred? What followed? By whom was Edred influenced? What is said of his death and his successor?

21. What account is given of Edwy and Elgiva? Who succeeded Edwy?

when he was called to the throne. The reign of this king, though short, was full of trouble. Edwy opposed Dunstan in the measures by which the latter wished to reform the vices of the secular clergy (those who were not monks), and incurred the displeasure of the Church by marrying his cousin Elgiva (*el'je-vah*), of whom he was so fond that he left the banquet given in honor of his coronation to enjoy her society and that of her mother. This was deemed an insult by Dunstan and his associates, and they compelled his return to the banquet-hall. Edwy, in resentment for this act, brought a charge of embezzlement against Dunstan, and obliged him to flee the kingdom. He was, however, recalled by the revolted Mercians, who had declared in favor of the king's brother Edgar; and it is said that Elgiva, who had been compelled to leave her husband, was hastening again to him, when she was seized by the Mercians and most cruelly put to death. Edwy died a short time afterward, and was succeeded by Edgar (959).

Edwy.

22. Edgar, called the Pacific, who was only sixteen years old when he commenced to reign, showed very great deference to Dunstan, favored all his measures to reform the Church, and in a short time promoted him to be Archbishop of Canterbury. His reign was entirely peaceful, being undisturbed by either foreign or domestic enemies. Edgar, however, kept up a constant preparation for hostilities, and every year sailed around the island with an immense fleet, so as to intimidate the Welsh, Scots, and Danes. His coronation took place at Bath, thirteen years after his accession; and afterward proceeding to Chester, he caused his barge to be rowed down the Dee by eight tributary kings.*

Edgar.

* These royal bargemen are said to have been Kenneth, King of Scotland; Malcolm, his son, King of Cumbria; Maccus the Dane, King of Anglesey, the Isle of Man, and the Hebrides; the Scottish Kings of Galloway and Westmere; and three Welsh kings. The Dee is in North Wales. (*Pr. Map No.* 4.)

22. What is said of Edgar? His means of overawing the Welsh, &c.? His coronation? By whom was his barge rowed? On what river?

23. Although a most efficient monarch, Edgar's character in private life is said, by some of the early historians, to have been exceedingly licentious; but there is some reason to believe that the accounts given of his cruelty and criminal excesses are the exaggerations or inventions of his enemies. Such is probably the story told of his marriage with Elfrida, after assassinating her husband; and of his breaking into a convent, and carrying off a nun by violence. Edgar favored the monastic party in opposition to that of the secular clergy; and therefore he has been unduly praised or too severely censured, according to the sympathies of different historians. He almost extirpated the wolves which infested some parts of the kingdom, by requiring the Welsh princes to pay, instead of money, an annual tribute of three hundred heads of these animals. The reputation of this king attracted many foreigners to his court, and he was on excellent terms with contemporary princes, particularly with Otho of Germany, who had married his aunt Edith. He died at the age of thirty-two, and was succeeded by his son Edward (975).*

KING EDGAR. (*From Cotton MS.*)

24. Edward the Martyr was but fifteen years of age when

* "Edgar's reign has been celebrated as the most glorious of all the Anglo-Saxon kings. No other sovereign, indeed, converted his prosperity into such personal pomp, and no other sovereign was more degraded in his prosperity. With his short life the gaudy pageantry ceased, and all the vast dominion in which he had so ostentatiously exulted vanished from his children's grasp." —Sharon Turner's *History of the Anglo-Saxons.*

23. What is said of the accounts given of Edgar? How did he extirpate the wolves? His reputation? His death and successor?

24. Edward's age when he began to reign? By whom opposed? What contests were there? With what result? Why called the "Martyr"? His successor?

the council of the nation called him to the throne. He was opposed by his step-mother Elfrida, who desired that her own son Ethelred, seven years old, should be elected in his stead; but the influence of Dunstan prevailed against her. The contests between the two parties in the Church were continued during this reign, and several synods were called to settle the differences; but the monastic party under Dunstan had the advantage. Edward was assassinated, it is said, through the instigation of Elfrida, in 978, and hence has received the title of "Martyr." Ethelred, his half-brother, succeeded him.

Edward the Martyr.

25. Ethelred II. was a mere boy, only ten years old, when he became king. Dunstan crowned him with reluctance, and foretold that his reign would be a most unhappy one, knowing probably that the kingdom had come to him through the wickedness of his mother. During the rest of this prelate's life, his influence and counsels in some degree protected England from the serious disasters which threatened it, for the Danes had again commenced their invasions. In 991, a short time after Dunstan's death,* an immense force of Norwegians, under several leaders, one of whom, Olaf or Anlaf, was afterward a very famous king of Norway, arrived in England, and committed so many ravages that the king, in despair of driving them away, consented to give them 10,000 pounds of silver on condition that they would depart.

Ethelred II.

* Dunstan's death occurred in 988, at the age of 63. He first came into notice in the reign of Athelstan; and hence was a distinguished personage during seven reigns. He was a very extraordinary man, being versed in music, painting, and other arts; an adroit politician and statesman; and as a churchman and prelate held in the highest repute for his talents and piety. His determined efforts to benefit his party and establish his policy in the Church have made his character and conduct the subject of very severe invective on the part of writers opposed to him. He was afterward canonized, and hence is known in history under the appellation of St. Dunstan.

25. What is said of Ethelred? Of Dunstan? What protected England from disaster? What of the invasion by the Norwegians? How were they induced to depart?

26. This expedient proved ineffectual, for the invasions were constantly renewed with the hope not only of plunder but of payment. Olaf, now king of Norway, and Sweyn (*swane*), king of Denmark, joined their forces and made repeated invasions, spreading havoc and ruin wherever they appeared (994).* Ethelred, never manifesting either vigor or prudence, bought them off at first with 16,000 pounds of silver, afterward with 24,000 pounds, in order to pay which he was compelled to levy upon the people a tax, called *Danegeld*, or Dane-money. Olaf retired, and afterward embracing Christianity, made no renewal of these incursions.

Olaf and Sweyn.

27. Sweyn and his countrymen, however, persevered in their hostility, hoping finally to effect the conquest of the whole country; and Ethelred was incapable of making any effectual opposition against the ravages committed by these savage and daring intruders. Thinking to strengthen his influence, he entered into an alliance with Richard II., Duke of Normandy, and married his daughter Emma (1001); but the Danes still continued their hostilities, and could only be checked by a compliance with their demands for money.

28. A very cruel and unwise scheme of the king's still farther added to his misfortunes and those of his kingdom. On the departure of Sweyn, Ethelred gave secret orders that all the Danes (probably all the foreign Danes, or those whom Sweyn had left) should be massacred on the festival of St. Brice (November 13th, 1002).

Massacre of St. Brice.

* The outrages committed by these ruthless pagans, as recounted by the old chroniclers, were dreadful in the extreme. The people were wholly at their mercy. They entered the houses, and compelled the occupants to serve them as menials, while their wives and daughters were treated with every species of insult by these remorseless savages, all resistance being met with derision or massacre.

26. What other invasions occurred? What measures were taken by Ethelred?

27. What other hostilities occurred on the part of the Danes? Whom did Ethelred marry? With what object? Was it attained?

28. Describe the massacre of St. Brice. What was its date?

This was done with every circumstance of ferocity, neither sex nor age being spared; and Sweyn's own sister, who had embraced Christianity and married an English earl, with her husband and children, was among the victims.*

29. The next year, the Danish king appeared off the western coast, and took a deep revenge for the murder of his countrymen; and a constant and most destructive war was waged for several years, the English all the time making fruitless efforts to defend themselves and their country, but receiving no effectual aid from their imbecile king, whose only expedient was to bribe the Danes for a brief and precarious peace. At length, Sweyn being virtually king of England, having received the submission of most of the English nobles, Ethelred fled into Normandy (1013).

30. A ray of hope, however, soon dawned again upon the English, for their monarch had been absent scarcely six weeks when the conqueror died, leaving the English throne to his son Ca-nute', who had accompanied him in his expeditions. Ethelred was invited back by his former subjects,†

* "And so the Danes, who a little before had made a league with the English, and had sworn to live peaceably with them, were shamefully slain, and their wives and little ones dashed against the posts of their houses. The decree was mercilessly carried into effect in the city of London, insomuch that a number of Danes who had fled to a church for refuge were all butchered before the very altars. But some Danish youths, flying on board a vessel, escaped to Denmark, and reported to King Sweyn the bloody end of his people. Moved to tears thereat, he called together all the nobles of his kingdom, and making known to them what had happened, inquired of them diligently what they advised to be done; whereupon they all with one acclamation determined that the blood of their kinsmen and friends should be revenged." —Roger of Wendover, *Flowers of History.*

† "This remarkable transaction laid the foundation for the greatest alteration in the principles of the constitution. With the full acknowledgment of hereditary right, the nation stipulated that the king should not abuse his power. They imposed terms upon Ethelred, they vindicated their national liberty, at the same time that they respected the sanctity of the crown; and

29. How were the Danes avenged? What was done by Ethelred?
30. What led to Ethelred's return? What was done by Edmund Ironside?

and returned in 1014, with his brave and stalwart son Edmund, afterward called *Ironside.* Edmund fought bravely against the Danes, and Canute was for a time obliged to flee.

31. But the next year Canute returned with a large force; and, notwithstanding the efforts made by Edmund, who was not adequately supported by his father, soon overcame all opposition, and compelled the greater part of the nation to submit to his authority. Ethelred and Edmund were shut up in London, and thither Canute was directing his course when the king died, thus being saved from an inglorious capture and imprisonment (1016). Few kings have manifested so much weakness and incapacity, or have been so little adapted to the circumstances in which they were placed, as Ethelred. Always doing what he should not have done, and leaving undone what it was most necessary to do, he well deserved the appellation, bestowed by Dunstan upon him, of "Ethelred the Unready," that is, without *rede,* or counsel.

32. On the death of Ethelred his son Edmund Ironside was proclaimed king by the citizens of London and those of the nobles who still remained faithful to the cause of the English sovereign. The others took an oath of allegiance to Canute. A war ensued, in which several fierce battles were fought; and the English under Edmund, who was a skillful and valiant soldier, gained some decided victories.* At last, however, it was thought

Edmund Ironside.

in the concessions made by Ethelred we may discern the germ of Magna Charta, and all the subsequent compacts between the king and people of England."—Palgrave, *History of the Anglo-Saxons.*

*Edmund was a genuine hero. After he had fought five pitched battles, and twice relieved London when besieged by Canute, to avoid further bloodshed, he proposed that he and his rival should decide their claims by a single combat; but Canute, a man of inferior physical powers, wisely declined, proposing rather to compromise by a division of the kingdom.

31. What was accomplished by Canute? What is said of Ethelred's character?

32. What occurred on the death of Ethelred? What compromise was effected? When did the death of Edmund happen? How did it occur?

best to make a compromise, and Canute agreed to receive the northern part of the kingdom, including Northumbria and Mercia, for his portion, and to resign to Edmund the remainder, comprising the part south of the Thames, with East Anglia and Essex. About two months afterward (1016), Edmund was murdered, as was supposed, through the contrivance of Edric, Duke of Mercia, who had several times previously proved a traitorous foe to the king.

DANISH KINGS.

33. Canute, or Knut the Great, as he is sometimes called, was, on the death of Edmund, crowned king of all England.

Canute.

Reserving to himself the administration of Wessex, he appointed Thurkill Earl of East Anglia, Eric, Earl of Northumbria, and Edric, of Mercia, in reward for their services in obtaining for him the English throne.

SILVER PENNY OF CANUTE.

The two sons of Edmund, then quite young, he sent to Olaf, King of Sweden, with the request that they should be put to death. But Olaf refusing compliance, sent them into Hungary, where they were protected and educated. Edward, the younger, was afterward married to the daughter of the Emperor, Henry II.

34. In order to reward his Danish followers, Canute was at first compelled to load the people with heavy taxes; but after he was settled on the throne, he adopted such measures as would reconcile the English to his government. He sent away as many of his countrymen as he could spare, made no distinction between Dane and English in administering justice, restored the Saxon customs in a general assembly of the

33. Who then became king? What appointments were made? What was done with the sons of Edmund? To whom was Edward, the younger, married?

34. What were the measures of Canute? What was the condition of the people?

states, and took care to protect the lives and property of all his subjects, so that the people, during the latter part of his reign, were in a happier state than they had enjoyed since the days of the good King Alfred.*

35. The two sons of Ethelred, then living with their uncle Richard, Duke of Normandy, gave Canute considerable anxiety, as being heirs to the English throne. He accordingly paid his addresses to their mother Emma, who consented to be his wife, and thus, a second time, became queen of England (1017). Having, in this way, disposed of all opposition, he reigned with mildness as well as wisdom; and to atone for the wickedness of his former acts, built churches, founded monasteries, and even went on a pilgrimage to Rome (1027).

36. A story is told by some of the early historians which illustrates his good sense as well as his piety. Walking on the sea-shore, on one occasion, with his courtiers, he became very much disgusted with their flatteries; and to rebuke their folly, commanded that his chair should be set at the edge of the water, while the tide was rapidly advancing, so that he might compel the rude waves to retire from his dominions. But, of course, the billows heeded not his kingly commands, but soon dashed violently against his person; whereupon he called upon his servile flatterers to remark how feeble was the sway of the mightiest earthly king in comparison with the "King of kings," who alone deserves the adoration of mankind.

37. This humility of Canute was the more praiseworthy,

* Canute was cheerful and accessible to all his subjects, without distinction of race. He took pleasure in old songs and ballads, of which both Saxons and Danes were passionately fond. He most liberally patronized the scalds, minstrels, and gleemen—the poets and musicians of the time—and occasionally wrote verses himself, which were circulated among the people and sung by them.

35. Why did Canute marry Emma? What is said of his reign?

36. What story is told of him? What does this show?

37. Why was Canute's humility especially praiseworthy? What expedition did he undertake? His death? His sons? His successor?

as he was one of the most powerful monarchs of his time, being sovereign of Denmark and Norway as well as of England. In the latter part of his reign, he led an expedition against Malcolm, King of Scotland, who had refused to acknowledge himself a vassal for Cumberland, to the English crown, and soon reduced him to submission (1031). He died a few years afterward (1035), leaving three sons, Har-di-ca-nute'* (the hardy or bold Canute), by his wife Emma, and Sweyn and Harold by his former marriage.† Hardicanute was in possession of Denmark, Sweyn was crowned King of Norway, and Harold succeeded to the English throne.

38. Harold I. obtained the throne after considerable opposition. Queen Emma desired that her son Hardicanute should be made king, and in this was supported by the West Saxons, led by their great earl Godwin, who exerted a powerful influence at this time, and for some years afterward. Civil war was threatened; but it was averted by a compromise, Harold being accepted as the sovereign of all the English territories north of the Thames, and Hardicanute of those south of it; and as the latter was in Denmark, the government of his portion was left to Queen Emma and Earl Godwin. Hardicanute neglected to assume the administration, and the people, tired of waiting for him, finally chose Harold to be king of all England (1037).

Harold I.

* This name is sometimes spelled *Hardacanute* and *Hardi'knut.*

† "The northerns have transmitted to us the portrait of Canute. He was large in stature, and very powerful; he was fair, and distinguished for his beauty; his nose was thin, eminent, and aquiline; his hair was profuse; his eyes bright and fierce. The whole of his character breathes an air of barbaric grandeur. He was formed by nature to tower over his contemporaries; but his country and his education intermixed his greatness with a ferocity that compels us to tremble even while we admire."—Turner's *History of the Anglo-Saxons.*

38. What opposition was made to Harold? Who supported Queen Emma? Who was Hardicanute? What is said of Earl Godwin? What compromise was made? Why was it not carried out? What ensued?

39. Godwin was afterward gained over by Harold to his interest: for when Alfred and Edward, the two sons of Emma by King Ethelred, arrived in England from Normandy on a visit to their mother, Godwin, with the connivance of the king, laid a plan for their destruction. One of them (Alfred), entrapped by the earl, was seized by the king's servants, and his eyes put out; a short time after which cruel treatment he died. Emma, with her other son, then fled the kingdom. This is the only act by which we are enabled to form a judgment of the character of Harold. His agility in running and walking gained for him the appellation of *Harefoot*. He died after a very brief reign, his death being but little regretted by his subjects; and thus the succession was left open to his brother Hardicanute (1040).

40. Hardicanute was preparing to make a descent upon England to recover from Harold by force of arms his share of the kingdom, when he heard of the king's death. He immediately sailed to London, where he was received in triumph, and acknowledged king. Enraged at Harold for the murder of his brother, he caused his remains to be exhumed, and thrown into a fen; but Godwin, who was accused of being an accomplice in the murder, was released, after taking the oath of compurgation.* He also conciliated the king by the present of a large ship splendidly equipped, and manned by fourscore magnificently-armed men.

Hardicanute.

41. Hardicanute soon became very unpopular by his reckless and oppressive measures. Among the latter was the renewal of the imposition of Danegeld, to pay the expenses of the fleet which brought him from Denmark. The people of Worcester having risen against the tax-gatherers, he caused

* See ¶ 55, page 67.

39. How were Ethelred's sons treated? What was Harold styled? Why? His death? His successor?

40. What was done by Hardicanute? How was he conciliated by Godwin?

41. How did he become unpopular? How were the people of Worcester treated? What is said of Hardicanute's death? Why was he called Hardicanute?

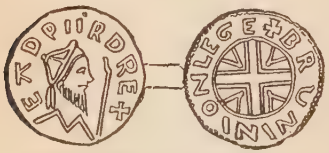
the city to be pillaged by the soldiers and burned to the ground. His reign, however, was very short; his death occurring at the nuptial banquet of one of the Danish lords, two years after his accession (1042). He derived his name *Hardicanute* from his robust constitution, which, however, he prematurely impaired by his habits of intemperance.

SAXON KINGS RESTORED.

42. The opportunity offered to the English by the death of Hardicanute to throw off the Danish yoke, was eagerly seized by them; and Edward, half brother of Edmund Ironside, was at once elected king. Earl Godwin, who had vigorously supported his claims to the throne, became his chief adviser; and Edith, the earl's daughter, was married to the king (1045). One of the first acts of Edward was to strip his mother Emma of the immense treasures which she had amassed, her neglect of himself and of his brother Alfred during their adverse fortune having extinguished in his mind all filial affection or respect toward her. She was afterward kept in confinement at Winchester.

Edward the Confessor.

43. Edward having been educated in Normandy, at the court of his grandfather, had acquired a very great fondness for Norman society and manners; and he soon disgusted his English subjects by the large number of his Norman followers, whom he had invited over, and appointed to offices of dignity and importance, even the see of Canterbury being given to a Norman. He



SILVER PENNY OF EDWARD THE CONFESSOR.

42. Who became king? Who was his chief adviser? His queen? What was his treatment of Emma? On what account?

43. How did Edward become unpopular? What is said of his connection with William of Normandy? The result?

had also contracted a very intimate friendship with his cousin William, the Duke of Normandy. Thus the language, customs, and laws of that country in time became quite fashionable among the higher classes in England.

44. These proceedings were particularly offensive to Earl Godwin, whose influence and authority had been second only to the king, the government of a large part of England having been committed to him and his sons Sweyn and Harold. Siward, the great Danish Earl of Northumbria, and Leofric, Earl of Mercia, were the most powerful of the English nobles, next to Godwin.* A quarrel with the Normans soon occurred (1051). Eustace, count of Boulogne (*boo-lone'*), was on his return from a visit to the king, and at Dover had committed an act of violence against one of the inhabitants. The latter at once rose against the foreigners, and drove them from the place, some of them being killed. The count having complained to the king, the latter ordered Godwin to inflict severe punishment upon the people of Dover ; but he, throwing all the blame upon the Normans, refused to obey the royal mandate, and summoned his forces to resist it.

45. Deserted, however, by the other nobles, he, with his sons, was compelled to flee ; and all his estates were confiscated (1051). But the next year he succeeded in collecting a large fleet, and sailing to London, was received with so much enthusiasm by the people, that Edward was obliged to yield, and Godwin and his sons (except Sweyn, who had been

* "Godwin got earldoms for his elder sons and his wife's nephew. An earldom was not then a mere rank or title, but meant the government of one or more shires, over which the earl was set by the authority of the king and his wise men. There were four chief earldoms : those of Wessex, Mercia, Northumberland, and East Anglia. There were always these four, but there were also others as well, and shires were often taken from one earldom and given to another, as was thought good at the time."—Freeman's *Norman Conquest.*

44. What is said of Godwin ? What other nobles were influential ? How did a quarrel with the Normans occur ? What was the result ?

45. What was done by Godwin ? What followed ? Who succeeded Godwin ?

outlawed) were restored to their honors and possessions. The death of Godwin occurring soon after, Harold succeeded to his dignity and influence; and by his modesty and affability acquired, in a short time, the good-will of the king, very greatly increasing, in the same way, the number of his friends and partisans (1054).

SAXON SHIP. (*From Bayeux Tapestry.*)

46. Edward, having no children, sent to Hungary for Edward, called "the Outlaw," son of Edmund Ironside, in order to make him his successor; but this prince died a short time after his arrival in England, leaving a young son, named Edgar. William of Normandy had visited his cousin Edward, and had been induced to aspire to the English throne, claiming that Edward had promised to bequeath it to him. But the people of England were too much attached to their great and good earl Harold, voluntarily to permit a foreigner to rule over them; and all looked upon him as their future sovereign.

47. William, therefore, feared Harold very much as a rival; and once, when the latter was at the Norman court,* he was compelled by the duke to take an oath that he would

* Harold was driven by stress of weather on one occasion upon the coast of Normandy, and captured by Guy of Ponthieu, the lord of that territory, who imprisoned him and held him for ransom. In this extremity Harold applied to William, who caused his release, but had him conducted to his own capital, Rouen. There he found himself entirely in the power of William, and, in order to regain his liberty, was obliged to yield to William's wishes.

46. Whom did Edward propose first as his heir? Whom next? Who was the people's choice?

47. What oath did William extort from Harold? How did he make it binding?

sustain his claim to the throne; and, to make the pledge more solemn, William secretly placed under the altar, on which Harold swore, the sacred relics of some of the most revered martyrs, which, after the oath had been taken, were shown to him.* But on his return, he wholly disregarded the oath, alleging that it had been extorted from him by violence.

Harold's Oath.

48. Harold was successful in an important expedition against the Welsh; and was also dispatched to reduce the Northumbrians to submission, who had revolted against the government of his brother Tostig. Finding, however, that Tostig had ruled with injustice and oppression, he abandoned his cause, and yielded to the people the ruler whom they had elected in his place. Tostig, therefore, greatly enraged against his brother, departed the kingdom, and took refuge in Flanders. A short time after this, Edward died (January 5th, 1066), having, it is said, recommended the council to choose Harold as his successor. He was buried in Westminster Abbey,† which had been consecrated only a few days previously.

49. This reign was prosperous and peaceful, not from any ability displayed by the monarch, but on account of the circumstances in which he was placed. The Danes had ceased their incursions, and the troubles with the Welsh were soon extinguished by the energy and talent of Godwin and his son Harold. The vir-

Character of Edward.

* "The Norman historians say that he shuddered, and his countenance changed, at the sight of this enormous heap. Harold soon after departed, taking with him his nephew, but was compelled to leave his younger brother behind him in the power of the Duke of Normandy."—Thierry's *History of England.*

† This church had been erected by Edward, and dedicated to St. Peter, in accordance with the injunction of Pope Leo IX., as the condition for releasing Edward from the duty of making a pilgrimage to Rome.

48. What expeditions were conducted by Harold? What was his course toward his brother Tostig? Edward's death? Where was he buried?

49. Why was his reign prosperous and peaceful? What is said of Edward's character? Of the "King's Evil"? When was Edward canonized?

tues of Edward were rather those of the cloister than the court. He was pious and beneficent, and earnestly endeavored to administer justice with impartiality, for which purpose he caused a very useful body of laws to be compiled. He was the first to touch for the scrofula (called the King's Evil); and for seven centuries those afflicted with that disease were, at times, presented to the English monarchs to be cured in this way. About a century after his death, Edward was canonized by the Pope, with the surname of "the Confessor." He was the last of the royal Saxon line, but not the last of the Saxon kings, since the Saxon noble Harold succeeded him.

50. Edgar Atheling, son of Edward the Outlaw, was the only surviving male of the royal line; but he was considered by the council too young to occupy the throne; and consequently Harold, son of Earl Godwin, was elected king, and crowned in Westminster, on the very day of King Edward's burial. William of Normandy was very indignant when he received the news of this election, and sent an embassy to England to remind Harold of his oath, and to demand that he should at once resign the crown in his favor. This being refused, he immediately prepared to make good his claim by force of arms. Harold was also contending with his brother Tostig, who sought, with the aid of Harold Hardrada, king of Norway, to regain his power, and with a large army invaded the north of England. Harold met the allied forces at Stamford Bridge, near York, and defeated them with great loss, both Tostig and the Norwegian monarch being slain (September 25th, 1066).*

Harold II.

* Previous to the engagement, Harold sent a deputation to his brother, offering to him peace and a third of the kingdom. "And what," said Tostig, "will he give my ally Hardrada?" The reply was: "Seven feet of English ground for a grave; or a little more, seeing that Hardrada is taller than most men." "Ride back, ride back," cried Tostig, "and bid King Harold make ready for the fight."

50. Why was Harold made king? What did William of Normandy do? What other emy had Harold? What victory did he gain?

51. Scarcely had he time to rejoice over this great victory, when he received the intelligence that William had landed with a large and splendidly equipped army on the southern shore. With his accustomed energy and promptitude, he hastened by rapid marches to oppose this formidable invader; but on a near approach to the enemy, he found his forces much reduced by desertion, many being disaffected on account of an unsatisfactory distribution of the Norwegian spoils, and others discouraged by superstitious forebodings of defeat, on account of the solemn oath which Harold had violated, and for which he had been excommunicated by the pope.

Norman Invasion.

NORMAN SHIP. (*From Bayeux Tapestry.*)

52. On this account Harold's brother, Gurth, endeavored to dissuade him from engaging with the enemy, urging the policy of wearing out William's forces by delay; but Harold was too eager for battle, and too confident of victory to listen to this advice. The spot on which this important conflict occurred was called *Senlac* (now *Battle*), nine miles from Hastings—the place near which William had landed. Harold posted his men advantageously to receive the onset of the Normans, who advanced singing the "Song of Roland;" and for nine hours the battle raged with the utmost fury, both leaders displaying the greatest skill and valor. At last the brave Harold

Battle of Hastings.

51. What other conflict awaited him? How were his forces weakened?

52. Gurth's advice? What is said of the "Battle of Hastings"? Its date?

fell,* pierced in the eye with an arrow; and the English fled, leaving the Normans in possession of the field (October 14th, 1066).†

53. Harold's two brothers were also among the slain, and with them likewise perished nearly all the nobility of the south of England. Harold's body was found with great difficulty, and was at first buried on the sea-shore; but subsequently it was disinterred, and by permission of the conqueror, deposited in the church which Harold had founded at Waltham, before he ascended the throne. This event, commonly called the battle of Hastings, terminated the rule of the Anglo-Saxons in England, and gave the kingdom to the Normans.

STATE OF SOCIETY AMONG THE ANGLO-SAXONS.

54. The great council of the nation, called the *Witenagemôt* (meeting of the *witan*, or wise men), by whom, as it will have been already observed, the kings were elected, was composed of representatives of the nobles and clergy and the great officers of the kingdom, such as the earls, aldermen, and thanes. The *ceorls*, churls, or

Witenagemôt.

* Upon the spot where Harold's standard was captured, William afterward founded *Battle Abbey*, a rich and splendid edifice for many years, and endowed with a large tract of land in the vicinity. The extensive ruins now on its site are those of an edifice erected after the original abbey.

† "Toward evening, while still unweariedly sustaining his army with his voice and hand, Harold was struck with an arrow through the left eye into the brain, and fell dead upon the field. His two brothers, Gurth and Leofwin, were also slain, with nearly all the nobles and knights in the battle. The old Anglo-Saxon heroism, worthy of a better fate, set in that dark eclipse; the battle-ax no longer availed against the Norman spear. Certain it is, however, that there was neither rout nor flight, so great was the despairing energy with which the English fought. King Harold's army was exterminated but not vanquished, and England lay paralyzed at the foot of the conqueror."—Roscoe's *Lives of the Kings of England.*

53. Who were among the slain? Harold's remains? Result of the battle?
54. What was the *Witenagemôt?* Of whom was it composed?

common people, had no voice therein; neither were there deputies from the *shires*, or counties, or from the cities. Its assent was necessary for all laws, and the clergy took an influential part in its proceedings.

55. Justice was administered principally in the *shire-mote*, or county court, from which there was the right of appeal to the king. The finding of a verdict was assigned to twelve of the principal thanes (lowest order of nobles), who thus bore some resemblance to a modern jury. The accused cleared himself by his own oath, or those of others, called *compurgators*, who swore to his innocence. Without these, he was subjected to the *ordeal* (great judgment); that is, he was compelled to thrust his arm into boiling water, hold a piece of red-hot iron in his hand, or walk over burning plowshares; and if at the end of three days no signs of any injury appeared upon him, his innocence was deemed to be established.

Justice.

PEASANT HUT.

56. The dwellings of the better classes among the Anglo-Saxons were comfortable and sometimes even handsome structures, in some cases luxuriously furnished. The windows were of lattice-work, but sometimes were covered with a linen blind: in the houses of the rich they were often glazed. The floors were covered with rushes, and the walls sometimes hung with rich

Dwellings and Furniture.

55. How was justice administered? What were *compurgators*? The *ordeal*?

56. What is said of the dwellings of the Saxons of the better class? Of the poor? Their furniture? The drinking vessels? Their skill in the mechanic arts?

tapestry, embroidered with gold or colored thread, the women of this period being skilled in needle-work. The houses of the poor were in general merely turf-covered hovels, having an aperture in the roof instead of a chimney. The furniture was very rude and simple; stools, benches, and settees being used in place of chairs; and their beds were of rushes or straw. Among the rich, many of the vessels employed in eating and drinking were of silver and gold beautifully wrought; for the Anglo-Saxons had become famous for their skill in the working of metals, and the manufacture of jewelry and fancy articles. A knowledge of glass-making they acquired from the French. The Norman conquest soon caused a great change in the style of dwelling-houses.*

57. The Anglo-Saxons were hospitable, and fond of feasting and merriment; and at their banquets, the harp was passed around, that each, in turn, might contribute by his skill to the entertainment. Their amusements were active and exciting. Among the higher classes, hunting and hawking were favorite sports; while the churl delighted in bear-baiting, the feats of jugglers and tumblers, and the songs of the gleeman, or minstrel. Backgammon,† chess, and dice were also resorted to for more quiet pastime. The ladies were much occupied in spinning; hence the name *spinster* came to be applied to a young unmarried woman.

Social Customs.

58. The foreign commerce of England during this period

* "One of the earliest French words introduced into our language was *castle*, the name and the thing being alike foreign. The English were used to fortify towns, and their kings and other chief men had lived in *halls*, often on the top of mounds and fenced in by a palisade. But the Normans now began to build *castles*, that is, either strong square towers, or strong stone walls crowning the mounds. A Norman noble possessing one of these was king of the country round, and, until regular siege was laid to it, might laugh at the law."—*Freeman.*

† Backgammon (*Little Battle*) was a game invented by the Welsh.

57. Character of the Anglo-Saxons? Their amusements? The ladies?
58. Commerce? Articles of traffic? Chief export? Coinage?

was considerable, London being the great emporium of the nation. The articles of traffic were quite numerous, including agricultural products of various kinds, the products of the mines and fisheries, manufactured articles, domestic animals, and even slaves. Wool was, however, the chief article of export, and was received back from the continent in fabrics of various kinds. Mints were established in some of the cities and towns, and many of the Anglo-Saxon coins of this early period, still preserved, exhibit remarkable skill.

Commerce.

59. There were no means of diffusing knowledge. The monasteries were almost the only schools, and in these a very few persons received instruction in Greek, Latin, theology, and astronomy; also in some of the fine arts, the monks being often skilled in painting, music, and sculpture, as well as the working in metals. St. Dunstan was noted for this kind of work. They also spent much of their time in copying and illuminating books on vellum or parchment, which, being executed with so much labor, were very costly, a considerable fortune being sometimes requisite to obtain a few volumes.

Schools and Learning.

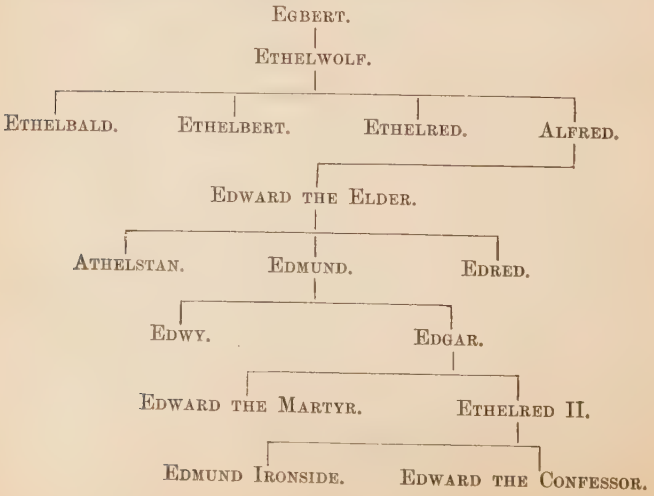
60. Little was done after Alfred's reign to encourage learning and science, the irruptions of the Danes preventing any progressive efforts to cultivate the arts of peace. Almost the only characters conspicuous for their erudition, during the period from Alfred's death to the close of the Anglo-Saxon sway, were Odo, Archbishop of Canterbury, and St. Dunstan, his successor; and the learning of these is only remarkable, as a faint glimmering amid the prevailing darkness. The Norman conquest caused a great change in this respect.

59. What places of learning existed? What were the chief branches of instruction? In what were the monks skilled? Illuminated books?

60. What prevented the promotion of learning? What distinguished scholars flourished? What is said of their attainments? Effect of the Norman conquest?

Date of Accession.	*Kings.*	*Duration of Reign.*
827.	Egbert	9 years.
836.	Ethelwolf	22 "
858.	Ethelbald and Ethelbert	2 "
860.	Ethelbert	6 "
866.	Ethelred I.	5 "
871.	Alfred the Great	30 "
901.	Edward the Elder	24 "
925.	Athelstan	16 "
941.	Edmund	5 "
946.	Edred	9 "
955.	Edwy	4 "
959.	Edgar	16 "
975.	Edward the Martyr	3 "
978.	Ethelred II. (the Unready)	38 "
1016.	Edmund Ironside	7 months.
"	Canute	19 years.
1035.	Harold Harefoot	4½ "
1040.	Hardicanute	2 "
1042.	Edward the Confessor	23½ "
1066.	Harold II.	9 months.

GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE SAXON KINGS.



TOPICAL REVIEW.

NARRATIVE.

When did the event occur?
What circumstances or events led to it?
What resulted therefrom?

	PAGE
Wars with the Welsh	39
Invasion by the Danes	40, 42, 43
Division of the kingdom by Ethelwolf.	42
Formation of Danelagh	45
Invasion by Hastings	46
Revolt in East Anglia	47
Revolt in Northumbria	48
Assassination of Edmund	49
Olaf's invasion	52
Marriage of Ethelred and Emma	53
Massacre of St. Brice	53
Destruction of Worcester	59
Quarrel with the Normans	61
Harold's oath	62, 63
Battle of Stamford Bridge	64
Battle of Hastings	65

BIOGRAPHICAL.

Who were they?
With what events were they connected?
Other incidents of their lives?

Egbert	39, 41
Ethelwolf	41
Edmund the Martyr	42
Alfred the Great	43, 44, 45, 46 *n*
Guthrum	44, 45
Edward the Elder	47
Athelstan	48
Dunstan	49, 50, 52 *n*, 69
Elgiva	50
King Edgar	51
Edward the Martyr	52
Olaf, or Anlaf	52, 53
Ethelred, King	52, 53, 54
Sweyn	53, 54
Canute, or Knut	54, 55, 56, 57 *n*
Edmund Ironside	55 *n*, 56
Harold I. (Harefoot)	58, 59
Hardicanute	58 *n*, 59, 60
Queen Emma	58, 59, 60
Earl Godwin	58, 59, 60
Edward the Confessor	60, 61, 62, 63
Siward	61
William of Normandy	61, 62, 63, 65
Edward, the Outlaw	62
Earl Harold	62, 63, 64, 65, 66
Tostig	64
Gurth	65
Odo, Archbishop	69

GEOGRAPHICAL.

Where were they situated?
With what events were they connected?

(*See Progressive Map No.* 3, *and map on page* 41.)

Sheppey Isle	42
Mercia	43
Athelingay	44 *n*
Danelagh	45
Watling Street	45
Glastonbury	49
Chester	50
Bath	50
Normandy	62
Rouen	62 *n*
Westminster	63
Stamford Bridge	64
Hastings	65

POLITICAL AND SOCIAL.

Meaning of the term?
Character and object of the institution?

Danegeld	53, 59
King's Evil	64
Witan	66
Witenagemôt	66
Ceorls, or churls	66
Compurgators	67
Shires	67
Shire-mote	67
Ordeal	67
Spinster	68

INVADING RACES.

Who were they?
Their characteristics?

Danes	40, 41, 43, 44, 45
Norwegians	40, 45, 52

SECTION II.

THE NORMAN FAMILY.

Extending from the Accession of William the Conqueror (1066) *to the Death of Stephen* (1154).

William I., 1066–'87.

1. To William I., surnamed the Conqueror, after the disastrous battle of Hastings, the English found they could make no successful opposition; and therefore, as soon as he approached London, all the chief nobility, with Edgar Atheling himself, who on the first intelligence of Harold's death had been proclaimed king, came into his camp and offered him submission. On the Christmas following, he was crowned in Westminster Abbey, in the presence of the English and Norman nobles, both of whom with acclamations accepted him as their sovereign. Indeed the shouts of rejoicing were so enthusiastic and vociferous that the Normans outside, thinking their leader was suffering violence, assaulted the populace and set fire to the city, occasioning a tumult which the newly crowned king found it difficult to subdue.

2. Having thus secured the fruits of his great victory, he commenced the government of his new subjects with justice

---

Map Questions.—(*Progressive Map, No.* 4.) What were the boundaries of England at the period referred to? What were its chief divisions? Where was Wessex? Mercia? East Anglia? Northumbria? Where was Cornwall? Devonshire? Somersetshire? Berkshire? Sussex? Essex? Dorsetshire? Norfolk? Suffolk? North Wales? South Wales? What were the boundaries of Scotland? Where were the settlements of the Northmen? What is the situation of Dover? Hastings? Senlac? Waltham? Winchester? Exeter? Bristol? Gloucester? Norwich? Oxford? Warwick? Durham? Cardiff? Where was Stamford Bridge?

1. What was the conduct of the English after the battle of Hastings? When and where was William crowned? What tumult occurred?

2. What was the conduct of William at first? How did he reward his followers? What precautions did he take?

and lenity, treating even Edgar, the heir of the royal Saxon line, with kindness, as being the nephew of his friend and benefactor, Edward the Confessor. He was, however, careful to reward his followers with the confiscated estates of the Saxon nobles, and omitted no precaution necessary to confirm his authority, and protect his government against revolt. He disarmed the city of London and such other places as ap-

peared most formidable, built citadels to overawe the inhabitants, and kept himself constantly in readiness to repel any hostile attack.

3. The people, notwithstanding all this, eagerly watched

3. What occurred during William's absence? What league was formed?

for a favorable opportunity to recover their lost liberties; and during the absence of William, the year after his coronation, he being in Normandy, secret conspiracies were entered into against his government, and hostilities broke out in many places (1067). Many of those who had been deprived of their lands by the Conqueror banded together, and keeping themselves concealed in woods and marshes, made havoc of all the Normans that came within their reach. The Saxon nobles, including Edgar Atheling and the sons of Harold who had fled to Ireland, with Malcolm, king of Scotland, and Sweyn, king of Denmark, formed a league for the purpose of driving the Normans out of England (1068).*

4. With his accustomed vigor and celerity, William, on hearing of these events, hastened from Normandy, and at once took measures to quell this formidable insurrection. The sons of Harold were defeated on their landing upon the western coast; and York, the only fortress in the north, being captured by William, the conspirators fled, and having concluded a peace with Malcolm, the king found his conquest of England more fully confirmed than ever. Similar outbreaks occurring the next year in Northumbria, and being subdued, William ruthlessly ordered the fertile country, ex-

* "Malcolm III. brought away so many captives that they were to be found for many years afterward in every Scottish village, nay, in every Scottish hovel. No doubt, the number of the Saxons thus introduced into Scotland tended much to improve and civilize the manners of the people: for . . . the Scots were inferior to the Saxons in all branches of useful knowledge. Not only the Saxons, but, afterward, a number of the Normans themselves came to settle in Scotland. King William could not satisfy the whole of them, and some, who were discontented, and thought they could mend their fortunes, repaired to the Scottish court and were welcomed by King Malcolm. He was desirous to retain these brave men in his service, and, for that purpose, he gave them great grants of land, to be held for military services; and most of the Scottish nobility are of Norman descent. And thus the Feudal System was introduced into Scotland."—*Sir Walter Scott.*

4. How was the rebellion subdued? What similar outbreaks occurred? How were they prevented for the future? What was the result of the king's mandate?

tending sixty miles north of the Humber, to be laid waste; and so thoroughly was the mandate obeyed, that at least 100,000 persons perished, and for several years afterward scarcely an inhabitant could be found in that part of the country.

5. The Anglo-Saxons were now excluded from all offices both in the state and in the church; and William surrounded himself with Norman lords, whom he had enriched with the confiscated estates of those implicated in the late insurrections. The Archbishop of Canterbury was degraded from his dignity on frivolous charges, and Lanfranc, a Milanese monk, distinguished for his piety and learning, was promoted to the vacant see (1070). The Norman nobles built castles in every part of the kingdom to protect their newly acquired estates, and the Saxon people were reduced to the condition of serfs.

6. William was passionately fond of hunting, and passed the severest laws to protect the game, making the punishment for killing a deer or a wild boar greater than for killing a human being. In order to make a new forest near his palace at Winchester,* he laid waste a tract of country extending thirty miles, driving out the inhabitants, demolishing houses and even churches, but making no compensation for the injury (1081). He also obliged the people to extinguish their fires and candles at a certain hour, on the ringing of a bell, called the *curfew* (*couvre feu*—cover the fire). This requirement was to the English a badge of servitude, although in

New Forest.

Curfew.

* Winchester—the *Venta Belgarum* of Roman Britain (see Map No. 1), and the *Wintanceaster* of the Saxons (see Map No. 3)—is a city of considerable historic fame, near the southern coast of England. It is noted for its magnificent cathedral. (*See Map No.* 5.)

5. How were the Anglo-Saxons treated? What is said of the Archbishop of Canterbury? The Norman nobles and the Saxons?

6. What is said of the game-laws? The New Forest? The Curfew?

Normandy the practice had long been observed as a precaution against fires.*

7. The latter part of William's life was made unhappy by domestic troubles. His eldest son, Robert, made war upon him in Normandy; and on one occasion, the king's face being concealed by his helmet, a combat occurred between Robert and his father, in which the latter was unhorsed, and would have been slain, had not his voice disclosed in time to his rebellious son the dreadful crime which he was about to commit. Struck with horror at the event, Robert immediately submitted; but it was not until some time afterward that the king consented to pardon him.

8. William's death was caused by a severe injury which he received during an invasion of France. Philip, king of that country, had offended him by some insulting words which he had used concerning him, and was suspected also of having instigated an attack which had been made on Normandy by some of the French barons. William in revenge carried fire and sword into the French territories; and having taken the city of Mantes, he laid it in ashes. As he rode through the town, his horse, stepping on some burning embers, plunged so violently that he threw his rider on the pommel of the saddle and inflicted a mortal hurt. The Conqueror died a few weeks afterward in a monastery just outside of Rouen, filled with remorse, it is said, for the many wicked and cruel acts which he had committed (1087).

Death of William.

* "William, knowing how ill the English stood affected to him, resolved to take all possible measures to screen himself from their resentment; for that purpose he took two precautions which were equally insupportable to them. The first was to take away their arms, the second to forbid them any lights in their houses after eight o'clock, at which hour a bell was rung to warn them to put out their fire and candle, under the penalty of a great fine for every offense."—Rapin's *History of England.*

7. What domestic troubles had William? What is said of his son Robert?
8. What caused the king's death? What is said of his remorse?

9. William left Normandy and Maine to his eldest son, Robert; directed that his third son, William, should receive the English crown: and bequeathed to his youngest son, Henry, 5,000 pounds of silver. His second son, Richard, had been killed while hunting in the New Forest. At his death the Norman power had become firmly established in England, the former inhabitants being reduced to a condition of total subjection. In accordance with the *Feudal System*, most of the lands had been parceled out among the followers of the Conqueror, they in like manner dividing them among their dependents, on the sole condition of performing the duties of vassalage.* A piece of land so held was called a *feud*, or *fief*. The introduction of this system into England was one of the results of the Norman conquest.†

Feudal System.

10. The year before William's death, a register was completed of all the estates in the kingdom, showing the extent, nature, and divisions of all the landed property in the several counties, with the products of each, and the woods, mines, etc., contained therein. This important compilation was called "Domesday Book."

Domesday Book.

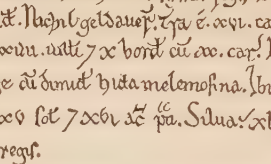
* Every vassal was bound to do homage to his superior. Unarmed, and with bare head, he knelt before him, and putting his hands in those of his lord, promised to be "his man" thenceforward, and to serve him faithfully for the lands which he held.

† "The conqueror divided all the lands, with very few exceptions, besides the royal demesnes, into baronies; these baronies were again let out to knights or vassals, who paid the lord the same submission in peace or war which he himself paid to his sovereign. The whole kingdom contained about 700 chief tenants, and 60,215 knights-fees; none of the natives were admitted into the first rank, but were glad to be received into the second, and thus be the dependents of some powerful Norman."—Hume's *History of England.*

9. What were William's bequests to his sons? How had his son Richard been killed? What was the condition of England at the death of William? What was the Feudal System? What was a *feud*, or *fief*?

10. What was Domesday Book? When was it printed by the English government? What was the population of England at that time?

It is still extant, and in 1783 was printed by the English government.* From facts furnished by this record, it is computed that the number of families in England during this reign was about 300,000, and that the population probably amounted to but little over a million.†



SPECIMEN OF DOMESDAY BOOK.

11. William II. (surnamed Rufus, the Red, from the

* "The name of Englishman was turned into a reproach. None of that race for 100 years were raised to any dignity in the church or state. Their language and the characters in which it was written were rejected as barbarous; in all schools children were taught French, and the laws were administered in no other tongue. The exclusion of the English from political privileges was accompanied with such a confiscation of property as never perhaps has proceeded from any government not avowedly founding its title upon the sword. In twenty years from the accession of William almost the whole soil of England had been divided among foreigners. Of the native proprietors many had perished in the scenes of rapine and tyranny which attended this convulsion; many were fallen into the utmost poverty; and not a few, certainly, still held their lands as vassals of Norman lords."—Hallam's *History of Europe.*

† "The Domesday Book, sometimes called the *Doomsday Book*, consists of two volumes, a greater and a less. The first is a large folio, written in 382 double pages of vellum, in a small but plain character, each page having a double column. Some of the capital letters and principal passages are touched with red ink, and some have strokes of red ink run across, as if scratched out. This volume contains the description of 31 counties. The other volume is a quarto, written upon 450 double pages of vellum, but in a single column, and in a large and fair character. It contains the counties of Essex, Norfolk, Suffolk, part of the county of Rutland, including that of Northampton, and part of Lincolnshire in the counties of York and Chester."—*Encyclopædia Britannica.*

11. How did William II. obtain the crown? What was his surname? What opposition was made by the Norman barons? How were they defeated?

color of his hair, or perhaps his ruddy complexion), succeeded his father on the English throne. Before the intelligence of the Conqueror's death had reached England, William arrived, and taking possession of some of the strongest fortresses, and of the royal treasure, was easily enabled to obtain the crown, which, to prevent resistance, the primate Lanfranc and the principal nobility promptly conferred upon him. The Norman barons, however, disliked him, and entered into conspiracy to dethrone him in favor of Robert; but he craftily won over his English subjects by fair promises, and through their aid entirely thwarted the plots of his enemies, who were obliged to flee into Normandy.

William II., 1087–1100.

12. Indignant at Robert, as the instigator of this rebellion, he in revenge invaded Normandy; but an accommodation was soon entered into between the two brothers, who then united their forces against their younger brother, Henry, and besieged him in a strong fortress which he had seized on the coast of Normandy. The prince, a short time afterward, was obliged to submit, and, having been deprived of his patrimony, wandered about for some time in great poverty and distress. William, assisted by Robert, then made war upon Malcolm, king of Scotland, and compelled him to accept terms of peace, the Scottish king consenting to do homage to William, and to relinquish Cumberland, which thereafter became an English county (1091).

13. About this time the first Crusade was preached, and Robert, wishing to join it, mortgaged to William the duchy of Normandy for five years, receiving therefor a large sum, which the English king obtained by means of forced levies upon his subjects, even compelling the convents to melt their plate in order to furnish their quota (1096). Indeed, William showed, in his desire to obtain money, no religious feeling or

12. What quarrels with his brothers ensued? War with Malcolm, king of Scotland?
13. How did William obtain Normandy? What is said of his love of money?

respect for the church. After the death of Lanfranc he neglected to appoint a successor, so that he might keep for his own use the revenues of Canterbury, and failed, in like manner, to fill other vacant bishoprics.

14. At last, falling sick, he, in a fit of remorse, sent for An′selm,* an abbot much celebrated for learning and piety, and persuaded him to accept the primacy; but when he recovered his health he prosecuted his schemes of rapine with as much violence as before. This brought on a contest between him and Anselm, the latter boldly defending the revenues of the church against the king's injustice and rapacity. The struggle, however, ended in the retirement of Anselm to Rome, where he was received by the pope with every mark of respect.

Anselm.

15. The taking of Jerusalem by the Crusaders prompted other princes to embark in the enterprise; and William, duke of Guienne (*ghe-en′*) and count of Poitiers (*poi-tērz′*), had agreed to mortgage all his dominions to the king of England in order to raise money for the purpose. The latter was about sailing with a fleet and army to pay the money and take possession of these rich provinces, when his reign was suddenly terminated. While hunting in the New Forest, he was shot with an arrow; according to the popular account, accidentally, by his companion Walter Tyrrel;† but, as some suspect, by the unseen hand of an assassin. He was found dead in the forest by a poor charcoal-burner, and carried by him to the cathedral at

Death of Rufus.

* St. Anselm was born in Piedmont about 1034. He was very celebrated both as a philosopher and a theologian. He died in 1109.

† A French gentleman, remarkable for his skill in archery. After the death of the king, he fled to France, but solemnly asserted his innocence, even when he might have confessed his guilt with safety. He afterward went on a pilgrimage to the Holy Land.

14. What led to the quarrel with Anselm? How did it terminate?

15. What is said of the mortgage of Guienne? What account is given of William's death and burial? What was his age?

Winchester, where he was buried (1100).* At his death he was forty-two years of age, and had reigned thirteen.

16. The character of William Rufus is chiefly remarkable for despotism, rapacity, and debauchery. His temper was extremely violent, and his manners haughty and fierce. He inherited some of the talents of his father, but was more perfidious and cruel. In person he was short and corpulent, with a remarkably florid complexion. He built a new bridge across the Thames at London, surrounded the tower with a wall, and erected Westminster Hall, which still remains a noble specimen of the architecture of the time. William was the third of his race that had perished in the New Forest—a circumstance regarded by the people as the just vengeance of Heaven for the cruelty of the Conqueror in expelling the inhabitants from their homes in order that he might indulge his passion for hunting.

17. Henry I., surnamed *Beauclerc* (*bo-clerk*), the Scholar, the youngest son of the Conqueror, succeeded William II. He had gone to the Forest with the king to engage in the hunt, and while there was told of his brother's death. Hastening to Winchester, he obtained possession of the royal treasures, and thus secured his succession to the throne, notwithstanding the just claims of his elder brother, Robert, then on his return from the Holy Land. He was crowned at Westminster the third day after

Henry I. 1100 '35.

* "It was almost night, when a poor charcoal-burner, passing through the New Forest with his cart, came upon the solitary body of a dead man, shot with an arrow in the breast, and still bleeding. He got it into his cart. It was the body of the king. Shaken and tumbled, with its red beard all whitened with lime and clotted with blood, it was driven in the cart by the charcoal-burner next day to Winchester Cathedral, where it was received and buried. By whose hand the Red King really fell, and whether that hand dispatched the arrow to his breast by accident or design, is known only to God." —*Dickens.*

16. What is said of his character? What structures were erected by him? What was the popular feeling with regard to his death?

17. How did Henry obtain the throne? His first acts?

William's death. One of his first acts was the publication of a charter of liberties, in which he granted to the Church and the barons certain privileges, and promised to the people to restore the laws of Edward the Confessor, conferring at the same time special immunities on the citizens of London. The forest laws were, however, retained in all their severity.

18. Still further to gain the respect and good-will of the nation, he recalled Archbishop Anselm, and married Matilda, daughter of the king of Scotland, and niece of Edgar Atheling. This Saxon princess was particularly dear to the English, and her marriage with the king was the cause of great rejoicing to them. She was beautiful and amiable, winning from the Saxon chroniclers the appellation of Maud the Good. Meanwhile, Robert had returned to Normandy, and having laid claim to the English throne, determined to make it good by force of arms, being encouraged in the enterprise by many of the Norman barons. He landed in England with his forces, and Henry advanced with an army to meet him; but, through the influence of Anselm, peace was made between the brothers, Robert giving up all claim to England for a pension (1101).

Matilda.

Robert.

19. Robert's dissoluteness, indiscretion, and neglect soon afforded a pretext to Henry to invade Normandy, which, under the misrule of Robert, had become a scene of violence and anarchy. He gained a great victory over Robert, made a complete conquest of the duchy, and carried his unfortunate brother a prisoner to England (1106). Robert remained a captive at Cardiff, in Wales, until his death, a period of twenty-eight years. Edgar Atheling, who had fought with Robert, was also made a prisoner; but Henry soon restored him to liberty, and settled a pension on him. He lived to a good old age in England, but totally neglected and forgotten.

18. Who was recalled? The king's marriage? What is said of Matilda? (See note, page 93.) What was done by Robert?

19. Further history of Robert? Of Edgar Atheling?

20. Robert's son William (called Fitz-Robert) was also spared, and afterward gave the king considerable trouble; for the king of France, uniting with the counts of Anjou and Flanders in support of his cause, invaded Normandy, and took many towns and castles. In the wars which ensued, Henry was generally successful; but it was not until William Fitz-Robert's death (1128) that he was released from anxiety on his account. Previous to this he suffered a terrible blow in the loss of his only son, William, who perished by shipwreck on his return from Normandy (1120). Henry fainted away when he received the sad news; and from that moment, it is said, he lost all cheerfulness, and was never seen to smile. The death of Prince William was a source of joy to the English; for he was a cruel and dissolute young man, and had boasted that when he came to the throne he would yoke his English subjects to the plow like oxen.

GEOFFREY PLANTAGENET. (*From his tomb.*)

21. The king being without male heirs, made the barons take an oath of fealty to his daughter Matilda, who had been married first to Henry V., emperor of Germany, but was now the wife of Geoffrey Plantagenet,* son of the earl of Anjou. Henry's death occurred, a few years after, in Normandy, in the sixty-seventh year of his age and the thirty-fifth of his reign (1135). His character resembled that of

* *Plantagenet* means, in French, *broom-plant*; and was given as a surname to this family, it is said, because one of their ancestors had done penance by scourging himself with twigs of that plant. Pronounced *plan-taj' e-net.*

20. What is said of Robert's son? What domestic calamity happened to Henry? What was its effect upon him and upon the people?

21. To whom were the barons compelled to swear fealty? What is said of Henry's death? His character? Why was he styled *Beauclerc?* What other appellation did he receive? Why? His private life?

his father, in the great qualities of body and mind which enabled him to acquire the throne, and to administer the government with vigor and address. His person was manly, his countenance engaging, his eyes clear and penetrating. His unusual progress in literature had obtained for him the surname of *Beauclerc*, the Scholar. He was afterward styled the "Lion of Justice," from the severity with which he punished offenders against the laws. His private life was, however, very immoral; and he was so deceitful and treacherous that even his favorites mistrusted him.

Character of Henry.

STEPHEN.

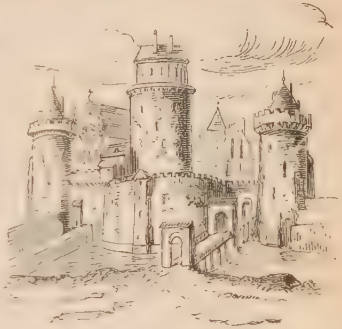
22. Notwithstanding the oath which the barons had taken in favor of Matilda, Stephen, a grandson of William the Conqueror, and son of the count of Blois (*blwah*), found little difficulty in obtaining the throne. With the royal treasures he hired great numbers of foreign soldiers, in order to secure himself in possession of the kingdom; and to satisfy the people, issued a liberal charter of privileges. To induce the nobles to submit to his usurped authority, he granted them permission to build castles and fortify them; and all England was, accordingly, filled with these fortresses, garrisoned by the vassals of their proprietors, or by licentious soldiers gathered from all parts of Europe, who made the country a scene of rapine and desolation.

Stephen, 1135–'54.

23. The king of Scotland, in defense of his niece's title,

22. Who obtained the throne? What measures did Stephen take? The result?
23. What invasion occurred? What was the result of the battle of the Standard? Why so called? What caused civil war? What were its effects?

invaded the northern counties, and committed the most barbarous devastations. He was, however, defeated in the great battle of the Standard, so called from a high crucifix carried by the English as a military ensign (1138). The next year, Matilda, encouraged by some of the English prelates, with whom Stephen had quarreled, landed in England with a small retinue, and was soon joined by many of the barons. Civil war ensued, occasioning the most dreadful anarchy and disorder. Licensed robbers sallied forth day and night from the castles of the nobles, and committed every species of lawless violence upon the defenseless people. Villages and cities were burned, the lands remained untilled, and famine and pestilence swept away both the spoilers and their victims.



A FEUDAL CASTLE.

24. At length, after several conflicts, Stephen was defeated near Lincoln, and made prisoner (1141). The claims of Matilda were solemnly recognized by the clergy; but her imperious behavior soon disgusted all parties, and she was finally compelled to flee into Normandy, after several years of war (1146). The king, who had previously been released, was now restored. A few years afterward his right was again assailed by Henry, son of Matilda, who had acquired Normandy and Maine from his mother; from his father by inheritance, Anjou (*ahn'joo*) and Tou-raine';* and by his marriage

* Touraine was a small province east of Anjou, of which Tours was the capital.

24. What happened to Stephen? What was the conduct of Matilda? What followed? What is said of Henry? What treaty was made? What were his possessions? How located? See Map of France, page 73, and map on page 96.

with Eleanor, the divorced queen of France, Guienne, Poitou (*pwah-too'*), and several other provinces.* Encouraged by these great possessions, comprising more than a third of the present France, he invaded England, but after gaining some advantages over Stephen, he was induced to make a treaty, by which, upon the death of the king, he was to succeed to the throne (1153). This event occurred the following year.

STATE OF SOCIETY UNDER THE NORMAN KINGS.

25. The Norman Conquest wrought many great changes in the social as well as political condition of the people. Among these, the establishment of the Feudal System was the most considerable; which system continued to exist in England during about four centuries. Something like feudal tenures had existed among the Saxons; but they were only of a special or exceptional character. William made them universal, and based upon them the whole framework of his political system. In accordance with this system, the title of all the land was possessed by the king, who assigned certain portions to the nobles or barons, by whom these were subdivided among the next lower class, partly consisting of the Saxon thanes, or *franklins*, as they were called by the Normans; and these again distributed them among their dependents. Thus, in each case, the title was made to depend upon the relation of the vassal to his superior.

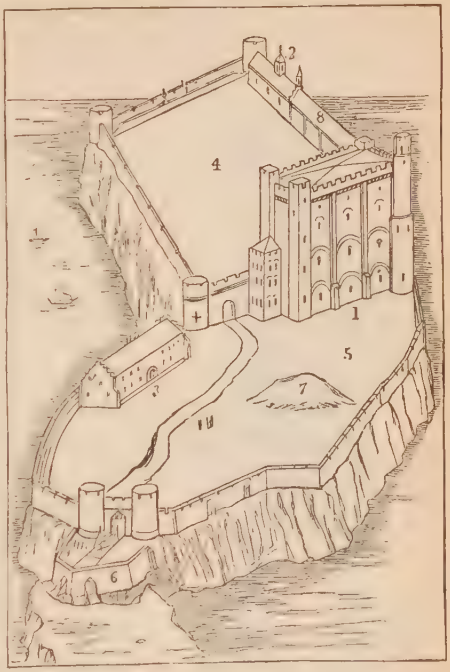
Feudal System.

26. This peculiar relation was established for the purpose of obtaining and preserving military strength; and was admirably adapted to this end. Thus, when the king needed

* Eleanor, in her own right, was Duchess of Guienne, or Aquitaine, a large province in the western part of France, being a portion of the ancient Roman province of Aquitania, afterward called *Aquitaine*, of which name *Guienne* was a corruption, which came into use about the tenth century.

25. Changes wrought by the Norman Conquest? What was the Feudal System?
26. What were the objects of the Feudal System? What is said of the barons?

an army he summoned his barons, who in like manner called upon their vassals, and they at once made a similar demand upon their dependents; so that, with wonderful promptitude, the whole force of the nation was brought into the field. The barons lived on their estates almost with the power of sovereign princes, each having his court and train of dependents, and protected by his strong castle against all attacks.



PLAN OF A NORMAN CASTLE.

1. The Donjon; 2. Chapel; 3. Stables; 4. Inner Ballium (bailey, or court); 5. Outer Ballium; 6. Barbacan; 7. Mount, supposed to be the court-hill, or tribunal, and also the place where justice was executed; 8. Soldiers' Lodgings.

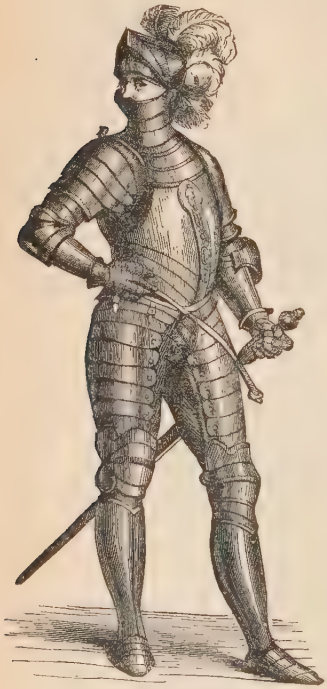
27. These feudal castles soon became a striking feature of the Norman period, their whole appearance indicating that the only objects of their construction were strength and security. They were surrounded by walls often more than twelve feet high, within which was a lofty tower called the *keep*, whose massive walls, pierced with small windows or loop-holes, defied the fiercest assault. Here the baron lived, and here was stored the property of the

Feudal Castles.

27. The feudal castles? How and for what purpose were they constructed?

castle. Under it was a gloomy dungeon into which those who had offended its haughty master were thrust, and often left to die of famine. The ruins of some of these castles still exist.

28. The most numerous class in England were the Saxon *churls*, or, as called by the Normans, *villains*. These were farmers, and were obliged to place themselves under the protection of some noble, as otherwise they might be seized as robbers. They were bound to reside on the lands which they held from their lords, unless permitted to leave them. Next below these were the *serfs*, who were in all respects bondmen, being attached to the soil, and subject to the will of their masters. The number of these serfs registered in Domesday Book amounted to 25,000.



A KNIGHT IN COMPLETE ARMOR.

29. Closely connected with *feudalism* was the peculiar institution entitled *chivalry*, or *knighthood*. The former constituted the basis of the political system, the latter was of a moral and social character. It was a singular combination of religion, military valor, and gallantry; and for several centuries exercised a prevailing influence upon the manners, customs, and opinions of all classes of the people. Although its origin can be faintly discerned in the institutions and practices of the German and Gothic nations, its full develop-

Knighthood.

28. Different classes of society? Number of serfs according to Domesday Book?
29. Chivalry, or knighthood? Its origin? How affected by the Crusades?

ment was not reached till the eleventh or twelfth century, being rapidly matured by the Crusades, from which it received a strong religious character. At that period great military orders of knighthood were formed, because to fight against the infidel was considered to be the highest duty of a chivalrous soldier as well as of a true Christian. *Knight-errantry* was the practice assumed by certain knights in wandering about in quest of persons—particularly females—in distress, the rescue of whom conferred especial glory upon the champion. Such a knight was called a *knight-errant.**

30. Those destined for knighthood received, from their earliest years, a peculiar training. The first degree was that of *page* (called sometimes *child* or *varlet*): after the age of fourteen, the page might be made an *esquire,* and was allowed to bear arms. He was then kept in constant service, waiting upon the master and mistress of the castle, and acquiring habits of perfect obedience and courtesy. Every care was taken to impress indelibly upon his mind a love of chivalry —that is, a devotion to feats of arms in behalf of the weak and oppressed, or in vindication of religion, and the honor and virtue of the female sex.

31. By means of this training, he was prepared to receive his golden spurs, and to take the vows of a *knight.* The candidate for this honor was obliged, the night before receiving it, to hold his vigil: that is, he kept silent watch within some gloomy chapel over the arms which he was about to assume. The chief of these was the lance, besides which he had a two-handed sword, the "dagger of mercy," and sometimes a bat

* The knight-errant traveled about from tournament to tournament, everywhere receiving hospitable entertainment. Out of chivalry sprang the *romance,* in which we find the deeds of such heroes as Arthur and Charlemagne related and embellished. These were sung by the *trouvères* of Normandy, the *troubadours* of Provence, and the *minnesingers* of Germany.

30. What was the training of those designed for knighthood? What was the page? The esquire? What sentiments were imparted?

31. How was knighthood assumed? What was the knight's equipment?

tle-axe or mace. He was clad from head to foot in armor, consisting of plates of metal riveted together, and worn over a dress of soft leather. His helmet bore a crest, ornamented with favors bestowed by the lady of his knightly devotion, and on his triangular shield was a coat of arms.

32. The display of chivalry was not confined to the battle-field, but found a frequent occasion in the tournament or joust *—the highest species of amusement of this period. It consisted of fierce personal contests, held in an inclosed space called the *lists*, around which, in galleries, sat the nobles and ladies to witness the sport, the outside being thronged with eager spectators from the lower orders. At the sound of the trumpet, the combatants, covered with steel and known only by their emblazoned shields, dashed at full gallop from the opposite ends of the lists; and meeting in the center with a terrific shock, one or the other was generally unhorsed, their lances often being shivered to pieces. The vanquished was thrown bruised and bleeding to the ground, and the victor was rewarded by receiving his horse and armor, and sometimes by the privilege of naming some lady, who, with the title of Queen of Love, presided over the remainder of the tournament. In other cases, he received a scarf, ribbon, or other favor from the lady in whose honor the tournament was held.

Tournaments.

33. These combats were not only used for sport, but were

* The tournament differed from the joust principally in the greater number of the combatants. Both were held in the open air, the tournament lasting several days. Outside the lists, were pitched the tents of the knights, decorated with their coats of arms; while immediately surrounding the lists, seats were arranged for spectators, who attended in large numbers. Special canopies of silk and other rich stuffs were erected for the ladies, who thronged to the spectacle arrayed in their costliest dresses. At the close of the performance the victorious knights were publicly crowned by the ladies of their choice.

32. What is said of the tournament? Mode of combat? Its usual result?

33. For what were these combats sometimes used? Why were they used to discover the guilty? What did this custom resemble? To what did it lead?

resorted to in order to discover the guilty, it being the prevailing belief that Providence would interpose, in all such cases, for the protection of the innocent. In this conviction, those who were charged with crime were challenged by their accusers, and were compelled to abide the issue of a personal combat in the lists. This appeal of the Normans to the justice of Heaven closely resembled the *ordeal* of the Saxons; and upon it was based the practice of the *duel* in more modern times.

Judicial Combat.

KNIGHT IN THE LISTS.*

34. The dress of the Normans was in many respects peculiar. A short cloak, often richly furred and ornamented with gold lace, worn over a loose doublet reaching half way down the leg, formed the most conspicuous portion of the gentleman's costume. The shoes had very long pointed toes, sometimes twisted in a very curious manner, and occasionally

Dress.

* The knight is here seen in his *hauberk*, or coat of mail. A sort of overcoat was sometimes worn over this in warm countries to mitigate the heat of the sun on metal armor. This was made of cloth or silk stuff, embroidered in gold and silver.

34. What was the dress of the Normans? Of the Norman ladies?

fastened by gold or silver chains to the knees. Long hose, fastened to the doublet by strings, called *points*, and a velvet bonnet, completed the costume. The Norman ladies wore a loose, wide-sleeved robe reaching to the ground, and covering a kirtle or under-gown of silk.

35. Other modes of costume were peculiar to various characters. Thus the *minstrel* was distinguished by his harp strung on his shoulder, a plate of silver on his arm, and a chain around his neck bearing the tuning-key; the fool, or jester, by his cap and bells, and his party-colored dress; the palmer, or pilgrim, by his sandals, the scallop-shells bordering his hat, and his iron-shod staff. The Saxon serf was clothed in untanned hide, sandals of hog-skin, and leathern hose, and wore a collar of brass engraved with his master's name.

36. The Normans had two regular meals—dinner and supper; and at these, flesh meats constituted a much more prominent article of food than with the Saxons. Thus, the names of these meats, as *veal*, *pork*, *mutton*, *beef*, etc., are of Norman or French origin; while the names of the animals themselves—*calf*, *pig*, *sheep*, *ox*, etc., which were tended by the Saxon farmers or serfs—are of Saxon origin. Wine was the favorite beverage of the higher classes, while the lower orders regaled themselves with ale.

Meals, etc.

37. Learning at this period was almost exclusively confined to the cloister, the monks and priests being the only scholars. Every monastery had its *writing-room*, where the copying of books was constantly carried on. The most noted among the writers of this time were William of Malmesbury, Geoffrey of Monmouth, and Henry of Huntingdon. These were the authors of several interesting chronicles, to some of which allusion has already been made.

Learning.

35. What was the costume of the minstrel? How was the minstrel otherwise distinguished? The jester? The palmer? The Saxon serf?

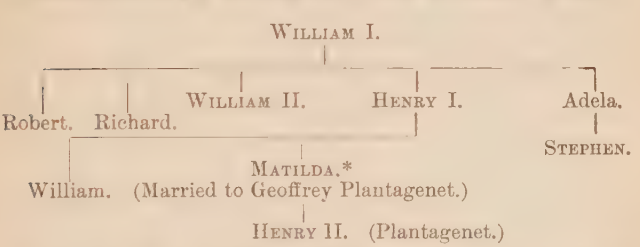
36. Meals of the Normans? Their food? Names of the meats? Names of the animals? Beverages used?

37. Learning? Monastery? Name the noted writers of this time. Of what were they the authors? (See preceding pages.)

CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

Date of Accession.	*Kings.*	*Duration of Reign.*
1066.	WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR	21 years.
1087.	WILLIAM RUFUS	13 "
1100.	HENRY I. (Beauclerc)	35 "
1135.	STEPHEN (of Blois)	19 "

GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE NORMAN KINGS.



* MOTHER OF MATILDA. -"Edith, or Matilda, was the daughter of King Malcolm of Scotland and of Margaret, the sister of Edgar Atheling. She had been brought up in the nunnery of Romsey by its abbess, her Aunt Christina; and the veil which she had taken there formed an obstacle to her union with the king, which was removed only by the wisdom of Anselm. The archbishop's recall had been one of Henry's first acts after his accession, and Matilda appeared before his court to tell her tale in words of passionate earnestness. She had been veiled in her childhood, she asserted, only to save her from the insults of the rude soldiery, who infested the land; had flung the veil from her again and again, and had yielded at last to the unwomanly taunts, the actual blows of her aunt. 'As often as I stood in her presence,' the girl pleaded passionately to the saintly primate, 'I wore the veil, trembling, as I wore it, with indignation and grief; but so soon as I could get out of her sight I used to snatch it from my head, fling it on the ground, and trample it under foot. That was the way, in none other, in which I was veiled.' Anselm at once declared her free from conventual bonds, and the shout of the English multitude when he set the crown on Matilda's brow drowned the murmur of churchman and baron. For the first time since the conquest, an English sovereign sat on the English throne." -Green's *Short History of the English People.* (See ¶ 18, page 82.)

TOPICAL REVIEW.

NARRATIVE.

When did the event occur?
What led to it?
What resulted therefrom?

	PAGE
Saxon league against William	74
Formation of the New Forest	75
Rebellion of Robert	76
Death of William I.	76
Establishment of the Feudal System	77
Invasion of Normandy by Rufus	79
War with Malcolm of Scotland	79
Preaching of the First Crusade	79
Death of Lanfranc	80
Mortgage of French lands	80
Death of the Red King	80
Invasion of England by Robert	82
Henry's invasion of Normandy	82
Death of Henry's son William	83
Death of Henry I.	83
Accession of Stephen of Blois	84
Invasion of England by the Scotch	85
Defeat of Stephen by Matilda	85
Marriage of Henry and Eleanor	85
Battle of the Standard	85

BIOGRAPHICAL.

Who were they?
With what events connected?
Other incidents of their lives?

Edgar Atheling	72, 73, 82
Lanfranc	75
Robert	76, 79, 82
Anselm	80 *n*
Walter Tyrrel	80 *n*
Henry Beauclerc	81
Maud the Good	82, 93 *n*
William Fitz-Robert	83
Prince William	83
Geoffrey Plantagenet	83 *n*
Stephen of Blois	84
Matilda	84, 85
Henry Plantagenet	85
William of Malmesbury	92
Geoffrey of Monmouth	92
Henry of Huntingdon	92

GEOGRAPHICAL.

Where are they situated?
With what events connected?

York	74
New Forest	75
Winchester	75 *n*
Normandy	77, 82, 85
Maine	77, 85
Cumberland	79
Guienne, or Aquitaine	80, 86
Cardiff	82
Anjou	83, 85
Touraine	85
Poitou	85

POLITICAL AND SOCIAL.

Meaning of the term?
Character and object of the institution?

Curfew	75
Feudal System	77
Homage	77 *n*
Domesday Book	77, 78 *n*
Charter of liberties	82
Vassal	82
Franklin, or thane	86
Church	88
Villain	88
Chivalry, or knighthood	88
Serf	88, 92
Page, or varlet	89
Esquire	89
Knight	89
Knight-errant	89
Tournament	90
Joust	90
Lists	90
Queen of Love	90
Judicial combat	91
Hauberk	91 *n*
Points	92
Minstrel	92
Palmer	92

SECTION III.

THE PLANTAGENETS.

Extending from the Accession of Henry II. (1154) *to that of Henry IV. of Lancaster* (1399).

1. Henry II. (Plantagenet), adding his extensive possessions in France to the English dominions, became on the death of Stephen one of the richest and most powerful monarchs in Europe. He afterward obtained control of Brittany, by marrying his son Geoffrey to the daughter of the duke of Brittany. He commenced his reign with vigor and resolution; and the foreign mercenaries who had so long infested the country were ordered to leave it, under the penalty of death. He revoked the grants of land which had been unjustly made during the previous reign, reclaimed the castles belonging to the crown, and compelled the disorderly nobles to dismantle their fortresses, by which they had been enabled to inflict so many cruelties upon the people.

Henry II. 1154–1180.

2. Having thus restored order to the kingdom by reducing the inordinate power of the barons, he next determined to bring the ecclesiastical power into subjection to that of the crown. As a fit instrument for carrying this into effect he chose Thomas à Becket, whom, on his accession, he had appointed chancellor, and subsequently had treated with the highest regard and honor, intrusting to him the education of his eldest son. Becket was of English descent, and had risen to eminence through his own talents and industry. The pomp of his retinue, the sumptuousness of his fur-

Becket.

1. What did Henry become, and how? How did Henry II. commence his reign?
2. What was his next object? What is said of Thomas à Becket?

niture and apparel, and the luxury of his table, are said to have been scarcely surpassed by those of the king, who himself frequently condescended to partake of the entertainments of his proud minister.

3. On the death of the archbishop of Canterbury, Henry naturally supposed that he should greatly facilitate his design with respect to the church by conferring the primacy upon a man so wedded to his interests as Becket. He accordingly issued orders to this effect, and the chancellor was duly installed in that high dignity. The king, however, soon found that he had been mistaken in his estimate of Becket's character; for the latter at once resigned the office of chancellor, abandoned all secular affairs, and, devoting himself exclusively to his sacred duties, in a short time became as famous for his austerity and piety as he had previously been for gayety, luxury, and splendor. He wore sackcloth next his skin, partook only of bread and water; frequently scourged himself in the severest manner; and, it is said, daily on his knees washed the feet of thirteen beggars, to evince his humility, and show penitence for his former pride and arrogance.

DOMINIONS OF THE ANGEVINS.*

* Henry being duke of Anjou, he and his successors, down to and including John, are called the *Angevins*.

3. Why was Becket made chancellor? What course did he pursue?

4. Determined to defend the privileges of his order, he was soon brought into a conflict with the king; the latter insisting that clergymen charged with the commission of crimes should be tried in the civil courts, while the archbishop asserted that they were amenable only to the ecclesiastical authority. The king therefore summoned an assembly of the prelates, and submitted to them the question in dispute; but, receiving only an evasive answer, he called a general council of the nobility and prelates at Clarendon Park, at which were proposed and adopted sixteen articles, called the "Constitutions of Clarendon," by which the clergy were made subservient to the royal authority (1164).

5. Becket for a time withheld his assent to these propositions; but, finding himself deserted by the other bishops, he at last solemnly promised to observe them. The Roman pontiff, however, annulled them; and Becket repented of his compliance, and renewed his opposition to the king. Henry, highly exasperated, caused the inflexible prelate to be prosecuted and condemned for contempt of the royal authority; and also demanded of him restitution of several large sums of money. Becket, finding resistance useless, secretly departed from England, and took refuge with the king of France, by whom, as well as by the Pope, he was encouraged and sustained in his opposition to Henry, the Pope threatening Henry with excommunication.

6. A settlement was, however, effected; and the king consented to the return of Becket, after six years of banishment, on terms quite favorable to the archbishop. The people and clergy received him with joyful acclamations, and the king hoped that all cause of trouble was at an end; but the archbishop had sent letters of suspension and excommunication

4. What conflict ensued? What was done by the king? What were the Constitutions of Clarendon?

5. What was the further course of Becket? Of Henry? What followed?

6. What settlement was effected? How was the king exasperated afterward? What were the consequences?

against three prelates for being concerned with the king in illegal acts during his absence, and he now proceeded violently to enforce them. When the intelligence of this was brought to Henry, he burst into a paroxysm of rage, and exclaimed, "Is there no one of my subjects who will rid me of this insolent priest?" Four knights, construing this as a command, immediately proceeded to the residence of the prelate, and, pursuing him into the cathedral, barbarously slew him before the altar (1170).

7. Henry was in Normandy when this occurred, and when he heard of it was thrown into the greatest consternation. He expressed the deepest sorrow for the words he had hastily uttered, and evinced the sincerity of his repentance by acts of the severest penance. Four years later he resolved to go as a pilgrim to the tomb of the murdered prelate, already canonized as a saint and martyr; and for miles of the way walked barefoot over the flinty road, marking his steps with blood. Independently of its atrocity, nothing could have been more disastrous to the king's cause than the murder of Becket; for the church party gained more by the death of their champion than all his best efforts could have won for them if he had lived, talented and determined as he was. Henry could obtain absolution from the Pope only by taking a solemn oath of innocence, and by promising to abolish all customs hostile to the liberties of the clergy, which had been introduced since his accession.

8. One of the most important events of this reign was the conquest of Ireland, which Henry partly effected in 1172.

Ireland.

Ireland, anciently called *Hibernia,* was peopled by a race similar to the Britons; but little is known of its history before the fourth century (¶ 4,

7. Effect of the murder of Becket upon the king? Upon the king's cause? How did Henry obtain absolution?

8. What important event occurred during this reign? History of Ireland? St. Patrick? Battle of Clontarf? Situation of Clontarf?

page 8).* Each province had its separate king, but was dependent upon the monarch who held his court at Tara.† In the fifth century the people were converted to Christianity, chiefly through the efforts of the renowned St. Patrick.‡ From the sixth to the twelfth century, Ireland became famous for its progress in literature and art, and sent forth many learned men and missionaries from the monasteries which had been established.§ For three centuries it was much harassed by the Northmen or Danes; but in 1014, the latter were utterly defeated in a great battle fought at Clon'tarf, near Dublin.

---

* "Many years before Christ, a race of men inhabited Ireland, exactly identical with its present population, yet very superior to it in point of material well-being; a people acquainted with the use of the precious metals, with the manufacture of fine tissues, fond of music and song, enjoying its literature and books; often disturbed, it is true, by feuds and contentions, but, on the whole, living happily under the patriarchal rule of the clan system."—Thebaud's *Irish Races.*

† "The ancient hall or court of Tara, in which, for so many centuries, the triennial councils of the nation had been held, saw for the last time (A.D. 554) her kings and nobles assembled within its precincts. Some fugitive criminal, who had fled for sanctuary to the monastery of St. Ruan, having been dragged forcibly from thence to Tara, and there put to death, the holy abbot and his monks cried aloud against the sacrilegious violation, and pronounced a curse upon its walls. 'From that day,' says the annalist, 'no king ever sat again at Tara.'"—Moore's *History of Ireland.*

‡ This celebrated missionary was born in the northwestern part of France, near Boulogne. He commenced his labors in 432, and after a life of indefatigable exertion, died at an advanced age.

§ "The five hundred years, one-half of which preceded the birth of our Lord, may be considered the period of Ireland's greatest power and military glory as a nation. The five hundred years which succeeded St. Patrick's mission may be regarded as the period of Ireland's Christian and scholastic fame. In the former she sent her warriors, in the latter her missionaries, all over Europe. Where her fierce hero-kings carried the sword, her saints now bore the cross of faith. It was in this latter period, between the sixth and the eighth centuries particularly, that Ireland became known all over Europe as the *Insula Sanctorum et Doctorum*—'the Island of Saints and Scholars.' Churches, cathedrals, monasteries, convents, universities, covered the island. From even the most distant parts of Europe, kings and their subjects came to study in the Irish schools."—Sullivan's *Story of Ireland.*

9. Some years before the death of Becket, Henry obtained permission from the Pope to subdue the island; but it was not until 1172 that an opportunity offered for effecting this object. One of the five subordinate kings having been expelled from his province, and having taken refuge in England, succeeded in enlisting a force from the Anglo-Norman nobles and adventurers commanded by Richard de Clare, surnamed Strongbow, with which he regained his kingdom. The English under Strongbow then so rapidly prosecuted the conquest of the country, that the next year Henry went there, and having received the submission of most of the native chiefs, committed the government of the conquered territory to a viceroy whom he appointed (1172).

10. This successful undertaking of Henry was followed by great troubles, occasioned by family dissensions. Three of his five sons, Henry, Richard, and Geoffrey, demanded a share of his dominions, and being refused went to France and entered into an alliance with Louis, king of that country, against their father. In this rebellion they were encouraged by their mother, Eleanor, who had become incensed against the king for his licentiousness, and particularly on account of his attachment to Rosamond Clifford, styled, in the ballads of the time, the "Fair Rosamond." William, king of Scotland, also entered into the league against Henry, and invaded the northern counties. It was in these distressful circumstances that the pilgrimage to Canterbury was made, when he received absolution from all connection with the murder of Becket.

Family Troubles.

11. So immediate seemed the answer to Henry's prayers and repentance, that the next day he received intelligence that the Scottish king had been defeated in a great battle,

9. What account is given of the conquest of Ireland?

10. What dissensions occurred in Henry's family? What was the conduct of his sons? Of Eleanor? Of William of Scotland? Pilgrimage of Henry?

11. Defeat of the Scots? The result? On what terms was peace made?

and taken prisoner (1174). This event destroyed the confederacy, and compelled its members to make submission to the English monarch. Peace was made with Louis, the rebellious princes returned to their obedience, and the king of Scotland was released on condition that he would thereafter hold his throne as a vassal to the king of England; and, to enforce this, the cities of Berwick and Roxburgh, together with the castle of Edinburgh, were placed in the possession of the English (1175).

Defeat of the Scots.

HENRY II. *(From his tomb at Fontevrault, France.)*

12. The latter part of Henry's reign was embittered by the renewed rebellion of his sons; but, in the midst of it, Henry, the eldest, was seized with a fatal illness, and died, feeling the deepest remorse for his unnatural conduct (1183). Geoffrey was mortally wounded in a tournament (1186); but Richard continued in his disobedience, and, encouraged by Philip of France, again took up arms against his father. Disheartened by these renewed misfortunes, Henry submitted to a very humiliating treaty of peace with the French king (1189); and when in the list of those who had been connected with Richard, and whom he had consented to pardon, he found the name of his youngest son, John—his especial favorite—the unhappy father yielded to despair, and heart-broken sank a few days afterward into the grave (1189).*

Henry's Sons.

* "He was taken ill at a conference with King Philip of France, and conveyed to the castle of Cherion, near Saumur, where his death was hastened

12. What is said of the latter part of Henry's reign? Conduct of his sons? Rebellion of John? Death of the king?

13. He was undoubtedly a great monarch, distinguished for wisdom and ability. He was averse to war; but when it was unavoidable, he entered into it with spirit and energy, and conducted it with talent and success. His administration of the government was characterized both by vigor and justice; and he did much to establish the royal authority in opposition to the violence of the feudal barons, and to the exorbitant claims and pretensions of the clergy. He was a patron of learning and art, and many Gothic edifices of great splendor were erected during his reign. The arts of civilized life also made considerable progress during the same period.

Character of Henry.

14. Richard I., Cœur de Lion (*kyur duh le-ong*—the lion-hearted), the third son of Henry II., succeeded, the two elder sons having previously died. Before the death of his father, Richard had engaged with Philip of France to enter upon a crusade against the infidels in Palestine; and accordingly the year after his accession, leaving his kingdom to be administered by two bishops, whom he appointed its guardians, he set out. Previous to his departure some of the Jews, having brought him presents on the day of his coronation, were insulted by the populace; and, a rumor spread-

Richard I. 1189-'99.

The Jews.

by grief and rage, caused by the rebellious proceedings of his sons, Richard and John. In his last moments, he was heard to utter broken exclamations, which alluded to his misfortunes and the conduct of his sons. He cried aloud, 'Shame! shame! on a conquered king! Cursed be the day when I was born! The curse of God be on the sons I leave behind me!' The bishops and the religious men who surrounded him used all endeavors to make him retract this malediction against his offspring; but he persisted in it to his latest breath. When he had expired, his corpse was treated by his servants as William the Conqueror's had formerly been; they all abandoned him, after stripping him of his last clothes, and carried off all that was valuable in the chamber and in the house."—Thierry's *History*.

13. Character of Henry II.? His government? Learning? The arts?

14. Who succeeded Henry II.? In what enterprise had Richard previously engaged? What is said of the massacre of the Jews?

ing that the king had commanded a massacre of these people, the populace, not only in London, but in York and other cities, rose up against them, and many were put to death with barbarous cruelty.*

15. After many delays, Richard and Philip arrived at their place of destination, and joined their forces to the other Christians, who, for two years, had besieged Acre (*a'ker*).† In a short time the city surrendered; but Philip, jealous of the superior abilities of Richard, and offended at his arrogance, determined to return home. Richard then marched his army to As'calon,‡ which, after many battles

Crusade.

* "All the Jews of York claimed shelter in the castle. They were admitted, to the number of five hundred. The governor went away, and, upon his return, the Jews, alarmed for their safety, refused him readmission. The fortress was attacked on all sides, and ransoms were refused. Then the desperate race, all except a few, put their wives and children to death, and stabbed each other, that they might not fall into the hands of their cruel enemies. The few who shrank from this terrible self-sacrifice were murdered."—Knight's *History of England.*

† A seaport of Syria, noted for the memorable sieges it has sustained. It was taken by the first Crusaders in 1104, retaken by the Saracens in 1187, and regained by Richard four years afterward, as mentioned in the text.

‡ A seaport of Syria, south of Acre, and about 40 miles W. S. W. of Jerusalem. It is now in ruins.

15. What account is given of the Crusade under Philip and Richard?

with the renowned Saladin, he succeeded in taking. He could, however, only obtain a sight of Jerusalem; for when he came near that city he found his forces so reduced in numbers, and so enfeebled by famine and hardship, that he was obliged to return (1192).

16. He therefore concluded a truce with Saladin, who agreed that Acre and other seaport towns in Palestine should remain in the hands of the Christians, and that the pilgrims should be permitted to visit the Holy City without molestation (1192). Richard had performed prodigies of valor in his numerous battles with the Saracens, and had exhibited the highest characteristics of an able and daring leader. So well known were his strength and courage, that, it is said, the Saracens would often say to their horses when restive, "What! do you think you see King Richard?" When it was necessary to repair the ruined walls of Ascalon, Richard, to encourage the soldiers, labored in person; and so great was the admiration in which he was held by Saladin, that, when he was dangerously sick with a fever, the generous sultan sent him fruits, ice to cool them, and other things necessary to aid in his recovery.

17. On his voyage homeward, Richard was driven by a storm to the coast of Istria.* As he had given great offense to the duke of Austria in Palestine, Richard undertook to travel through Germany in the disguise of a pilgrim to prevent arrest by the duke. He was, however, discovered, made a captive by the duke, and delivered to the emperor, by whom he was kept in confinement until his subjects consented to pay a large ransom for his liberation.† This unjust treat-

* Istria is situated on the northeastern shore of the Adriatic sea.

† "This imperial speculator (the emperor of Germany), for the sum of £60,000, had purchased the royal captive from Leopold, and 'the enemy of

16. What truce was concluded with Saladin? Richard's conduct and reputation in Palestine? What is said of the generous conduct of Saladin?

17. What happened to Richard while on his return? What was the conduct of Philip and John?

ment of so valiant a champion of the cross excited great indignation, not only in England, but in other countries of Europe: but Philip, although he had promised not to invade the territories of his colleague, with the grossest treachery and falsehood plotted with John to seize upon the dominions of the English monarch, and divide them between themselves.

18. This scheme was disconcerted by the return of the lawful sovereign, on whose appearance the joy of the English was beyond bounds; and John was obliged to ask pardon of his much-injured brother (1194). It was generously granted, at Queen Eleanor's intercession, with the exclamation: "O, that I could forget his injuries as soon as he will my forgiveness!" After settling the affairs of England, Richard made war upon Philip in revenge for his treachery, and transported an army into Normandy for the purpose. Hostilities continued, with occasional interruptions, until Richard's death, which was caused by a wound received while besieging the castle of a rebellious vassal in France (1199). He died in the tenth year of his reign, and the forty-second of his age.*

Richard's Death.

the empire and disturber of France,' to use his words, was now lodged in chains in one of the castles of the Tyrol, surrounded by trusty guards, who, with their naked swords, attended him by day, and watched at his bedside by night."—Lingard's *History of England.*

* "The last scene of Richard's life is an epitome of his qualities. He perished, not fighting for a dukedom, but for a paltry treasure which one of his barons had discovered on his estate. The royal right to treasure so found was asserted by the king. The Viscount of Limoges refused to surrender all the gold and silver, though he offered a large portion. Richard accordingly laid siege to the viscount's castle of Chaluz; and would allow the garrison no conditional surrender. They asked for safety of life and limb; but the king 'swore that he would take them by storm, and hang them all,' and accordingly the knights and men-at-arms returned to the castle in sorrow and confusion, and prepared to make a defense. Reconnoitering the fortress,

18. What followed the return of Richard? What was his conduct toward John? Toward Philip? When and how did his death occur?

19. The character of this monarch is one of the most romantic to be found in history, and displayed a love of adven-

Character.

ture, a military daring, and a strength and skill in feats of arms unsurpassed in ancient or modern times. His people, oppressed by the taxes which were ruthlessly levied to carry out his useless projects, were yet proud of his fame, though he accomplished nothing for their benefit, nor advanced in any respect the prosperity of the country. The best traits of his character were his fearlessness, generosity, and candor; but these were counterbalanced by his haughtiness, cruelty, and disregard for the good of others. He was passionately fond of music and poetry, being himself the author of several songs, which have given him a reputation among the *troubadours*, or poets of the time. Blondel, one of these minstrels, was his especial favorite.*

RICHARD I. (*From his tomb at Fontevrault.*)

20. Richard, having left no children, was succeeded by his brother John, sur-

John, 1199-1216.

named *Lackland;* although Arthur, Geoffrey's son, a youth of twelve years, was the rightful heir to the throne. Indeed, the barons in

Richard was wounded in the arm by an arrow, aimed by Bertrand de Gurdun. The castle being captured, the king ordered all the people to be hanged, one alone excepted—the youth who had wounded him."—Knight's *History of England.*

* According to tradition, it was Blondel who discovered, after many wanderings, the place of Richard's captivity in Germany, by singing under the walls of his prison his favorite song, to which the king at once responded.

19. Character of Richard? His popularity? What is said of Blondel?

20. Who succeeded Richard I.? Who was the rightful heir? What wars were waged in Arthur's favor? What was his fate?

the French provinces declared in his favor; and Philip also embraced Arthur's cause. John, having been crowned, immediately took active measures to defend his authority; and the French king, always actuated by selfish motives, entered into a treaty with him, and deserted the young prince (1200). Two years afterward the war was renewed, and Philip again brought Prince Arthur forward as a claimant to the throne against John; but the latter succeeded, in the course of the war, in taking his nephew prisoner, and caused him to be cruelly murdered (1203), or, as some writers declare, assassinated him with his own hand.*

Murder of Arthur.

21. Philip, at the instigation of the nobles of Brittany, then summoned John, as duke of Normandy and Aquitaine, to answer for this offense before a court of peers; but he refused to obey the summons, and was accordingly adjudged to lose all his French territories, the greater part of which Philip, in a few years, succeeded in conquering and annexing to his own dominions. Thus, of all the French provinces which Henry Plantagenet had acquired, scarcely a single castle was left to acknowledge the sovereignty of his wicked and imbecile son. Hence his surname, *Lackland.*

Lackland.

22. John was next involved in a quarrel with the Roman pontiff (Innocent III.), who, on the death of the archbishop of Canterbury (1205), had, without regard to the king's authority, caused Stephen Langton to be elected to the vacancy. John refusing to give his sanction

Interdict.

* The accounts differ. All that is really known is, that after his removal to Rouen he suddenly disappeared. The story that Hubert de Burgh, the warden of the castle of Falaise, where Arthur was at first confined, compassionately refrained from executing the cruel order of John to put out Arthur's eyes, rests upon fair historic authority, and has been rendered popular by Shakespeare's well-known drama "King John."

21. Why was John deprived of his French territories?

22. What led to a difficulty with the pope? What was done by Innocent?

to the appointment, Innocent placed the kingdom under an interdict, the effect of which was that the churches were closed, the dead were refused Christian burial, and all other religious offices ceased (1208). The king, still resisting, was formally excommunicated by the pope (1209); his people were then absolved from their allegiance to him, and a solemn injunction was laid upon Philip to execute the sentence and take possession of the kingdom (1212).

23. John, finding that he could not rely upon his subjects to make opposition to the French monarch, at last submitted, acknowledged Langton as primate, and solemnly surrendered his dominions to the pope, promising to hold them as his obedient vassal, and to pay him an annual tribute (1213). Philip, persisting in his design to conquer England, sustained a great disaster in the loss of his fleet, which was attacked by the English and destroyed, in the harbor of Damme (*dam*), in Flanders. This was the first naval action of importance between the French and English.

24. John's next contest was with his own subjects, whom he had inspired with universal discontent and hatred by his insolence, tyranny, and arbitrary exactions; and to these was now added the disgrace which they felt he had brought upon the nation by abandoning its independence, and surrendering it to a foreign power. The barons, therefore, under the leadership of Langton, determined to wrest from the king a charter of privileges, by which the royal authority should be restrained, and the liberties of the people more securely established.

25. This John steadily refused until a large army had been raised by the barons, and the city of London taken, when he finally submitted, and signed the famous *Magna*

23. Submission of John? Disaster to Philip? Why interesting?

24. John's next contest? What course did the barons pursue?

25. Magna Charta? Where and when was it signed? (Runnymede is on the Thames, about twenty miles from London.) One of its most important articles?

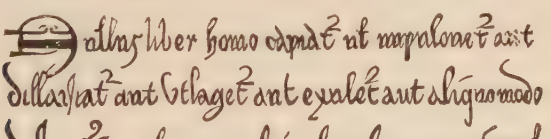
Charta (the Great Charter) at Runnymede (June 15, 1215). One of the most important articles of this instrument was, that "no delay should take place in doing justice to every one; and no freeman should be taken or imprisoned, dispossessed of his free tenement, outlawed, or banished, *unless by the legal judgment of his peers.*" This celebrated charter, therefore, although granted to the nobles, protected the rights of all, and is justly regarded as the palladium of English liberty.*

Magna Charta.

26. Although he had signed this instrument, and solemnly pledged his word to observe its provisions, John, with

* "How is it possible that at least a third of the provisions of the Charter should have related to promises and guarantees made in behalf of the people, if the aristocracy had only aimed at obtaining that which would benefit themselves? We have only to read the Great Charter in order to be convinced that the rights of all three orders of the nation (clergy, nobles, and common people) are equally respected and promoted."—*Guizot.*

The following is a paragraph in Magna Charta, as written:



The same in Roman letters.

Nullus liber homo capiatur, vel imprisonetur, aut dissaisiatur, aut utlagetur, aut exuletur, aut aliquo modo destruatur; nec super eum ibimus, nec super eum mittemus, nisi per legale judicium parium suorum, vel per legem terrae.

Translation.

No freeman shall be taken, or imprisoned, or disseised, or outlawed, or banished, or any ways destroyed; nor will we pass upon him, nor will we send upon him, unless by the lawful judgment of his peers, or by the law of the land.

26. What is said of the treachery of John? What foreign army was levied?

his accustomed faithlessness and treachery, determined, if possible, to disregard it and to punish its authors. For this purpose he raised an army of foreign soldiers, and, under the sanction of a decree of the pope, revoked his assent to the charter. The barons were taken by surprise; and John, with his barbarous mercenaries, marched through the kingdom, perpetrating every species of cruelty, and laying waste county after county with fire and sword.

KING JOHN. (*From his tomb in Worcester Cathedral.*)

John's Death.

27. The barons, seeing no other means of redress, then had recourse to Philip of France, and offered to acknowledge his son Louis king of England on condition of receiving aid against their tyrannical sovereign. An army was accordingly sent over with Louis at its head, and John took measures to assemble all his forces to oppose it; but, passing from Lynn to Lincoln, his road lay along the sea-shore, and being overtaken by the tide, he lost all his carriages, treasures, and baggage. This disaster, coupled with the distracted condition of his affairs, threw him into a fever, of which he in a few days expired, in the eighteenth year of his detestable reign (1216).

Character.

28. Few characters in history deserve so thoroughly the execration and contempt of mankind as this wicked king. Falsehood, cowardice, tyranny, and licentiousness marked his whole conduct; and not a redeeming trait seems to have existed to save him from utter reprobation. His ingratitude to his kind father, his treachery to

27. Course taken by the barons? Disaster to the king? His death?
28. Character of John? How was he an instrument of good?

his generous brother, and his cruelty toward his innocent nephew were only equaled in baseness by the cowardice with which he surrendered the rights of his subjects when it seemed necessary to serve his own interests. Yet, bad as he was, he proved an instrument for good in the hands of a beneficent Providence; since his intolerable oppression drove the barons into rebellion, and was thus the means of securing the freedom of the people.

29. At the time of John's death the earl of Pembroke was marshal of England, and he without delay caused Henry, the son of the late king, a youth nine years of age, to be crowned. Pembroke, who was an able and virtuous nobleman, was, at a general council of the barons, chosen protector of the realm. One of his first acts was to cause the Great Charter to be renewed and confirmed; and consequently most of the rebellious nobles soon made their submission to his government. The army of Louis being defeated at Lincoln, and a fleet bringing him succor being destroyed, he was obliged to leave the kingdom. This ended the civil war which the oppression of King John had excited. Pembroke soon after died (1219); and the government was subsequently administered for nearly ten years by Hubert de Burgh, a nobleman who had acquired great renown in the recent naval action with the French.

Henry III., 1216–'72.

30. As the young king advanced in age, he was found to resemble his father in the weakness of his character, but was gentle, merciful, and humane. For years he showered favors upon his minister Hubert de Burgh, and implicitly followed his councils; but at length, in a fit of caprice, he not only dismissed him, but subjected him to a series of the

29. Who was crowned king? Who was chosen protector? His first measures? End of the civil war? Who succeeded Pembroke? Where is Lincoln? (*See Progressive Map No.* 4.)

30. Character of the young king? How did he treat Hubert de Burgh? His next counselor? His course toward foreigners? His marriage?

most merciless persecutions (1231). Peter, bishop of Winchester, a native of Poitou (*pwah-too'*), in France, then became his chief counselor; and, acting on his advice, he invited over a great number of foreigners, on whom he conferred the most important offices and dignities, in order that through them he might counterbalance the power of the English nobles. Having married Eleanor, daughter of the count of Provence (*pro-vongs'*) (see map, page 73), he also brought over a number of strangers from that country, whom he enriched at the expense of his own subjects (1236).

31. To these grievances were also added the exactions of the court of Rome, to which Henry had, on his accession, renewed the oath of allegiance taken by his father. All the chief offices in the church were bestowed on Italians, and a large part of the ecclesiastical revenues were claimed by the Roman pontiff. Moreover, the latter having decreed the forfeiture of the crown of Sicily, offered it to Henry, who, accepting the proposal, spent vast sums of money in attempting to complete its conquest; and, in order to pay the debt thus incurred, applied to the Parliament for supplies. This, with other unwise and arbitrary acts, involved him in a difficulty with the barons, who compelled him in the most solemn manner to promise compliance with the provisions of Magna Charta; but, under the influence of his unworthy favorites, he broke all his engagements.

32. The barons, therefore, under the leadership of Simon de Montfort, earl of Leicester (*les'ter*), the king's brother-in-law, being resolved to take the government into their own hands, appointed a council of state from their own number to redress the grievances under which they suffered; and Henry was compelled to

Revolt of the Barons.

31. What other grievances did the people suffer? What was done with regard to the crown of Sicily? What is said of the deceitful conduct of Henry?

32. What course did the barons take? How did the barons become unpopular? Which side did Louis IX. favor?

acquiesce in their authority (1258). This proceeding was at first popular; but, the council becoming exorbitant in their demands, the favor of the people inclined toward the king; and the influence of the barons became still further impaired by dissensions between the chief leaders, the earls of Leicester and Gloucester (*glos'ter*). Louis IX. also sustained the cause of the king against the rebellious barons, and exerted himself to pacify the contending parties.

33. Civil war soon broke out, and Leicester, summoning his partisans from all quarters, gained a decisive victory over the royal forces at Lewes (1264), taking Henry and his son Edward prisoners. The whole power of the kingdom was thus thrown into the hands of Leicester, who, in order to strengthen his influence, summoned a parliament, giving seats in it, not only to the barons and knights, but to the *representatives of the boroughs, or towns* (1265). This is considered the first institution of the House of Commons, which, representing the will of the great body of the people, has ever proved the chief bulwark of the political and civil liberty of the country.

House of Commons.

34. Prince Edward having escaped from the confinement in which he had been kept by Leicester, raised an army; and in the battle of Eves'ham entirely defeated the forces of Leicester, who, with his eldest son, was among the slain (1265). The victors, with savage ferocity, wreaked their vengeance upon his lifeless body; but the people long regarded him as a martyr to their cause and the champion of their liberties. By this victory Henry's authority was re-established in all parts of the kingdom; and Prince Edward, having by prudent measures restored general tranquillity, and infused a wiser and more

Death of Leicester.

33. What led to the battle of Lewes? Where is Lewes? (*See Progressive Map No.* 5.) Effects of this battle? Institution of the House of Commons?

34. What led to the battle of Evesham? Where is Evesham? What were the results of it? What was done by Prince Edward? Death of Henry III.?

popular spirit in the government, went on a crusade to the Holy Land, in connection with King Louis of France (1270). Before his return his father died, after the exceedingly long reign of fifty-six years (1272).

35. Henry was mild and pacific in his disposition, but possessed neither the talents nor force of character required to cope successfully with the difficulties of so disturbed a period. Like all weak sovereigns, he was inconsistent and vacillating in his measures, and thus acquired the reproach of great insincerity. England during his reign increased in wealth and influence, and widely extended her commercial relations with other countries. This period also appears to mark the thorough intermingling of the Saxon and Norman races. The English language began to assume its present form; and the difference in dress, so long a mark of distinction between the conquering and the conquered people, had nearly passed away before the end of Henry's reign.

Character of Henry.

HENRY III. (*From his tomb in Westminster Abbey, London.*)

36. Edward, surnamed Longshanks, the son of the late king, who had already acquired among the English a high reputation for talent and address, was at once acknowledged sovereign by the barons, although absent, not having returned from his expedition to Palestine. After many glorious achievements in that country, he had hastened his departure, having heard of his father's illness; and had reached Sicily, when he received

Edward I., 1272-1307.

35. Character of Henry III.? Progress made during his reign in commerce? Change in the people? Language? Dress?

36. Who succeeded Henry III.? His surname? Why? (On account of the length of his legs.) What is said of his exploits in Palestine? His return? His first measure?

tidings of the king's death, and of the peaceful settlement of the crown upon himself. He accordingly made no haste to occupy the throne, but spent more than a year in Italy and France before he arrived in England. After his coronation (1274), he made provision for the proper administration of justice and for a strict execution of the laws.

37. The first event of importance during this reign was the conquest of Wales. Llew-el'lyn, prince of that country, had been concerned in the rebellion of Simon de Montfort, but after his death had been pardoned. Edward, on his accession, repeatedly sent him a summons to perform the duty of a vassal; and on his refusal invaded the country with an army, and compelled him to yield obedience (1277). Five years afterward the Welsh prince, with the aid of his brother David, again asserted his independence; but in an action with the English, under Edward, was defeated and slain (1282). David was a short time afterward taken prisoner, sent in chains to Shrewsbury, and there executed as a traitor (1283). The principality was then annexed to the crown, and vested in the king's son,

Conquest of Wales.

CORONATION CHAIR. *(In Westminster Abbey.)* *

* This coronation chair was made for Edward I. Beneath the seat is the famous Stone of Destiny, brought from Scone, in Scotland, as a trophy by Edward I. Upon this stone, originally brought from Ireland, the kings of Scotland used to be inaugurated; and its restoration was the subject of many treaties between the two kingdoms. It had been prophesied that Scotland would lose its independence if the stone should be carried away; and, more than three centuries after Edward took it to England, it was thought that the prophecy was fulfilled by the accession of James I. to the English throne.

37. What is narrated of Llewellyn, prince of Wales? Of David, his brother? What was done with Wales? What title was given to the heir-apparent?

Edward, who was born at Caernarvon (*ker-nar'von*), and by the death of his elder brother became heir to the English throne. Ever since that event the heir-apparent has been styled the "Prince of Wales."*

38. The persecutions to which the Jews were exposed illustrate the bigotry as well as barbarity of these times.

The Jews.

Clipping the coin was made a capital offense; and in the first part of this reign 280 Jews were hanged, the sole evidence of their guilt being the possession of some of this coin (1278). A few years afterward, all the Jews in England were imprisoned, and were released only on their paying to the king £12,000; and finally the whole race, to the number of over 16,000, were banished the kingdom (1290), and their property forfeited to the crown. It was nearly four centuries before any of that proscribed race were allowed again to come into England.†

39. The wars with Scotland occupy nearly all the rest of this reign. Alexander III., king of that country, having

Wars with Scotland.

died without heirs, numerous competitors arose for the throne, the most prominent of whom were John Ba'liol and Robert Bruce, the former being the *grandson* of the *eldest* daughter, and the latter a *son* of the *second* daughter of David, the brother of William II.,

* According to a Welsh tradition, Edward I. promised to give the Welsh a prince born among them and unable to speak a word of English, and when his son Edward was born he bestowed the principality upon him. *Ich Dien* (I serve) is the motto of the prince of Wales.

† Edward, from his zeal in the holy wars, was sometimes styled Edward the Crusader, and he hated all unbelievers in Christianity with extreme bigotry. No one felt bound to respect the rights of an Israelite, and to bring a Jew before a Christian tribunal was the same as signing his death-warrant. Two hundred and eighty, of both sexes, were hanged in London alone. The expulsion was prompted both by rapacity and bigotry, for it was done by the king to raise money to carry forward his scheme to subjugate Scotland.

38. What is said of the persecutions of the Jews? Their banishment?

39. What wars occupy much of this reign? What question arose as to the succession in Scotland? What course did Edward pursue?

the king whom Henry II. had defeated and taken prisoner. The parliament of Scotland, wishing to avoid a civil war, referred the matter to the arbitration of Edward, who took advantage of the circumstances to claim his right, as lord paramount, to the Scottish throne; and to this the Scots, though with great indignation toward the English king, were compelled to submit (1291).

40. The question between Baliol and Bruce having been decided by the most celebrated lawyers of Europe in favor of the former, as being the most direct heir, he was accordingly placed upon the throne, after having taken the oath of fealty to the English monarch (1292). Not satisfied with this, Edward so harassed Baliol with frequent and degrading commands, that the latter determined at all hazards to make a stand for his own and his country's liberty, especially as at that time a war had broken out between England and France. This war had its origin in a quarrel between the crews of an English and a Norman vessel, who, happening to go to the same place to fill their water-casks, fell into a dispute, in the course of which one of the Normans was slain. This bred dissensions between the sailors of both countries, and the sea soon became a scene of constant combats and piracies between them. At length a fleet of English ships encountered one of Norman vessels, and after a fierce battle destroyed or captured nearly the whole (1293).

French War.

LADIES' HEAD-DRESSES. (*Time of Edward I.*)

40. How was the question settled? Why did Baliol revolt? What led to a war with France?

41. Philip, king of France, being then appealed to, summoned Edward, as duke of Guienne (*ghe-en'*), to appear and answer for these offenses committed by his subjects; and afterward artfully persuaded him temporarily to relinquish possession of the duchy, as a satisfaction for all injuries. The French king thus obtaining control of Guienne again cited Edward, and on his refusal to appear declared the duchy forfeited, and annexed it to his own dominions (1294). In order still further to embarrass Edward, he entered into a secret alliance with Baliol, thus commencing that union between the Scottish and French nations which for centuries was maintained by their common hostility to the English. In order to obtain the supplies needed to carry on this double war, Edward called a parliament, to which he directed that the representatives of the boroughs should be summoned, stating that "what concerns all should be approved by all"—a principle that lies at the foundation of all civil and political freedom (1295).

Guienne.

42. Edward, with characteristic energy, marched into Scotland with a large army, and having defeated the Scots near Dunbar reduced all the southern part of the country (1296). Baliol at once submitted and was carried a prisoner to London. He was kept in confinement for two years, after which he was allowed to retire to France, where he died in obscurity. Scotland, although subdued for a time, soon found a noble champion in the renowned William Wallace, who defeated an English army of 40,000 men near Stirling, and committed great ravages in the north of England (1297). The next year, however, Edward defeated Wallace in the battle of Falkirk (*fawl'-kirk*), and again established his power in Scotland. Wallace

Wallace.

41. How did Philip obtain Guienne? What alliance did he enter into? What did this begin? What measure was adopted by Edward?

42. How was Baliol subdued? What became of him? What victory was gained by William Wallace? Battle of Falkirk? Fate of Wallace? Where are Stirling and Falkirk? (*See Progressive Map No.* 5.)

was never afterward able to gain a decisive victory over his country's enemies, although he fought bravely for several years, until, having been betrayed* by one of his own countrymen into the power of Edward, that remorseless king sent him to London; and, in order to intimidate the Scottish leaders, caused him to be executed (1305).

FEMALE COSTUME. (*Time of Edward I.*)

43. The people of Scotland, indignant at the oppressions of the English, and at the cruel and ignominious treatment of their illustrious champion Wallace, determined to make another effort to regain their liberties, finding a gallant and patriotic leader in Robert Bruce, grandson of the competitor of Baliol, who, being acknowledged the rightful heir to the throne, had been solemnly crowned in the abbey of Scone. The English

Bruce.

* "A price was set on his head. Hunted from covert to covert, he had taken refuge in the strong and wooded country between Glasgow and Dumbarton. Sir John Menteith, once his friend, and now commander of the castle of Dumbarton in the service of Edward, bribed Wallace's servant to discover the place of his retreat. Wallace used to lodge at Robrastoun, a solitary village near Glasgow. He had but two attendants, Kerlie, or little Ker, and a nephew of Menteith. About midnight on the night of his capture, Wallace and his two attendants repaired to their lodging. He and Kerlie lay down to sleep, the young man, Menteith's nephew, keeping watch. When they were locked in deep sleep, the villain crept in softly and took away their arms. His uncle was at hand with sixty men. The house was surrounded, and the sleeping men mastered. Kerlie was dragged to the door and killed. Wallace was bound with cords, and hurried away to the south before daybreak. They conveyed him across Solway Sand to Carlisle, and thence to London."—Mackenzie's *History of Scotland.*

43. What is said of Robert Bruce? By whom was he defeated? What account is given of the death of Edward? His last injunction to his son?

were soon driven again from the country; but Edward immediately sent thither a considerable army under Ay'mer de Valence (*val-ons'*), a skillful general, by whom Bruce, in spite of the most heroic exertions, was defeated, and compelled to take shelter in the western isles.* Edward, determined to take vengeance upon the Scots, marched with a great army to the north; but, worn out with care and fatigue, fell sick at Carlisle and died (1307). His last injunction to his son and successor was to continue the war until Scotland should be entirely subdued.

Death of Edward.

44. Edward was one of the ablest and most successful monarchs that ever reigned. He was politic and warlike, and very popular on account of his majestic personal appearance, his military successes, and the efforts which he made to reform and establish the laws. These efforts gained for him the appellation of the "English Justinian." The Great Charter was solemnly confirmed by him in the twenty-fifth year of his reign, although with great

Character.

* "The English, assisted by a body of Galloway men, eagerly endeavored to hunt Bruce down. Driven from haunt to haunt, weary, toil-worn, and dejected, he had retired one day into a wretched hovel to snatch some repose. There, as he lay upon a heap of straw, his mind darkly pondering on his gloomy situation, he had well-nigh resolved to abandon the whole enterprise, leave Scotland, and engage in the crusade. A spider, hanging by its long thread from the roof of the hovel, caught his eye. The creature was endeavoring to swing itself from one rafter to another. Its movements interested the king. Six times it made its attempt, and failed. Would it try it once more, and succeed after all? Bruce thought within himself, If this creature tries again, and succeeds in its object, I too will make another attempt. The history of this proud old country hung by a spider's thread. Bruce watched. The spider launched itself from its rafter the seventh time, and succeeded. The perseverance and success of the insect struck the king like a cheering omen. He thought no more of giving up his enterprise, and the strength of his mighty purpose was renewed within him. Never, surely, was little thing so great as that day in the Carrick hovel. Such is the famous tradition of Bruce and the spider."—Mackenzie's *History of Scotland.*

44. What is said of the character of Edward I.? What was he styled? What political principles were established?

reluctance on his part; and he was compelled also to give his formal assent to the principle, so important in the English Constitution, that "no taxes can be lawfully imposed without the consent of parliament." It is very much to the credit of the English that they were able to wrest these important concessions from so able and vigorous a monarch as Edward I.

45. The people not only made progress in political freedom during this reign, but in general intelligence and social culture. Many discoveries in science and many useful inventions were made by Roger Bacon,* among the latter that of gunpowder, although he failed to adapt it to any practical purpose. Considerable foreign commerce was carried on, chiefly by Germans,† the principal commodities being tin, lead, leather, and wool. The native merchants remonstrating to Edward against permitting "merchant strangers" to settle in the kingdom, he replied that they were of great benefit to the country, and should not be expelled. The trade was to a considerable extent carried on at fairs, which often continued for more than a fortnight, and were attended by vast crowds of people, sometimes equaling the population of large cities.

Science.

Trade.

46. "Edward of Caernarvon," so called from the place of his birth, proved a very unworthy successor of his talented

* Roger Bacon was born in 1214, and educated at Oxford. His scientific knowledge was so far above the comprehension of his contemporaries, that he was accused of sorcery. He died in 1294. It was not until 1320 that Schwartz discovered a method of producing *granulated gunpowder*, and thus adapted it to practical use.

† These German merchants were called *Esterlings* (people from the east), from the situation of their country; and as they coined a large part of the money, good currency came to be called *sterling* money.

45. What progress was made during this reign? What is said of Roger Bacon? Foreign commerce? How was trade carried on? Origin of the name "sterling money"? (See note.)

46. Title given to Edward II.? What is said of him? The Scots? Conduct of Edward? What account is given of Gaveston?

and illustrious father. Disobeying the solemn injunction imposed upon him, he speedily withdrew his forces from Scotland; and thus Robert Bruce was enabled gradually to recover from the English the fortresses which they had seized, and to re-establish the freedom of his country. In the mean time Edward gave himself up to the influence of an unworthy favorite, Gaveston by name, the son of a Gascon knight, brave, accomplished, and of handsome appearance, but of frivolous manners, and very much hated by the English nobles, whom, priding himself upon his power over the king, he treated with haughty disdain.

Edward II. 1307-'27.

Gaveston.

47. Twice compelled by Parliament to banish Gaveston from the kingdom, Edward as often recalled him, and restored him to his former wealth and dignity. At length, a confederacy of the nobles having been formed to accomplish his ruin, he was captured by their forces, conducted to Warwick castle, and without trial, or any legal process whatever, beheaded, as an enemy to the kingdom (1312). Edward was at first very indignant at the murder of his favorite, and vowed vengeance against the nobles who had been concerned in its perpetration; but he soon afterward granted them a full pardon, on their consenting to supplicate him for it publicly on their knees.

48. Soon after these events the attention of the king was called to the Scots, who, not content with defending their own country, had made successful inroads into England. The union of all parties, after the death of Gaveston, seemed to offer a favorable opportunity to concentrate all the forces of the kingdom against Scotland, and to recover all that had been lost in that country by the lethargy of the king. The castle of Stirling was the only

Scotland.

47. Further account of Gaveston and his fate? What was the behavior of Edward toward the nobles?

48. What had, meanwhile, been done by the Scots? What castle was besieged?

fortress, except Berwick, which the English still retained; and this had long been closely besieged by Edward Bruce, brother of the Scottish king.

49. Thither, with an immense army (100,000 according to the Scotch writers), Edward marched to relieve the garrison; and Robert Bruce, being determined to risk a battle, drew up his forces (about 30,000 in number) at Bannockburn, about two miles from Stirling, where his army was protected by a hill on his right, a morass on his left, and a rivulet on his front. The English advanced with great confidence; but their cavalry were immediately thrown into disorder by an ingenious device of Bruce, who had caused deep pits to be dug in the plain which extended between his army and the rivulet. Before the English army could recover from this disaster, they were dismayed by seeing what appeared to be a second Scottish army coming over the hill, but which was, in fact, only a large number of wagoners and servants of the army, whom Bruce had supplied with banners, and stationed behind the hill. The English, panic-stricken, fled from the field, and were pursued with great slaughter till they reached Berwick (*ber'rik*). The king escaped capture only by taking shelter at Dunbar, whence he sailed to Berwick (1314). This victory secured the independence of Scotland, which was acknowledged by England fourteen years later.

Bannockburn.

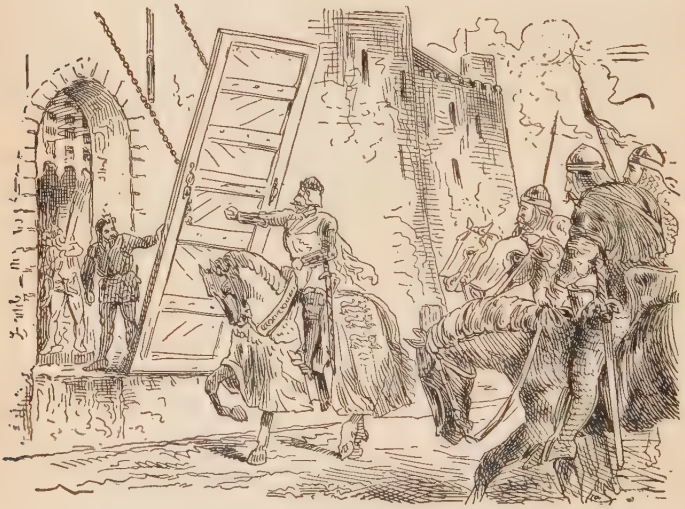
50. The embarrassment of Edward, caused by this severe disaster to his arms, was increased by insurrections in Ireland and Wales; and still further by the factious opposition of the English barons, prominent among whom was the earl of Lancaster. With no force of character, or capacity for serious business, the king was unable to cope with these difficulties, and weakly surrendered himself to the

49. Edward's invasion of Scotland? Battle of Bannockburn? Escape of the king? What was the effect of this victory?

50. How was Edward's embarrassment increased? His conduct? The Spensers?

influence of another favorite, named Spenser, or Despenser, a young man of high rank, engaging appearance and manners, and attractive accomplishments. So extravagant were the honors and authority bestowed by Edward upon this new minion as well as upon his father, that Lancaster and the other great barons,

Spenser.



EDWARD II. REPULSED FROM STIRLING CASTLE BY DE MOWBRAY.*

jealous of his influence, combined against him; and raising an army compelled parliament to sentence both the Spensers to perpetual exile.

51. The king subsequently succeeded in uniting his

* Philip de Mowbray, the commander of the castle, had agreed to surrender it if not relieved by the 24th of June, the feast of St. John the Baptist. After the battle of Bannockburn, fought on the 24th, Edward fled to Stirling; but De Mowbray, as the battle was lost, knowing that he was in honor bound to deliver up the castle to Bruce, refused to admit Edward, who, in consequence, was compelled to seek other refuge.

51. What led to their recall? What was the conduct of Queen Isabella?

friends, and with a considerable army proceeded against Lancaster, whom he defeated, and caused to be executed in a very ignominious manner, together with others of the same faction (1322). The Spensers were therefore recalled and invested with increased dignities; but they gave new offense by the arrogance of their demeanor.

Isabella.

EDWARD II. (*From tomb at Gloucester Cathedral.*)

Edward's queen, Isabella, daughter of Philip the Fair of France, a woman remarkable for her beauty, but of unrestrained dissoluteness, was especially hostile to these insolent favorites; and she became indignant at the king for his imbecility and neglect. Forming the acquaintance of one Roger Mortimer, she made him her companion and paramour, and entered into a plot for the destruction of the favorites and the dethronement of her husband (1325).

52. The king, deserted by all his subjects, fled into Wales, but was soon obliged to surrender himself a prisoner (1326). Soon afterward a parliament was called by the queen; and he was formally deposed, and subsequently confined for a time in Kenilworth castle,* his son Edward being placed on the throne, under a council of regency, although the government was really administered by Isabella and Mor-

Deposition of Edward.

* Kenilworth is a town in the western part of England, beautifully situated on the Avon. The castle, now an extensive, ivy-covered ruin, was founded in the reign of Henry I. It remained entire till sacked by the soldiers of Cromwell. The name *Kenilworth* is said to be derived from *Kenulph*, a Mercian king. (See illustration, page 127.)

52. Flight and captivity of the king? What was his fate?

timer (1327). The unfortunate king was afterward removed to Berkeley castle,* and placed in the power of brutal keepers, who treated him with the most revolting cruelty and insult. At last, by order of Mortimer, these ruffians put him to death in a most shocking manner, and reported that he had died of a violent disease, since they had contrived that his person outwardly should betray no signs of the murderous treatment to which he had been subjected (September, 1327).

53. Edward III. was only fourteen years of age when he was crowned king (January, 1327). The next year he was married to Philippa, daughter of the Count of Hainault (*a-no'*), having been for some time previously affianced to this princess by his mother, Isabella. During the regency an unsuccessful expedition was undertaken against the Scots; and a disgraceful treaty was entered into with them, Mortimer consenting to give up all claim to homage from the Scottish monarch. This treaty was ratified by Parliament, but created great discontent among the people (1328). Mortimer, with the consent of Parliament, now assumed the title of earl of March; but his arbitrary conduct, and his insolent usurpation of royal power, made all parties hostile to him; and the young prince, with a spirit and judgment beyond his years, contrived a method to put an end to his rule. With the aid of several of the nobles, he entered the castle occupied by the guilty pair, and seized Mortimer, who was condemned to death by Parliament without trial, and hanged on a gibbet (1330).† The queen was kept in close confinement during the remainder of her life.

Edward III., 1327-'77

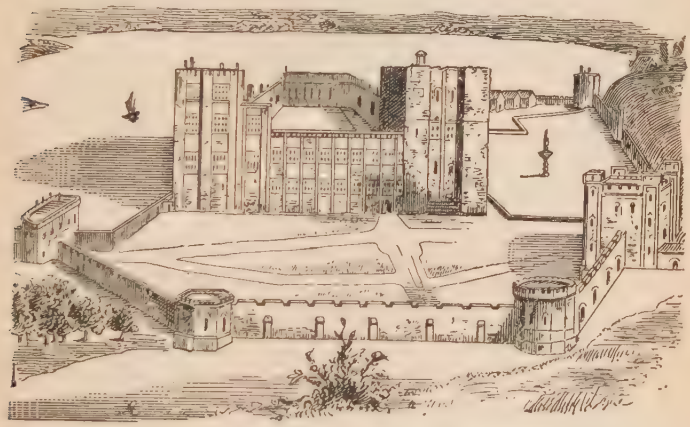
* Berkeley is near the Severn, in the western part of England. The castle is a large, irregular pile, inclosing a spacious court, and regarded as one of the finest specimens of feudal architecture in England. The apartment in which the unfortunate Edward met his fate is still shown to visitors.

† "It is remarkable that this sentence, twenty years after, was reversed

53. Who was crowned king? What is said of Edward's marriage? Treaty with the Scots? Conduct of Mortimer? End of his misrule?

54. Robert Bruce, who had fully achieved the independence of Scotland, left the throne to his son David, who, at the time of his father's death, was only five years old. Edward, taking advantage of this circumstance, endeavored to depose the young king, so as to place on the throne Edward Baliol, son of the former king of that name, he having agreed to hold it as a vassal of the English monarch. This the Scots resisted, but were severely defeated

Scotland.



KENILWORTH CASTLE. (*See note, page* 125.)

by Edward in the great battle of Hal'idown (or Halidon) Hill (1333), and were thus again brought into subjection to the English crown. David, after this great defeat, fled from his country and took refuge in France.

by parliament in favor of Mortimer's son, on account of the alleged illegality of the proceeding. This shows that the principles of justice were beginning to prevail, though not sufficiently established. The descendants of Mortimer, by the female line, subsequently succeeded to the throne. The queen was deprived of her exorbitant income, which she had granted to herself, and reduced to a pension of £3,000 a year."—*Hume.*

54. What led to the battle of Halidown Hill? What was its result? Where was Halidown Hill? *Ans.* Near Berwick-on-Tweed. (*See Progressive Map No.* 5.)

55. Edward's next object of ambition was to acquire possession of the throne of France, circumstances seeming at this time to favor the project; for Charles IV., the French king, having died without heirs, the nation had placed his cousin Philip on the throne. But Edward, through his mother, Isabella, was a more direct descendant; and on this ground, notwithstanding that the ancient laws of France (the *Salic law—i. e., the law of the Salian Franks*) excluded females from the throne, he claimed his right to the succession, and proceeded to vindicate it by force of arms.

France.

56. Having destroyed the French fleet in a great naval battle (1340), he invaded France, and, with forces far inferior to those of Philip, defeated him in the memorable battle of Crecy (*kres'e*).* This battle was made particularly interesting, not only by the greatness of the victory achieved by Edward, but also by the fact that in it cannon were effectively employed by the English,† and also as the occasion on which the king's son Edward, styled the *Black Prince* (from the color of his armor), commenced his brilliant military career (1346).

Crecy.

* "On the day of the battle, and on the ensuing, there fell, by a moderate computation, 1,200 French knights, 1,400 gentlemen, 4,000 men-at-arms, besides about 30,000 of inferior rank. Many of the principal nobility of France, the dukes of Lorraine and Bourbon, the earls of Flanders, Blois, Vaudemont, and Aumale, were left on the field of battle. The kings, also, of Bohemia and Majorca were slain. The fate of the former was remarkable: he was blind from age, but, being resolved to hazard his person and set an example to others, he ordered the reins of his bridle to be tied on each side of the horses of two gentlemen of his train; and his dead body and those of his attendants were afterward found among the slain, with their horses standing by them in that situation. His crest was three ostrich feathers, and his motto these German words, *Ich Dien* ('I serve'), which the Prince of Wales and his successors adopted in memory of this great victory."

† Fire-arms appear to have been used by the Chinese as early as 618 B. C.,

55. What was the occasion of Edward's claiming the French throne? What was the Salic law?

56. Invasion of France? Battle of Crecy? Why especially interesting?

57. Edward next took Calais (*kal'is*), after a siege of nearly twelve months; and, having expelled all the inhabitants, peopled it anew with English, thus making it in fact an English city. He also made it an emporium for the four chief commodities of his kingdom—wool, leather, tin, and lead. By this policy he was the means of preserving this city, regarded as the key of France, to his successors for nearly two centuries. While Edward was thus engaged, the Scottish people rallied for the restoration of their independence, and again placed David Bruce upon the throne, who, invading England, was defeated and taken prisoner in the battle of Neville's Cross, near Durham (1346).

Calais.

COSTUME. (*Time of Edward III.*)

58. This victory was in some measure due to the activity and heroism of Queen Philippa, who, previous to the action,

nearly two thousand years before the battle of Crecy. They were also used in various forms in India; and in the eighth century by the Saracens. The invention of gunpowder is generally attributed to Friar Bacon, who, in 1270, announced its composition; but it was not until 1320 that the proper mode of making it was understood. "The application of gunpowder to projectile warfare, and the use of cannon became general in Europe during the fourteenth century. Artillery is also said to have been used by Henry III., of England, in 1267, and by the Spaniards in 1280. But it is held by those well qualified to judge that the first unquestionable testimony of the employment of cannon is in 1338, under Edward III."—*Encyclopædia Britannica.*

57. Capture of Calais? How did Edward treat the inhabitants? Further history of the city? What led to the battle of Neville's Cross? (*See Progressive Map No.* 5.)

58. To what was this victory due? What was done by Queen Philippa? What cruel act did she prevent?

rode through the ranks of the army, exhorting every man to do his duty in repelling the invaders of their country.

Philippa.

Having caused David to be lodged in the Tower, she joined her husband before Calais, arriving in time to prevent the commission by him of a most ruthless act of cruelty; for he ordered to execution six of the citizens of Calais, who had been sent, on his demand, to make a formal surrender of the city; but was moved from his revengeful purpose by the earnest supplications of his brave and noble queen.

59. A truce was concluded a short time afterward between the French and English monarchs, which was protracted by

Black Death.

a dreadful plague, called the *black death*, that swept away many thousands of the people, not only in England, but in most of the other countries of Europe.* This dreadful pestilence first made its appearance in Asia; and so frightful were its ravages, especially among the lower orders of the people, that in some places scarcely enough of the inhabitants remained alive to till the ground. Above 50,000 persons are said to have perished by it in the city of London alone. The brute creation also suffered from its destructive virulence, vast numbers of cattle dying from the wide-spread contagion (1349).

60. Philip, king of France, having been succeeded by John (1350), and the country being distracted by factious

Black Prince.

dissensions, Edward, at the expiration of the truce, resolved again to assert his claim to the French throne. Accordingly, the Black Prince sailed to the Garonne (*gah-ron'*) with a fleet of three hundred vessels,

* This terrible epidemic broke out in China, and carried off, it is said, twenty-four millions of the inhabitants. It appeared in Italy in 1346, and spread thence into France, Spain, Germany, and England; also, later, into Sweden and Norway; and in 1351 it frightfully desolated Russia and Poland.

59. What truce was agreed upon? How protracted? The Great Plague?

60. What led to another invasion of France? Describe it.

containing a large army, with which he invaded the south of France, and, meeting with no opposition, committed the most dreadful ravages, reducing towns and villages to ashes, and laying waste the country wherever his march extended. At the same time, the king himself made a similar incursion from Calais; but John kept at a distance, not deeming his forces sufficient to risk a battle (1355).

61. The next year, the Black Prince, encouraged by the success of the previous campaign, proceeding from Guienne with an army of about 12,000 men, penetrated into the heart of France; but at Poitiers (*poi-tērz'*) found himself unexpectedly confronted by a splendidly equipped force of 60,000 men, commanded by John in person. Unable to retreat, and unwilling to risk an engagement with an army so greatly superior to his own, he offered to restore all his conquests and to give up the war, on condition that he might be permitted an honorable retreat, but, the French king declining every proposal except that of unconditional surrender, a battle ensued, which, owing to the skill and valor of the Black Prince, resulted in the entire overthrow of the French, John himself being made a prisoner (1356).*

KING JOHN, OF FRANCE.

* "This memorable victory was obtained on the 19th of September, 1356, without the loss of one person of distinction among the English; whereas the principal noblemen of France fell in the contest. Two dukes, nineteen counts, five thousand men-at-arms, and about eight thousand infantry are said to have been killed on the side of the French. Two thousand men-at-arms were taken prisoners, among whom, besides John, King of France, were three princes of the blood, the Archbishop Sens, the Counts of Estampes, Vaudemont, and many other noblemen."—*Spencer.*

61. How was the battle of Poitiers caused? Describe it.

62. In accordance with the manners of the times, John was treated by his conqueror with the most chivalric courtesy and respect. He was, however, kept in captivity at London till ransomed by his subjects (1360), when he resumed the throne; but, subsequently, not being able to fulfill the terms of his release, he returned to London, where he died a short time afterward (1364). Under his successor, Charles, the war was renewed between the two countries; but Edward gained no permanent advantage, although the Black Prince displayed all the qualities of an able and enterprising general. The prince was generally very humane; but the town of Limoges (*le-mōzh'*), which had received very many benefits from him, having revolted and taken part with his enemies, he was so exasperated at the ingratitude of its inhabitants, that on its capture he cruelly caused three thousand of them to be put to the sword (1370).

MILITARY ACCOUTERMENTS OF THE BLACK PRINCE, SUSPENDED OVER HIS TOMB AT CANTERBURY CATHEDRAL.

62. How was John treated? Why did he return to London? His death? When was the war renewed? With what result? How was Limoges treated?

63. These events terminated his military career. He returned to England, and, after six years of painful and lingering sickness, caused by incessant toil and exposure, died universally esteemed, not only for his heroism and skill as a military commander, but for the generosity, moderation, and amiability which shed still greater luster on his character (1376). The king survived him only a year, expiring in the sixty-fifth year of his age, after a reign of more than fifty years (1377).

EDWARD, BLACK PRINCE. (*From his tomb.*)

64. Edward III. was a wise and powerful monarch, popular not only for his military success and prudent administration, but for his many personal accomplishments. He took no important steps without consulting parliament, refused to pay the tribute to Rome to which John had submitted, and so greatly encouraged trade that he has been called the "Father of English commerce." Wool was the chief article of export, and an extensive trade was carried on with the ports of the Baltic. During this reign, also, commenced the FIRST ERA OF ENGLISH LITERATURE—the earliest work in prose, the *Travels of Sir John Mandeville*, being published about 1360. The famous John Wickliffe * and the poets Chaucer (*chaw'ser*) and Gower also flourished during a part of this reign.

Character of Edward III.

Literature.

* "John Wickliffe's name is first mentioned in the year 1360, in a controversy with the different orders of friars. He was educated at Oxford, where he took his degree of doctor of divinity. He was so eminent for his parts,

63. Further history of the Black Prince? His character? Death of Edward III.?

64. Character of Edward III.? What was he called, and why? What is said of trade? Literature? What authors are mentioned?

65. Edward III. was succeeded by his grandson Richard, son of the Black Prince, a youth eleven years of age; and, at the request of the House of Commons, a council was appointed by the Lords to administer the government, which was presided over by the three uncles of the king, among whom John of Gaunt,* Duke of Lancaster, exercised the chief authority. Hostilities were carried on in France, but little was effected in consequence of the prudent measures of the French king, Charles the Wise (Charles V.). Scotland, under its king, Robert II., the first of the Stuarts, was in close alliance with France, and hence shared in the war.

Richard II. 1377-'99.

66. To defray the expenses thus incurred, parliament imposed an unusual tax of three groats on every person, male and female, above fifteen years of age; and this, added

learning, and fine genius, that the Archbishop of Canterbury, having founded a new college, made him the rector. Wickliffe's behavior in his situation gave universal satisfaction. On the death of his patron he was removed to the living of Lutterworth, in the diocese of Lincoln; and it was there that he first published in his sermons and writings his doctrines. Gregory XI., hearing of this new religion, dispatched an order to the Bishop of London to apprehend and examine Wickliffe and send his deposition to Rome. But these orders were not easy to execute, the Duke of Lancaster and the Earl Marshall having openly declared they would not suffer Wickliffe to be imprisoned. The prelate was obliged to content himself with summoning Wickliffe before him in St. Paul's Church, where there was a vast concourse of people to hear the examination. The Duke of Lancaster and Lord Percy accompanied the reformer, assuring him that there was no danger, and that he might make his defense with courage before men who were mere ignoramuses in comparison to him. A violent altercation took place betwixt Percy and the bishop; the former insisting that Wickliffe should sit, the latter that he should stand, during the examination. The examination became so violent that the assembly broke up abruptly, and no further attempt was afterward made to prosecute Wickliffe. He retired to his living at Lutterworth, where he died in the year 1384. His followers were called Lollards, and rapidly increased after his death."—*Kings of England.*

* John of Gaunt, or Ghent, was so called from the place of his birth.

65. By whom was Edward III. succeeded? How was the government administered? What is said of France? Of Scotland?

66. What caused an insurrection? What incensed Wat Tyler?

to the miseries which the lower orders of the people suffered from the unjust laws of the period, produced an insurrection. The immediate occasion of the outbreak was the indignity with which a young maiden, the daughter of one Wat Tyler (or Wat, the tiler), was treated by one of the brutal tax-gatherers. This outrage so incensed her father that he struck the officer dead with his hammer, and, being joined by his friends and neighbors, raised a revolt, placing himself at the head of the insurgents (1381).

Wat Tyler.

EDWARD III. (*From portrait, Painted Chamber, Westminster.*)

67. The mutinous populace, amounting to 100,000 men, assembled at Blackheath, near London, under their leaders Wat Tyler and Jack Straw. They were still further excited by one John Ball, an itinerant preacher, who inflamed their minds by depicting the wrongs which were inflicted upon them by the wealthy classes, in depriving them of their natural right to liberty and an equal share in the government.* Thus incensed, they broke into the city, burned the palaces and mansions of the nobles, plundered the warehouses, and murdered the Archbishop of Canterbury and many other persons of distinction (1381).

68. The king having entered upon a conference with Wat

* He took the following lines as the text of his harangues:

When Adam delved and Eve span,
Where was then the Gentleman?

67. What was done by the insurgents? By whom were they led? Who was John Ball? What part did he take in the insurrection? What was the effect of his preaching?

68. How was Tyler killed? What course did Richard pursue? What made him unpopular? What were the demands of the lower orders? What is said of serfdom?

Tyler, the latter, it is said, acted with so much insolence that Wal'worth, the mayor of London, struck him with his sword, whereupon Tyler was immediately dispatched by others of the king's retinue.* Richard, in order to quell the mutiny, acceded to the demands of the insurgents, and they accordingly dispersed; but the nobility having raised a large army, the ringleaders were apprehended and executed, and the concessions of the king were annulled (1381). This made Richard very unpopular with the lower orders, for their demands had been reasonable and just. The most important was, that *villanage*, a condition of slavery, should be abolished, the people paying a fixed rent for their lands, instead of being bound to do such services as their feudal lords might require. Serfdom, however, continued to exist in England for more than four centuries after these events.

* "The next morning, Wat Tyler, Jack Straw, and John Ball, and the worst part of their associates, to the number of some twenty thousand, were suddenly come upon, at Smithfield, by the king, who was riding that way with about sixty followers. On seeing the king, Wat Tyler commanded his men to remain quiet while he went forward to speak to him; accordingly he spurred his horse, and came so close to the king that his horse's head nearly touched him; during the conference, which was very brief, the tyler having demanded the king's sword from a squire who bore it, and being refused, swore, in a violent passion, 'he would have his head before he eat again;' the king, growing angry, said to the Mayor of London, William Walworth, who at that moment advanced with twelve of the aldermen and principal citizens, who were armed under their robes, 'Lay hands on him.' Upon this, Walworth drew a kind of cimeter (a short and broad back sword, being toward the point like a Turkish cimeter), which he wore, and struck the tyler such a blow on the head that felled him to his horse's feet. When he was down he was surrounded on all sides, so that his men could not see him, and one of the king's squires, called John Standwick, leaped from his horse, and drawing a handsome sword thrust it into his belly, and this killed him. The king certainly hazarded much by this action, but it turned out fortunate, for when the tyler was on the ground he left his attendants, ordering not one to follow him. He rode up to these rebellious fellows, and said to them, '*Gentlemen, what are you about? You shall have no other captain but me; I am your king; remain peaceable.*' When the greater part of them heard these words they were quite ashamed, and those inclined to peace began to slip away."—*Froissart.*

69. Richard, although displaying so much spirit and courage in these times of disturbance, was afterward characterized by indolence and a want of judgment and capacity. He quarreled with the great officers and distinguished nobles of his court, and gave his entire confidence to unworthy favorites. He had banished his cousin Henry, son of John of Gaunt, duke of Lancaster, for being concerned in a duel; and, on the death of the duke, proceeded to dispossess Henry of his estates and annex them to those of the crown. Henry, however, taking advantage of Richard's absence in Ireland, landed in England with a small force; and so unpopular had the king become that the invader was received with great joy by the people, and was soon joined by a force of 60,000 men.

Lancaster.

RICHARD II. (*Jerusalem Chamber, Westminster Abbey.*)

70. Richard, deserted by every one, after wandering for some time among the mountains of Wales, was at last obliged to surrender himself, and was carried a prisoner to the tower of London. With the most abject pusillanimity, he resigned the crown to Henry, and was formally deposed by Parliament, who placed Henry on the throne (1399). Richard, according to the English his-

Richard Deposed.

69. What was the subsequent conduct of the king? What was done by Henry of Lancaster? How was he received by the people?

70. Further history of Richard? How did the parliament proceed? Fate of Richard? What is said of Wickliffe? Of Chaucer?

torians, died of starvation* after a few months' imprisonment (1400). During this reign,

Literature.

Wickliffe,† called by some the "Morning Star of the Reformation," translated the Bible. He and his doctrines were much favored by John of Gaunt. Chaucer,‡ styled the "Father of English Poetry," who wrote the celebrated poem, "The Canterbury Tales," was a follower of Wickliffe.

CHAUCER.

STATE OF SOCIETY UNDER THE PLANTAGENETS.

71. The most important of all the changes that took place during this period was the institution of the House of Commons. It gave the death-blow to the feudal system by conferring upon the vassal some of the political rights enjoyed by his superior. The English monarchs constantly sought to evade the provisions of Magna Charta, but without success; for no less than thirty-eight times were they compelled to ratify it. By this great fun-

Magna Charta.

* The French historians state that he was murdered by violent means; but some of the Scotch writers assert that he escaped from confinement and fled to the Western Isles of Scotland; and there being recognized, he was carried to the court of the Scottish king, where he lived for some years, and died at Stirling in 1419.

† Wickliffe (or Wycliffe) advocated many of the doctrines which were afterward preached by Luther and his followers in the sixteenth century. His disciples were called *Lollards*. He died in 1384.

‡ Chaucer was born in 1328, it is supposed, and died a short time after the deposition of Richard II., in 1400. His poems are characterized by vigor and fertility of imagination, and great dramatic power. His prose writings have also very superior merit.

71. The House of Commons? Effect of its establishment? Successive confirmations of Magna Charta? What did it protect? What was fully established?

damental law, private property and personal liberty were equally protected, it being clearly provided that the king could levy no money without the consent of Parliament. This clause, sometimes omitted in the ratification of the Charter, was fully established during the reign of Edward I.

72. Trial by jury, during this period, took the place of the "judicial combat" of the Normans. The Great Charter prescribed "the legal judgment of his peers" as necessary for the condemnation of one accused of crime; but in the reign of Henry II., a person unwilling to risk a judicial combat might refer the case to four knights chosen by the sheriff, who, in their turn, selected *twelve* more. In the reign of Henry III., the employment of twelve jurors to decide cases was often resorted to; but these were witnesses as well as judges, and it was not until some time afterward that jurymen were made exclusively judges, deciding the case solely on the testimony of others.

Trial by Jury.

1. KNIGHT OF GARTER. 2. GENTLEMAN. 3. CITIZEN.

73. Although so much had been accomplished toward laying the foundation of English liberty, the condition of the common people was very little improved. A degrading system of serfdom continued to exist. Slaves were bought and sold at the fairs, and it is said that the price of a man was less than that paid for a horse.* The modes of living among the higher classes had, however,

Slaves.

* "Of the two millions of human beings who inhabited England in the reign of John, a very large number, probably nearly half, were in a state of slavery. Those who are disposed to listen to tales about 'Merrie England' and 'the good old times' should remember this fact. At the commencement

72. Trial by jury? Of what did it take the place? What were the jurors at first?

73. Serfdom? Modes of living among the higher classes? What means of comfort were introduced? Improvement in the dwellings? Furniture?

become more refined. Glass windows, vessels of earthenware, the use of coal for fire and of candles for light enlarged their means of comfort; the appearance of their dwellings was improved by the substitution of tiles for straw thatch. The furniture was still scanty and uncouth.

Modes of Living.

74. The costume of the period was curious and fantastic. Long pointed shoes, with the toes fastened to the knees or

LADIES' HEAD-DRESSES. (*Froissart.*)

the girdle; stockings of different colors; a coat half blue or black, half white, with trousers reaching scarcely to the knees, were some of the most prominent peculiarities in the dress of the fine gentleman. The ladies wore party-colored tunics, very short tippets, small caps, and girdles ornamented with gold and silver, in which they carried two small swords. Their trains were very long; and their head-dresses towered sometimes two feet above

Costume.

of true English history we start with the laborers in abject wretchedness. The narrative of the changes in their social and political positions thenceforward to modern times is certainly a history of progressive amelioration, though lamentably slow and imperfect."—*Creasy.*

74. Costume? Dress of the gentlemen? Of the ladies?

their heads, and were decked at the summit with waving ribbons of various colors.

75. Wool was the most important article of commerce; and in this traffic the king himself did not disdain to take part. On this account Edward III. was called by his French rival, in derision, the "Royal wool-merchant." This, with the other commodities, was sold principally to the German traders, who imported gold, silver, silks, wines, spices, and other luxuries in return. Agriculture was carried on in a very rude manner, being left to the lowest classes; although Edward I. had the wisdom to insert in a book of laws, issued during his reign, a series of directions as to the manner of tilling the soil. Horticulture received considerable attention, every house of the better class having a garden or "pleasance;" while the monasteries had besides a "herberie," or physic garden, attached to them, for the growth of herbs used in medicines.

Commerce.

HATS AND CAPS.

Agriculture.

76. Science made some progress during this period. Roger Bacon applied the learning which he had acquired at Oxford to the discovery of useful knowledge. He made many important discoveries, wrote many scientific treatises, and invented various mathematical and philosophical instruments. His wonderful knowledge made the people regard him as a magician; and he was consequently thrown into prison, where he was kept many years.

Science.

75. Traffic in wool? The German traders? Agriculture? Horticulture?
76. Science? Roger Bacon? Astrology? To what did its cultivation lead?

Astrology was the favorite study of these times, not only in England but in most other countries of Europe. The astrologer was supposed to be able to foretell future events by observing the appearances of the heavenly bodies; and it was a long time before the futility of this pretense was discovered. The constant observations of the astrologers, and the construction of instruments required for making them, led to improvement in the science of astronomy.

77. Learning made, nevertheless, but little advancement, and was still confined to the clergy; for the attention of the higher classes of the laity was absorbed in the pursuits of war and hunting. There were no books except such as had been prepared with great expense of time and labor in the writing-rooms of the monasteries; and these brought a very high price, as much as $200 being paid for a copy of the Bible. Toward the close of the period, the English mind began to awaken from its bondage; and literature sprang into existence, being ushered in by those great lights—Geoffrey (*jef're*), Chaucer (born 1328, died 1400), and John Wickliffe (born about 1324, died 1384). The language of these writers differs considerably from modern English, and is therefore difficult to read. It is called "Middle English," since it comes between the "Semi-Saxon," which preceded it, and modern English, which commenced during the reign of Queen Elizabeth.

Learning.

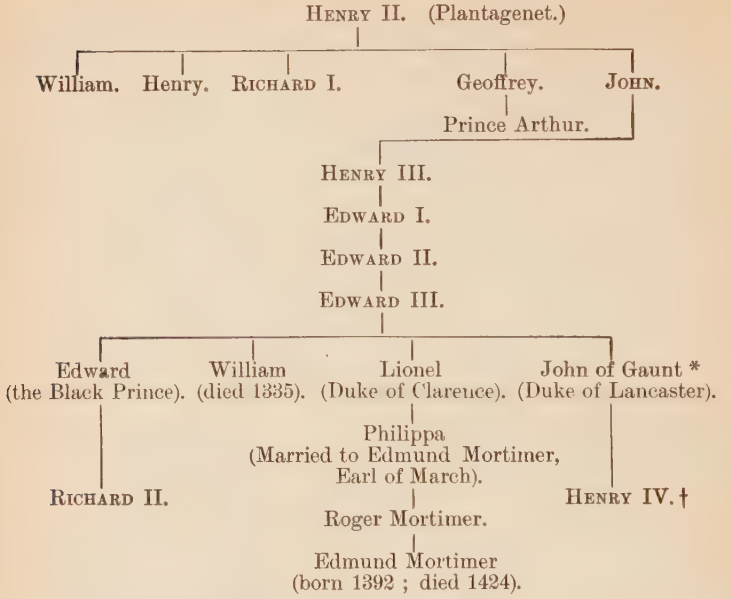
JOHN WICKLIFFE.

77. Learning? Books? How were they made? What was their value? Dawn of literature? Chaucer and Wickliffe? Language of the period? Why called Middle English?

CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

1154. Henry II. Reigned 35 years.
1164. Constitutions of Clarendon adopted.
1170. Murder of Thomas à Becket.
1172. Conquest of Ireland.
1189. Richard I. Reigned 10 years.
1192. Treaty of Richard with Saladin.
1199. John. Reigned 17 years.
1203. Murder of Prince Arthur.
1215. Magna Charta signed.
1216. Henry III. Reigned 56 years.
1219. Death of the earl of Pembroke.
1264. Battle of Lewes.
1265. House of Commons instituted.
" Battle of Evesham—Death of Leicester.
1272. Edward I. Reigned 35 years.
1278. Persecution of the Jews.
1283. Conquest of Wales.
1292. Baliol placed on the Scottish throne.
1296. Battle of Dunbar ; Baliol defeated and deposed.
1298. Battle of Falkirk ; defeat of Wallace.
1305. Execution of Wallace.
1307. Edward II. Reigned 20 years.
1314. Battle of Bannockburn; the English defeated by Bruce.
1327. Edward III. Reigned 50 years.
1330. Execution of Roger Mortimer.
1333. Battle of Halidown Hill; the Scots defeated.
1346. Battle of Crecy ; the French defeated.
" Battle of Neville's Cross; the Scots defeated.
1347. Taking of Calais by the English.
1349. The Great Plague.
1356. Battle of Poitiers ; the French defeated.
1376. Death of the Black Prince.
1377. Richard II. Reigned 22 years.
1381. Insurrection under Wat Tyler.
1384. Death of Wickliffe.
1399. Invasion by Henry, duke of Lancaster.
" The king taken prisoner and deposed.
1400. Death of Chaucer.

GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE PLANTAGENETS.



* There were two other sons of Edward III.: Edmund, Duke of York, and Thomas, Duke of Gloucester.

† Henry was perfectly well aware of the defect of his title to the throne, and feared its consequences ; but the true heir was a young child, and it was claimed that in such a case Parliament had the right to choose a successor belonging to the royal family. Besides, Henry boldly claimed the right of conquest. His own defiant words were : "I am descended by regal line of blood coming from the good lord King Henry III., and through that right hath God of his grace sent me, with help of my kin and of my friends, to recover the realm which was in point to be undone for fault of governance and undoing of the laws." The solemn recognition of Parliament which he obtained was deemed amply sufficient to annul any defect arising from the merely technical right of a young child entirely unfit to reign. It caused him, however, many sleepless nights, gave him a stormy and troublous reign, and led to the long and bloody War of the Roses.

> "Heaven knows, my son,
> By what by paths, and indirect crooked ways,
> I met this crown."—Shakespeare, *Henry IV.* (*Act IV., Scene IV.*).

TOPICAL REVIEW.

NARRATIVE.

When did the event occur?
What led to it?
What resulted from it?

	PAGE
Assassination of Becket	98
Conquest of Ireland	98, 100
Battle of Clontarf	99
Persecution of the Jews	102, 116
Captivity of Richard I.	104
Murder of Prince Arthur	107
Papal interdict	108
Naval battle at Damme	108
Signing of Magna Charta	109
Civil war under Montfort	112
Conquest of Wales	115
War with France	118
Conquest of Scotland	118, 119, 122
Battle of Bannockburn	123
Murder of Edward II.	126
Battle of Halidown Hill	127
Invasion of France by Edward III.	128
Battles of Crecy and Poitiers	128, 131
Battle of Neville's Cross	129
Death of the Black Prince	133
Insurrection under Wat Tyler	135
Deposition of Richard II.	137, 138 *n*
Translation of the Bible	138

BIOGRAPHICAL.

Who were they?
With what events connected?

	PAGE
Henry Plantagenet	95
Thomas à Becket	95, 96, 97, 98
St. Patrick	99 *n*
Richard de Clare	100
Richard, Cœur de Lion	102, 103, 104, 105
Blondel	106
Prince Arthur	106, 107
Stephen Langton	107
Earl of Pembroke	111
Hubert de Burgh	111
Simon de Montfort	112
Bishop Peter	112
Llewellyn, Prince of Wales	115
John Baliol	116
Robert Bruce	116
William Wallace	118, 119 *n*
Roger Bacon	121, 141
Gaveston	122
Robert Bruce (younger)	123
Spenser, or Dispenser	124
Isabella	125, 126
Roger Mortimer	125, 126
David Bruce	127
Edward Baliol	127
Edward, the Black Prince	128, 130, 132
Queen Philippa	129
Sir John Mandeville	133
Geoffrey Chaucer	133, 138
John Wickliffe	133, 138
John of Gaunt	134 *n*, 137
Wat Tyler	135

GEOGRAPHICAL.

Where are they?
With what events connected?

	PAGE
Acre	103
Ascalon	103
Istria	104
Lincoln	111
Lewes	113
Evesham	113
Caernarvon	116
Dunbar	118
Falkirk	118
Carlisle	120
Bannockburn	123
Kenilworth	125 *n*
Berkeley	126 *n*
Halidown Hill	127
Crecy	128
Calais	129
Poitiers	131
Limoges	132

POLITICAL AND SOCIAL.

Character of institution or custom?

	PAGE
Magna Charta	108, 109, 138
House of Commons	113
Trial by jury	139

SECTION IV.

THE HOUSES OF LANCASTER AND YORK.

Extending from the Accession of Henry IV. (1399) *to that of Henry VII.* (1485).

1. Henry IV., son of John of Gaunt, the *fourth* son of Edward III., had been declared king by parliament; but the rightful heir was *Edmund Mortimer*, earl of March, the great-grandson of Lionel, the third son of Edward III. (see *Genealogical Table*). This prince, a child of nine years, was detained in custody at Windsor castle by Henry. A few months after the accession of the latter, a conspiracy was formed to restore Richard to the throne; but it failed, and those concerned in it were executed (1400). This probably led to the murder of the deposed monarch. Henry, in order to protect the Church from the danger of heresy, caused severe laws to be passed against the Lollards;* and one of them (a clergyman) was condemned and burned at the stake (1401). This was the first English subject who was put to death on account of his religious opinions.

Henry IV., 1399-1413.

Lollards.

* "Lollardry had its own schools, its own books; and its pamphlets were passed everywhere from hand to hand. Women as well as men became the preachers of the new sect. Nobles placed themselves openly at the head of the cause, and threw open their gates as a refuge for its missionaries. Out of the floating mass of opinion that bore the name of Lollardry, one great faith gradually evolved itself, a faith in the sole authority of the Bible as a source of religious truth. The translation of Wickliffe did its work."—Green's *English People*.

1. Who was Henry IV.? Who was the rightful heir? Who was Edmund Mortimer? What conspiracy was formed? What is said of the Lollards?

No. 4.

ENGLAND
IN THE
WARS OF THE ROSES
A.D.1455,1485
Scale of Statute Miles
0 10 20 30 40 50 60
SCOTLAND
NORTH SEA
Aberdeen
Dundee
Stirling
Edinburgh
Berwick
Glasgow
R. Tweed
Hedgeley Moor
Apr. 25,1464
Firth of Clyde
Hexham
May 15,1464
R. Tyne
NORTHUMBERLAND
DURHAM
R. Tees
CUMBERLAND
WESTMORELAND
Solway Firth
Irish Sea
ISLE OF MAN
IRELAND
YORK
York
Towton
Mar. 29, 1461
Bayard Castle
Ravenspur
R. Humber
R. Aire
R. Ouse
R. Trent
Wakefield
Dec. 31, 1460
Pontefract
R. Mersey
R. Dee
ANGLESEY
CHESTER
Blore Heath
Sep. 23, 1459
DERBY
NOTTINGHAM
LINCOLN
Lincoln
The Wash
Lynn
NORFOLK
SUFFOLK
Shrewsbury
LEICESTER
Bosworth
Aug. 22, 1485
Leicester
Ludlow
Cardigan Bay
Mortimer's Cr.
Feb. 2, 1461
Northampton
July 10, 1460
Tewkesbury May 5
1471
OXFORD
ESSEX
Barnet
April 14, 1471
R. Thames
Milford Haven
GLOUCESTER
Bristol
WILTS
LONDON
Canterbury
KENT
Bristol Channel
R. Severn
R. Parret
SOMERSET
Salisbury
SURREY
Barnstaple
DEVON
DORSET
SUSSEX
Arundel Castle
Hastings
Exeter
Tavistock
Weymouth
Portsmouth
ISLE OF WIGHT
CHAN.
Strait of Dover
FRANCE
CORNWALL
Dartmouth
ENGLISH
Falmouth
W. of Greenwich
Fisk & Co. N.Y.

2. Repeated conspiracies formed a striking feature of this reign. The most formidable was that excited by the earl of Northumberland and his son, Harry Percy, surnamed *Hotspur*, on account of his fiery temper. This young nobleman had acquired great fame during the preceding reign by his exploits in a skirmish with the Scots, at Otterbourne (1388), on which battle was founded the famous ballad of "Chevy Chase." The Percies had also greatly aided Henry in his efforts to obtain possession of the kingdom; but afterward, quarreling with him, they joined their forces to those of the Scots under the earl of Douglas, and to the Welsh under Owen Glendower, with the object of placing Mortimer on the throne. Richard Scrope, archbishop of York, was also engaged in the conspiracy.

Hotspur.

HENRY IV. (*From his tomb in Canterbury Cathedral.*)

3. A terrific battle was fought near Shrewsbury (1403); but the rebels were defeated, and Percy, their brave leader, was slain. The king and his son took part in the battle, and signalized themselves by their feats of strength and daring. Some of the conspirators were taken prisoners and executed; but the earl of Northumberland was pardoned. Two years afterward, the latter, with the archbishop of York and others, again rose in rebellion; but they were unsuccessful, and the archbishop, with some of the other conspirators, was executed (1405). This was the first instance in English history of the execution of an archbishop. Northumberland escaped into Scotland; but subsequently,

2. What formed a striking feature of this reign? What conspiracy under Harry Percy? How had Percy become famous? What was founded on this battle?

3. Battle of Shrewsbury? Its results? Renewal of the rebellion? The result?

invading England with a hostile force, he was defeated and slain. (For places referred to see *Progressive Map No.* 5.)

4. The other events of this reign are of little importance. Henry IV. died in 1413, having lost many years previously the great popularity by means of which he had been enabled to obtain the crown.* His reign was beneficial to England; for the Commons acquired a considerable increase of power, especially in connection with the granting of supplies for the support of the government. He was succeeded by his son Henry.

5. Henry V., during his father's life, had been noted for his riotous and disorderly conduct; and had, on one occasion, been committed to prison by the chief-justice, whom he had insulted for indicting one of his dissolute companions.† On his accession, however, he dismissed his profligate associates, and thoroughly reformed his life, retaining in office the wise minis-

Henry V., 1413–'22.

* "Henry was of middle stature, of regular form, and perfectly skilled in all the exercises of arms and chivalry; his countenance was severe rather than serene, and his disposition sour, sullen, and reserved; he possessed a great share of courage, fortitude, and penetration; was naturally imperious, though he bridled his temper with a great deal of caution; superstitious, though without the least tincture of virtue and true religion; and meanly parsimonious, though justly censured for want of economy and ill-judged profusion. He rose to the throne by perfidy and treason; and established his authority in the blood of his subjects, and died a penitent for his sins, because he could no longer enjoy the fruit of his transgressions."—Smollett's *History of England.*

† "Then was seen what would never have been expected, the prince quiet as a lamb, submitting without a murmur to the judge's orders, and suffering himself to be led to prison like a private person. The judge's courage and the prince's moderation were equally pleasing to the king; nevertheless, Henry, who was excessively jealous of his crown, could not help giving ear to the people's insinuations that his son had ill designs against him."—Rapin's *History of England.*

4. Death of Henry IV.? How was his reign beneficial? His successor?

5. For what had Henry V. been noted? What change took place on his accession? What was his course toward the Lollards? Who was executed?

ters of his father, including Gascoigne (*gas-koin'*), the chief-justice by whom he had been so fearlessly punished. Among his first acts was the persecution of the Lollards, now a numerous party; and their leader, Sir John Oldcastle, called Lord Cobham, with others, was condemned and executed.

6. Henry, claiming the throne of France, next made an attack upon that country, which he hoped to subdue; because, during the lunacy of its king, Charles VI., it was distracted by disputes as to who should have the regency. Having taken Har'fleur, after a long siege, he found his army so much reduced that he resolved to return to England. On his march to Calais, however, he was surprised by the French army at Agincourt, and was obliged to risk an engagement, although the enemy's forces were more than four times as numerous as his own. The result was very disastrous to the French, 10,000 of their army being slain, and 14,000 taken prisoners; while the English are said to have lost only forty (1415). Henry was not in a condition to take immediate advantage of this great victory, and with his prisoners returned to England, having concluded a truce with the enemy.*

Agincourt.

7. Two years afterward, he again invaded France, and after some successes made a treaty at Troyes (*trwah*) with

* "Henry arrived at Dover on the 17th of November; the crowd plunged into the waves to meet him, and the conqueror was carried in their arms from the vessel to the beach; the road to London exhibited one triumphal procession. The lords, commons, and clergy, the mayor, aldermen, and citizens, conducted him into the capital; tapestry, representing the deeds of his ancestors, lined the walls of the houses; pageants were erected in the streets; sweet wines ran in the conduits; bands of children tastefully arrayed sang his praise, and the whole population seemed intoxicated with joy."—Lingard's *History of England.*

6. What led to the invasion of France? What town was taken? (Harfleur is a seaport near Havre.) Battle of Agincourt? Its results?

7. What led to the treaty of Troyes? Situation of Troyes? (See map of France, page 74.) What were the terms of the treaty? How was the treaty fulfilled? Death of Henry? Who was his successor?

the imbecile King Charles, according to which he was to marry Charles's daughter Catharine, to have the present administration of the French government, and on the death of Charles to succeed to the throne (1420). The terms of this extraordinary treaty were in part fulfilled; and Henry, proclaimed regent of France, entered Paris in triumph. His glory was, however, of short duration; for, being attacked by a fatal malady, he expired in the thirty-fifth year of his age and the tenth of his reign, leaving the throne to his son Henry, then an infant less than one year old (1422).

Treaty of Troyes.

WAR-SHIPS OF THE FIFTEENTH CENTURY.

8. The premature death of Henry V. was a great loss to the kingdom; for his abilities, both as a statesman and a soldier, were of a very high order; and, though his ambition was excessive, it was unalloyed with those vices by which that passion is so often stained. The personal appearance and manners of the king were such as became his exalted character and station, and he excelled in all warlike and manly exercises.*

Character.

* "The exterior figure of this great prince, as well as his deportment, was engaging; his stature was somewhat above the middle size, his counte-

8. Loss occasioned by the death of Henry V.? What is said of his character? His personal appearance? The Lancastrian princes?

None of the princes of the house of Lancaster ventured to impose taxes without the consent of parliament; and so far their imperfect title to the throne favored the progress of political freedom in England.

9. At the commencement of the reign of Henry VI., parliament appointed the duke of Bedford, elder brother of the late king, protector of England, upon whom was also conferred by Charles VI. the regency of France. The French king, however, died a few months afterward: and his son, Charles VII., an energetic and popular prince, boldly asserted his claim to the French throne, and was crowned at Poitiers. A war of many years ensued, under the conduct of Bedford, who was not only an accomplished prince, but a most skillful general and statesman. In order to divert the power of Scotland from the support of Charles, the Scottish king, James I.,* who had been for several years a prisoner in England, was restored to the throne of his ancestors.

Henry VI., 1422–'61.

10. After several campaigns, which, though indecisive, had reduced Charles to very great distress, Bedford resolved

nance beautiful, his limbs genteel and slender, but full of vigor; and he excelled in all warlike and manly exercises. He possessed many eminent virtues; and if we give indulgence to ambition in a monarch, or rank it, as the vulgar are inclined to do, among his virtues, they were unstained by any considerable blemish. His abilities appeared equally in the cabinet and in the field. The boldness of his enterprises was no less remarkable than his personal valor in conducting them. He had the talent of attaching his friends by his affability, and of gaining his enemies by address and clemency." Hume's *History of England.*

* This prince, in a voyage to France, whither he had been sent to save him from the wicked wiles of his uncle, the duke of Albany, who had seized the government of Scotland, was taken by the English, and was detained for nineteen years a prisoner in England. He was treated kindly, educated with care, and during his captivity wrote several beautiful poems.

9. Who was appointed protector? What followed the death of Charles VI. of France? What is said of Bedford? James I. of Scotland? (See Note.)

10. What led to the siege of Orleans? Describe it. Who was Joan of Arc?

to invade the south of France; and with this object laid siege to Orleans (map, page 73), a city which was loyal to the French monarch. This siege was continued for many months, and the French had given up all hope of successfully repelling their assailants, when their deliverance was effected by one of the most extraordinary occurrences recorded in history. Joan of Arc (French, *Jeanne d'Arc*), a simple peasant girl, had been told of a prophecy to the effect that France could only be delivered from its enemies by a virgin; and the idea became impressed upon her mind that to herself had been divinely committed the task of effecting this great object.*

Joan of Arc.

11. She soon induced others to believe in the truth of her mission, among them the king himself and his chief officers, and was admitted into Orleans, arrayed in armor, and provided with a train of attendants. Under her leadership the French seemed to be inspired with almost superhuman courage; and the English, struck with terror, were soon obliged to raise the siege (1429). She next urged the king to march to Rheims (*reemz*), in order to assume the crown of his ancestors according to the accustomed rites; and, this being triumphantly achieved, she demanded to be dismissed, considering her mission at an end.

12. The French, however, selfishly detained her; and a short time afterward she fell into the power of the English, who cruelly caused her to be burned to death in the marketplace of Rouen (*roo'en*), on a charge of sorcery and impiety

* Joan of Arc was born in the little village of Domremy, between Champagne and Lorraine; and for some time, during her solitary walks, she said she had heard strange voices urging her to go on her mission. Frightened at first, she was reassured by the strong conviction, as she said, that the voices were those of angels; and she felt she ought not to disobey them, as being the messengers of God.

11. How was the siege of Orleans raised? What was then done by Joan of Arc? What did she then demand? Where are Orleans and Rheims? (Map, page 74.)

12. Further history of the Maid of Orleans? Of the English invasion?

(1431).* But nothing was gained by this ruthless execution of the "Maid of Orleans." The duke of Bedford died (1435), and Charles was enabled to re-enter Paris, after having been excluded from it for twenty years (1437). The English continued to suffer defeat, until finally this long war was interrupted by a truce which lasted six years (1444).

13. Henry, on arriving at the age of majority, showed neither the capacity nor the disposition to take control of the government, which, since the death of Bedford, had been administered by the duke of Gloucester, the king's uncle, and by Cardinal Beaufort, his guardian. Through the influence of the latter, the king married Margaret of Anjou,† one of the most beautiful and accomplished princesses of the age, and well suited by the masculine energy of her character to supply the defects and

Margaret of Anjou.

* "When she felt the flames rising around her, she besought the priest who attended her to leave her. The cardinal of Winchester, and even the bishop of Beauvais, who had been her bitterest enemy, could not conceal their emotion. After her death two of the judges who had condemned her exclaimed, 'Would that our souls were where we believe hers is!' and Fressart, the secretary of Henry VI., said as he left the place of execution, 'We are all lost; we have burned a saint!'" —Guizot's *History of France.*

† "This heroic woman, whose name bears so distinguished a place in the annals of England, was the daughter of René, titular king of Sicily, and niece of the queen of France; she is described by contemporary chroniclers as possessing 'rare perfections alike of mind and body.' Courageous, enterprising, and reflecting, she was born for dominion; and, although extraordinary reverses and misfortunes attended her eventful life, she never for an instant quailed or forgot her high estate; but, equally great in power and in sorrow, maintained to the last her dearly-bought title of the heroine of Anjou, England's warrior queen. Married at the early age of fifteen to Henry VI., a man whose character was most singularly opposed to her own, she soon discovered his utter incapacity for government; and, aroused by the intrigues of the duke of York and his faction, who, presuming on the timidity and want of firmness of the 'priest-like Henry,' were gradually working his ruin, she boldly took upon herself the care of the state, and supplied by her energy and talent the qualities which were wanting in her husband."—*Historical Characters.*

13. Character of the king? Whom did he marry? Her character? Terms of the marriage treaty? (For location of Maine and Anjou, see map, page 74.)

weaknesses of her husband (1445). By the terms of the marriage treaty, Margaret's father, the duke of Anjou, was to receive from the English king a large sum of money and the cession of Maine and Anjou, provinces which had been conquered by the English at great cost of life and treasure.

14. The protector Gloucester having violently opposed this treaty, became an object of great dislike to Margaret, and through her contrivance was arrested on a charge of treason. Previous to the day appointed for his trial, he was found dead in his bed; and the duke of Suffolk, a favorite of the queen's, was chosen his successor, as the king by his increased imbecility had become entirely unfit to administer the government. The duke of York was succeeded as regent of France by another of Margaret's favorites, the duke of Somerset, under whom the English lost all their French possessions except Calais (1451).

15. The death of the virtuous duke of Gloucester, generally styled by the people "the good duke Humphrey," together with the disgraceful losses of territory in France, caused intense popular indignation against the queen and her minister Suffolk. The latter was impeached by the Commons, and the king, to save his life, banished him from the kingdom; but on his passage to France he was seized by order of his enemies and executed. The misconduct of the government also led to an insurrection of the lower orders under a leader named Jack Cade; but it was soon put down, Cade being slain (1450).

16. The total incapacity of the king, and the disorders which it occasioned in the government, induced many of the people to favor the claims of Richard, duke of York, to the

14. What was the conduct of the queen toward Gloucester? What is said of his death? His successor? Who became regent of France?

15. What made the queen and her minister unpopular? What happened to Suffolk? What insurrection broke out? How did it end?

16. Richard, duke of York his claim to the throne? His character? What office did he obtain? How displaced?

throne, in right of his descent from the third son of Edward III. Richard was a man of vigor and ability, and, though greatly disliked by the queen, had obtained the appointment of Protector of the Realm, in opposition to his rival the duke of Somerset, the favorite of the queen and her party. The latter, however, afterward triumphed, and Richard was compelled to resign his office.

17. Richard and his adherents then raised an army, ostensibly for the redress of grievances; and in the battle of St. Albans defeated the royalists, and took the king prisoner (1455). This was the first conflict in that great civil war styled the "War of the Roses" (from the badges worn by the respective parties, the Lancastrians wearing a red rose and the Yorkists a white rose)—a war which lasted thirty years, and was signalized by twelve pitched battles; which deluged England with blood, and in which the ancient nobility of the kingdom were almost annihilated.

War of the Roses.

ARCHER. (*Fifteenth Century.*)

18. The next year after the battle of St. Albans the king was restored to his authority; but the contest soon broke out with increased fury, and in the battle of Northampton (1460) the king was defeated and taken prisoner by the earl of Warwick (commonly called, from subsequent events, the "king-maker").* After the battle of Northampton the duke of

* Richard Neville, earl of Warwick, was the most powerful of England's feudal barons. His vassals formed a vast army; and so numerous were his

17. What led to the battle of St. Albans? What civil war was then commenced? Its duration and consequences? The badges of the respective parties?

18. What events followed the battle of St. Albans? Where is St. Albans? (Map, page 41.) Northampton? (*Progressive Map No.* 5.)

York was proclaimed the lawful successor of Henry; and Edward, the son of Henry and Margaret, was excluded from the throne. The administration of the government was, meanwhile, to be committed to the duke of York.

19. The queen fled to Scotland, and afterward, with the aid of the northern barons, raised a large army, with which, in the battle of Wakefield, she defeated the duke of York, who was taken prisoner and put to death with great ignominy. By the order of Margaret his head was cut off and fixed on the gates of York, with a paper crown upon it, in derision of his claim to royalty. Other cruelties were perpetrated by the victorious Lancastrians. A few weeks after this, Margaret defeated the earl of Warwick in the second battle of St. Albans, and thus regained possession of the king; but Edward, son of the late duke of York, joining his forces with those of Warwick, compelled her to retreat, and, triumphantly entering London, was proclaimed king, under the title of Edward IV. (1461).

ARCHER. (*Fifteenth Century.*)

20. This virtually ended the reign of Henry VI.—a monarch who commenced life with the most splendid prospects, inheriting not only his father's extensive dominions in England and France, but the love and admiration with which the martial glory of that prince had inspired the English people. With an

Character of Henry VI.

retainers that he is said to have feasted daily, at his various manors and castles, upward of 30,000 persons, while the whole population of the kingdom is estimated to have been at that time only about two and a half millions. Warwick was the duke of York's brother-in-law.

19. What did the queen do? Battle of Wakefield? (Where is Wakefield?) What followed it? Where was Warwick defeated? How did Edward IV. become king?

20. What is said of Henry VI.? His character? Of what was he the founder?

inoffensive disposition, and many virtues that might have adorned a private station, his unfitness for the exercise of regal sway, especially in so stormy a period, plunged the nation into a civil war, during the progress of which he became the mere sport of fortune, tossed to and fro by the contending parties. As the founder of Eton College, and of Kings College* at Cambridge, he has, however, left some claim to the respect and gratitude of posterity.†

21. Young Edward had acquired the throne chiefly through the exertions of Warwick, and his character and talents were such as enabled him to retain it. He was bold, active, and enterprising, and pursued his enemies with the most unrelenting vengeance. Queen Margaret was, however, not entirely subdued. She succeeded in collecting an army of 60,000 men in the northern counties, with which she encountered the forces of Edward and Warwick, in the terrific battle of Tow'ton; but was totally defeated, nearly one-half of her entire army being slain, either in the battle or the pursuit, Edward having issued orders that no quarter should be given (1461).

Edward IV., 1461–'83.

22. Margaret having fled with her husband into Scotland,

* The chapel of Kings College is a very beautiful specimen of Gothic architecture—so beautiful, indeed, that it is said Sir Christopher Wren, the renowned architect, went once every year to contemplate it. It presents the appearance of being cut out of a solid mass of stone, so exquisite is the harmony as well as the finish of the work.

† "His stature was rather above the middle standard, his limbs slim and well-formed, his countenance mild and benevolent, and, but for his unhappy mental malady, and his many troubles, which began even in his early days and wrought premature decay, he would have been thought well-favored. He was studious, inoffensive, and devout, a lover of justice, and an enemy to cruelty and the shedding of blood; and, although by the weakness of his intellect he was but in title a king, his blameless private life claimed for him respect and commiseration."—*Kings of England.*

21. What was the character of Edward? What did Queen Margaret do? Battle of Towton? Where is Towton? (*See Progressive Map No.* 4.)

22. Whither did the queen flee? What was done by parliament? What other effort was made by Margaret? Its result? What became of Henry VI.?

Edward returned to London ; and a parliament being summoned, his title to the throne was solemnly recognized and confirmed. Three years afterward, Margaret made another effort to recover her lost kingdom, with a small army obtained from Louis XI. of France ; but she was defeated in two battles, and with great difficulty succeeded in making her escape (1464). Henry, after remaining concealed for a year, was at last discovered, and, being delivered into the power of Edward, was imprisoned in the Tower.

23. Edward's vices, however, and his marriage with Elizabeth Gray, a Lancastrian knight's widow, upon whose relatives the infatuated monarch showered all his favors, so disgusted the brave and high-spirited Warwick that he deserted the cause of Edward and formed an alliance with Margaret. After obtaining a supply of men and money from the king of France, he landed at Dartmouth ; and so popular was the earl that in a few days he collected an army of 60,000 men, and, having compelled Edward to flee, took the imprisoned Henry from the Tower and proclaimed him king. This act was ratified by parliament, and the regency was intrusted to Warwick and his son-in-law, the duke of Clarence, brother to Edward IV. (1471).

24. Disaster soon followed this great victory ; for Edward, landing in England with a small force, was soon joined by an immense army, and, regaining possession of London, he once more made the hapless Henry a prisoner, and marched against Warwick, who had taken a position at Barnet, in the neighborhood of London. The king-maker, deserted by his son-in-law, the duke of Clarence, who, with a considerable force, went over to the Yorkists, was defeated and slain, fighting on foot and in the thickest of the engagement (1471).

Battle of Barnet.

23. What offended Warwick ? What was the consequence ? Where is Dartmouth ? (*See Progressive Map No.* 4.) What did Warwick accomplish ?

24. What led to the battle of Barnet ? Where is Barnet ? The regency ? (See map, page 41.) What was the result of the battle ?

25. On the same day Margaret landed in England with her son Edward, and advanced into the country, increasing her army as she proceeded. At Tewks'bury, however, she was overtaken by Edward; and, her army being entirely defeated, she and her son were made prisoners. The young prince was cruelly put to death by the dukes of Clarence and Gloster, brothers of the king; and Margaret herself was imprisoned in the Tower. A few days after the battle, Henry expired in the Tower, according to general belief, by the murderous hand of the wicked and cruel duke of Gloster. Queen Margaret afterward found a refuge in France, where she died (1482).

Tewksbury.

HUSBANDMAN AND COUNTRYWOMAN OF THE FIFTEENTH CENTURY.

26. All the hopes of the Lancastrians were now extinguished; and Edward, being secure on the throne, gave himself up to every species of vice and debauchery. He caused his brother, the duke of Clarence, to be put to death on a charge of treason, being probably instigated to this crime by his younger brother Richard, duke of Gloster, a prince noted for his designing character and unrelenting ambition.* Edward was about to

Character of Edward IV.

* "In 1478 the Tower was the scene of another event, the interest of which, like that attached to the death of Henry VI., is rather enhanced than dimin-

25. The battle of Tewksbury? Where is Tewksbury? (*See Progressive Map No.* 4.) Result of battle? Who was put to death? Death of Henry VI.? Of Margaret?

26. What was the conduct of Edward? Execution of Clarence? By whom was it instigated? Death of Edward?

engage in a war with France, when he was seized with a distemper, of which he died (1483).*

27. During this reign, the art of printing was introduced into England by William Caxton, who, after having acquired a practical knowledge of the art in Holland and Germany, returned to his own country and set up a printing-press at Westminster. The first book printed in England by him was one entitled *The Game and Playe of Chesse* (1474). The types used by him were such as were employed in Germany; and all English books continued to be printed in such letters (called *black-letter*) until the reign of James I., when they were superseded by the Roman characters. King Edward greatly encouraged trade and manufactures, particularly in wool. The feudal system, by the destruction of the ancient nobility during the War of the Roses, almost entirely disappeared.

Printing.

28. Edward V., the eldest son of the late king, a youth of twelve years, was proclaimed king; and his uncle Richard, duke of Gloster, was appointed Protector. This artful and wicked prince, obtaining possession of the young king and his brother, the duke of York, placed

Edward V.

ished by the obscurity in which it is enveloped—the imprisonment and extraordinary end of George, duke of Clarence, the king's brother; who, according to popular report, terminated his days within the Tower, by drowning in a butt of Malmsey. The vaulted room in the Bowyer Tower is the place where the supposed assassination is said to have taken place."—Bayley's *History of the Tower*.

* "In his person Edward IV. was one of the handsomest men in England, and perhaps in Europe; his noble mien, his free air, his affable carriage, prepossessed every one in his favor; these qualities, joined to an undaunted courage, rendered him extremely popular. He had, however, many vices; he was false, cruel, and vindictive, a slave to his pleasures, and wholly insensible to pity and generosity; indeed, in the words of a contemporary chronicler, 'He had no good qualities but courage and beauty.'"—*Kings of England*.

27. Art of printing? William Caxton? First printed book? Black-letter? Trade? The feudal system?

28. Who was proclaimed king? Who made Protector? What wicked deed did Richard perpetrate? How did he obtain the crown?

them in the Tower, and caused Lord Rivers, their maternal uncle, and Lord Hastings, with several other distinguished persons, to be executed on a charge of treason. He then gave out that the young princes were illegitimate, and contrived that some of his friends should publicly solicit him to take the crown, which, with pretended reluctance, he accepted. He was then proclaimed king, under the title of *Richard III.* (1483).

29. The first act of the wicked usurper, Richard III., was to destroy the two young princes, who are supposed to have been smothered in their beds in the Tower* by his orders. The duke of Buckingham, through whose assistance he had gained the object of his ambition, was loaded with honors; but the duke soon became disgusted with the tyranny of Richard, and entered into a conspiracy to dethrone him and place Henry Tudor, earl of Richmond, on the throne. This prince was a Lancastrian, being descended on his mother's side from John of Gaunt; on his father's he was grandson of Sir Owen Tudor, who had married Catharine, the widow of Henry V.

Richard III., 1483-'85.

30. Buckingham took up arms in Wales, with the expectation that his accomplices would raise an insurrection in other parts of the kingdom; but in this being disappointed, he was deserted by his followers, and obliged to conceal himself for safety. He was, however, soon discovered; and being brought to the king, was immediately beheaded (1483). Richard, everywhere triumphant over his enemies, summoned a parliament, and obtained from it a recognition of his title. In order still further to strengthen it, he resolved

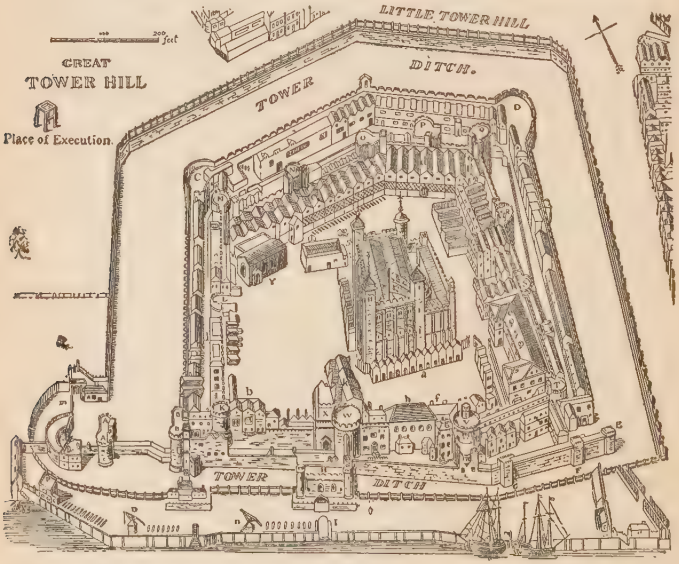
* This part of the Tower, usually called the Bloody Tower, forms the gateway of the inner ward of the Tower of London. The room over the archway is pointed out by tradition as the place of the murder of the two princes, from which it derives its name.

29. His first act as king? Duke of Buckingham? Henry Tudor?
30. What befell Buckingham? What was next done by Richard? Queen Anne?

to espouse his niece Elizabeth, daughter of Edward IV.; to accomplish which he caused his consort, Anne, to be poisoned. This unfortunate princess was the second daughter of the great earl of Warwick, and had been married to Margaret's son, the hapless Edward, whom Richard had slain at Tewksbury.

31. These abominable crimes excited universal detestation against the usurper; and Henry, earl of Richmond, being invited into the kingdom, sailed from Normandy, and landed at Milford Haven with a small

Bosworth.



BIRD'S-EYE VIEW OF THE TOWER OF LONDON.
(*From a Drawing made between* 1681 *and* 1689 *by order of Lord Dartmouth, Governor-General of the Ordnance.*)

force. Re-enforcements flocked to him from all parts, as he advanced toward Shrewsbury; and at Bosworth he was

31. Effect of Richard's crimes? What led to the battle of Bosworth? Where is Bosworth? (*Progressive Map No.* 5.) Its result? Who was crowned king? By whom?

opposed by Richard, at the head of forces double in number those of his own. A fierce battle ensued; but Richard, being deserted by Lord Stanley and a large part of his army, was defeated and slain while fighting desperately in the conflict. The earl of Richmond was crowned king on the battle-field, with the title of HENRY VII., by Sir William Stanley, brother of Lord Stanley (1485).* This event terminated the long and dreadful conflict known as the "War of the Roses."

32. The body of Richard was buried at Leicester; but, at the destruction of the monasteries in the reign of Henry VIII., it was exhumed, and the stone coffin in which it had been interred was long used as a horse-trough at an inn in that town. Richard was brave and sagacious; and, had he been the rightful occupant of the throne, there is reason to think he would have adorned it by great and worthy deeds. His ruling passion, ambition, was boundless; and he stopped at no crime that seemed necessary to secure its gratification. It must, however, be borne in mind that his character has been drawn by historians who wrote in the interest and praise of the Tudors; and that, therefore, his acts have been represented in the worst possible light. The stories told of the deformity of his person, and which the genius of Shakspeare has served to preserve, are

Character of Richard III.

* "Then Lord Stanley picked up his crown, battered and blood-stained, and put it on the head of Henry. The duke of Norfolk, the Lord Ferrers, Sir Richard Ratcliffe, Sir Robert Brackenbury, and a few other knights shared the fate of their master. It is said that, in the battle and in the flight, three thousand men perished; but, considering the way in which the affair was managed, and Henry's politic anxiety to reconcile parties and to show himself a clement sovereign, it is probable that this number is somewhat exaggerated. The battle of Bosworth Field, which terminated the wars of the Roses, was altogether on an inferior scale to that of several preceding conflicts. Counting both armies, there were not eighteen thousand men on the field, and of these the greater part were never engaged."—*Cabinet History of England.*

32. Where was Richard buried? When exhumed? His coffin? What is said of his character? What should be borne in mind? What did he encourage?

believed by some to be exaggerations.* He was a patron of learning, bestowing many benefactions on the universities, and affording encouragement to the newly-invented art of printing. He also sought to protect the interests of English merchants in foreign countries by appointing consuls, and established postal facilities by the appointment of couriers for the speedy transmission of news.

STATE OF SOCIETY UNDER THE HOUSES OF LANCASTER AND YORK.

33. This period was characterized by civil commotions, the result of which was to introduce great changes in the political and social character of the nation.† One of the most important of these was the extinction of villanage, or serfdom. The nobles being obliged to arm their serfs in the "Wars of the Roses," could never thereafter compel them to return to a state of servitude. Besides, the ancient nobility having nearly all perished in

Villanage.

* "Many historians have endeavored to throw discredit on the popular tradition of Richard's deformity, and quote Buck, Rous, and the old countess of Desmond, who state that he 'was well-formed and active, and, with the exception of one shoulder being a trifle higher than the other, he was, save his brother Clarence, the handsomest man of his time;' but from his portrait in the Rous-roll, in the Herald's College, and the drawings published by Horace Walpole, in his 'Historic Doubts,' there is good reason to believe that his title to the surname of 'crook-back' was well founded."—Selby's *Events to be Remembered.*

† "During that portion of the fifteenth century which comprised the reigns of Henry the Sixth and succeeding monarchs down to the accession of Henry the Seventh, English history exhibits a rapid succession of violent and bloody convulsions. In that period the throne was twice lost and twice regained by each of the rival houses that laid claim to it. Thirteen pitched battles were fought between Englishmen and on English soil. Three out of four kings died by violence; eighty persons connected with the blood royal were reckoned as having perished in war or by the hand of the executioner or of the assassin; and the great majority of the noble families became extinct or sank into obscurity."—Kirk's *Charles the Bold.*

33. How was this period characterized? The result? What was extinguished? In what way?

these long wars, feudalism was destroyed, and a sounder and more liberal system took its place.

34. In other respects, these wars suspended for a time the march of improvement. Agriculture was necessarily very much neglected; and consequently widespread famine was a frequent calamity, the lower classes being sometimes obliged to live upon roots and herbs. Large tracts of land which had been carefully tilled were converted into pasturage for sheep, in order that the grain of foreign countries might be purchased with the wool thus obtained. Hence it has been remarked that the Wars of the Roses did not check the commercial prosperity of the country. Many of the merchants amassed great wealth, and were thus enabled, by large loans, to relieve the necessities of their sovereign. To this period (reign of Henry V.) belongs the famous Whittington, who was "thrice Lord Mayor of London," and who, according to the story, commenced his fortunate career with the possession of only a cat.

Agriculture.

MEN'S HEAD-DRESSES. (*Fifteenth Century.*)

35. The most prominent innovation in manufactures was the introduction of silk-making; and in 1455 a statute was passed to protect those engaged in it from the destructive competition of the Lombard merchants, by checking their importations. The fisheries, also, commenced to receive a very large share of attention. On the eastern coast, the herring-fisheries became

Manufactures and Fisheries.

34. Agriculture? Commerce? The wealth of merchants? Whittington?
35. Silk-making? The fisheries?

exceedingly valuable; and at Yarmouth an annual fair was held for trade in this fish, which attracted ships from many ports of Europe.

36. Science received some additions, being cultivated at the schools especially established in the two universities for the various departments, such as astronomy, chemistry or alchemy, mathematics, etc. The methods and objects of research were, however, very fanciful. Thus, the alchemist expended all his energies in searching for the *Philosopher's Stone*—a substance that would transmute into gold all the other metals; the physician, instead of carefully observing the phenomena connected with diseases, and by means of careful experiment discovering remedies for them, spent all his time in trying to find the *Elixir of Life*—a universal remedy. These fanciful notions, however, prompted to experiment and observation, and thus led to the discovery of useful scientific knowledge.

Science.

Alchemy.

37. The great event of this period was the introduction of printing.* By means of it the printed black-letter volume

* "A Kentish boy by birth, but apprenticed to a London mercer, William Caxton had already spent thirty years of his manhood in Flanders, as governor of the English guild of Merchant Adventurers there, when we find him engaged as copyist in the service of the duchess of Burgundy. But the tedious process of copying was soon thrown aside for the new art which Colard Mansion had introduced into Bruges. 'Forasmuch as in the writing of the same,' Caxton tells us in the preface to his first printed work, the 'Tales of Troy,' 'my pen is worn, my hand is weary and not steadfast, mine eyes dimmed with overmuch looking on the white paper, and my courage not so prone and ready to labor as it hath been, and that age creepeth on me daily and feebleth all the body, and also because I have promised to divers gentlemen and to my friends to address to them as hastily as I might the said book, therefore I have practised and learned at my great charge and dispense, to ordain this said book in print after the manner and form as ye may see, and is not written with pen and ink as other books be, to the end that every man may have them at once, for all the books of this story here emprynted as ye

36. Science? The principal objects of research? To what did this lead?
37. Printing? Effects of its introduction? Orthography?

took the place of the expensive manuscript; and thus books became much cheaper, and learning more widely diffused. New schools and colleges sprang into existence; and the education of the scholar began to assume some degree of respectability, when contrasted with the training of the knight or the soldier. This also led to a greater degree of refinement in the language, which gradually approached the character of modern English. The want of a standard of orthography, however, greatly retarded its progress. No two authors spelled alike; and an author often spelled the same word differently on the same page.

Printing.

COSTUMES OF THE FIFTEENTH CENTURY.

38. Dramatic performances began to be of a more regular character. They were acted chiefly by the clergy, being designed to teach the lower classes the Bible history; and hence such subjects were chosen as *The Creation*, *The Flood*, *The Birth of Christ*, etc. These were called *Mysteries*, or *Miracle Plays*. They were succeeded, in the reign of Henry VI., by the *Moral Plays*, the object of which was to impress upon the minds of the spectators the excellence of virtue, by means of the representation of ingenious allegories. The performers in these plays were laymen, and personated Mercy, Truth, Justice, etc.

Drama.

39. Architecture was not encouraged as much as during the

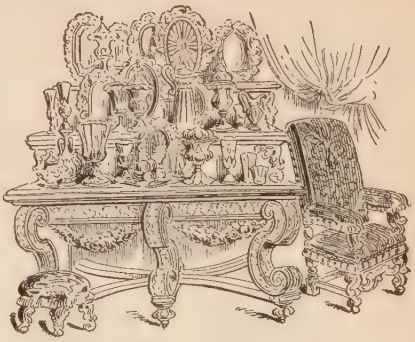
see were begun in one day and also finished in one day.' The printing-press was the precious freight he brought back to England, after an absence of five-and-thirty years."—Green's *Short History of the English People*.

38. Dramatic performances? The Miracle Plays? The Moral Plays?

39. Architecture? What took the place of the feudal castle? The furniture?

preceding period; but many changes in the mode of building houses were introduced. The feudal castles being swept away in the storm of war, large manor-houses of wood took their places. These were decorated with much carving and painting, and the rooms were adorned with tapestry. The furniture was, however, still scanty, and of clumsy form, although considerably improved. The bed furniture appears to have been comparatively luxurious.

Architecture.



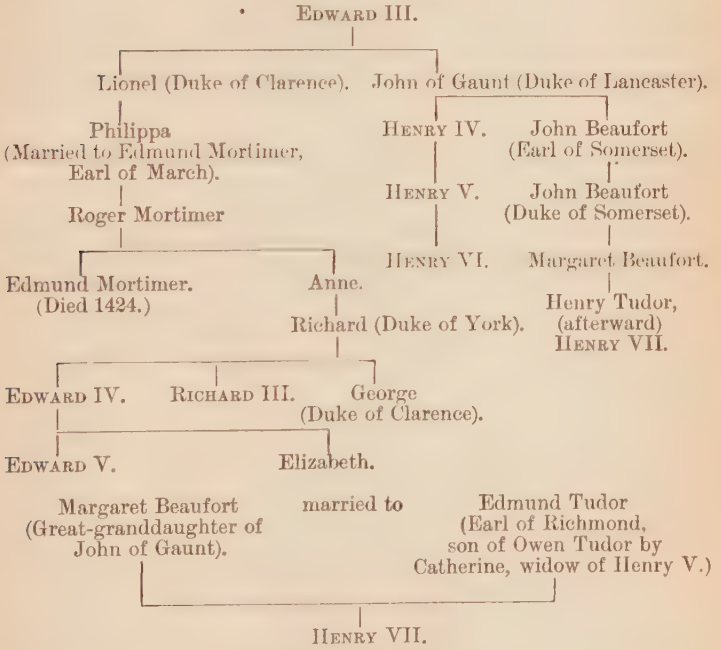
SIDEBOARD, WITH PLATE, ETC.

CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

1399. Henry IV. Reigned 14 years.
1403. Battle of Shrewsbury. Percy defeated and slain.
1413. Henry V. Reigned 9 years.
1415. Battle of Agincourt.
1420. Treaty of Troyes.
1422. Henry VI. Reigned 39 years.
1429. Siege of Orleans raised.
1431. Joan of Arc burned at Rouen.
1435. Death of the duke of Bedford.
1444. Truce concluded with the French.
1445. Marriage of Henry and Margaret of Anjou.
1451. The English possessions in France lost, except Calais.
1455. First battle of St. Albans. Henry taken prisoner.
1460. Battle of Northampton. Lancastrians defeated.
" Battle of Wakefield. Yorkists defeated.
1461. Second battle of St. Albans. Earl of Warwick defeated.
" Edward IV. Reigned 22 years.
" Battle of Towton. Margaret defeated.
1464. Margaret again defeated. Henry imprisoned in the Tower.

1471. Flight of Edward IV. Henry again proclaimed king.
" Battle of Barnet. Warwick defeated and slain
1474. First book printed in England by Caxton.
1482. Death of Queen Margaret in France.
1483. EDWARD V. Reigned 74 days.
" RICHARD III. Reigned 2 years.
1485. Battle of Bosworth.* Richard defeated and slain.

GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE LANCASTRIAN AND YORK FAMILIES.



* "This battle is memorable for having settled the long disorders of the kingdom, restoring it, after nearly a thousand years, to a line of native princes."—Mackintosh's *History of England.*

TOPICAL REVIEW.

NARRATIVE.

When did the event occur?
How was it brought about?
What resulted from it?

PAGE

Accession of Henry IV 146
Conspiracy to restore Richard II 146
Laws passed against the Lollards 146
Conspiracy under Percy 147
Insurrection under Douglas 147
Glendower's insurrection 147
Battle of Shrewsbury 147
Northumberland's insurrection 147
Persecution of the Lollards 149
Invasion of France 149
Battle of Agincourt 149
Treaty of Troyes 149
Marriage of Henry and Catharine 150
Death of Henry V 150
Death of Charles VI., of France 151
Siege of Orleans 152
War of the Roses 155
Battle of St. Albans 155
Battle of Northampton 155
Battle of Wakefield 156
Second Battle of St. Albans 156
Battle of Towton 157
Marriage of Edward IV 158
Battle of Barnet 158
Battle of Tewksbury 159
Death of Henry VI 159
Death of Edward IV 160
Introduction of printing 160
Murder of the princes 160
Revolt of Buckingham 161
Battle of Bosworth 162
Crowning of Henry VII 163

BIOGRAPHICAL.

Who were they?
With what events connected?

Edmund Mortimer 146
Harry Percy (Hotspur) 147
Owen Glendower 147
Lord Cobham 149

PAGE

Duke of Bedford 151
James I., of Scotland ..... 151 *n*
Joan of Arc ..... 152, 153 *n*
Margaret of Anjou ..... 153 *n*, 157
Jack Cade 154
Duke of Somerset 154, 155
Richard, duke of York 154, 155, 156
Richard Neville, earl of Warwick, 155 *n*, 156, 158
Edward IV 156, 157
Elizabeth Gray 158
Duke of Clarence 158, 159
Prince Edward, of Lancaster 159
Richard, duke of Gloster 159
William Caxton 160
Edward V 160
Lord Rivers 161
Lord Hastings 161
Duke of Buckingham 161
Sir Owen Tudor 161
Henry, earl of Richmond 161, 162
Anne 162
Lord Stanley 163
Sir William Stanley 163

GEOGRAPHICAL.

Where situated?
With what events connected?

Otterbourne 147
Harfleur 149
Calais 149
Agincourt 149
Troyes 150
Poitiers 151
Orleans 152
Rheims 152
St. Albans 155
Northampton 155
Towton 157
Dartmouth 158
Barnet 158
Tewksbury 159
Milford Haven 162
Bosworth 162

PART III.

MODERN ENGLAND.

SECTION I.

THE TUDOR FAMILY.

Extending from the Accession of Henry VII. (1485) *to that of James I.* (1603).

1. Henry Tudor, by the decisive victory which he gained at Bosworth, obtained the throne, though he had no legal title to it. He was, however, prudent and vigorous; and, as he foresaw that he would have many difficulties to contend with in consequence of the popularity of the house of York, he determined to show all opponents that nothing but successful war would avail to dethrone him. His first acts showed much partisan jealousy and hatred. The young earl of Warwick, son of the duke of Clarence, and grandson of the "King-maker," he caused to be kept securely in the Tower; and, though the king had promised to marry the princess Elizabeth, daughter of Edward IV., he delayed the nuptials for some months, greatly to the dissatisfaction of the nation, eager by this union to remove all occasion for civil dissensions.

Henry VII., 1485-1509.

2. A rumor having spread among the people that the earl of Warwick had escaped from the Tower and was lying concealed in some part of England, a priest of Oxford, named Simon, brought forward a handsome youth, whose real name

1. What policy did Henry VII. adopt? How did he show partisan rancor?
2. What impostor was brought forward? By whom was he supported?

was Lambert Simnel, but who had been trained by Simon to personate the young earl. He took him to Ireland, where the people received him with joy, and proclaimed him king, under the title of Edward VI.; and although the king, in order to prevent the insurrection from spreading in England, exhibited the real earl of Warwick in public, the impostor still retained his adherents in Ireland. Simnel also received from the duchess of Burgundy, sister

Simnel.

COSTUMES. (*Time of Henry VII.*)

of Edward IV., the aid of two thousand veteran soldiers from Germany (1487).

3. The cause of Simnel was likewise supported by John, earl of Lincoln, nephew of Edward IV., under whose leadership the insurgents landed in England; but, having advanced as far as Stoke, were met by an army under Henry and entirely defeated, Lincoln being slain in the battle. Simnel was taken prisoner, and, being too contemptible to excite the resentment of the king, was pardoned, and made a scullion in the royal kitchen. Simon, being a priest, was punished only by imprisonment (1487).

3. What was done by the insurgents? How were they defeated? What was done with Simnel and Simon? Where is Stoke? (*See Progressive Map No.* 5.)

Orkney Islands
GREAT BRITAIN (MODERN)
Hebrides Is.
SCOTLAND
Inverness
Culloden
Grampian Hills
Aberdeen
BEN NEVIS
Dundee
Glencoe
Perth
Stirling
Bannockburn
Firth of Forth
Dunbar
Falkirk
Preston Pan
Edinburgh
Berwick
Glasgow
Tweed R.
Flodden
Otterbourne
Dumfries
Cheviot Hills
Newcastle
Durham
NORTH SEA
Carlisle
I. of Man
IRELAND
Lancaster
York
IRISH SEA
Marston Moor
Towton
Preston
Wakefield
Hull
Anglesea
I.
Liverpool
Manchester
Newark
Nottingham
The Wash
Caernarvon
Derby
Leicester
Norwich
Bosworth
Shrewsbury
Birmingham
Naseby
Fotheringay
ST. GEORGES CHANNEL
WALES
Worcester
Edgehill
Northampton
Evesham
Cambridge
Tewksbury
Milford
Gloucester
Oxford
Barnet
Cardiff
Bristol
Newbury
LONDON
Swansea
Windsor
Canterbury
Bristol Channel
Bath
Sedgemoor
Salisbury
Dover
Battle
Taunton
Winchester
Lewes
Exeter
Carisbrook
Shoreham
Strait of Dover
Calais
ENGLISH CHANNEL
Portsmouth
CORNWALL
Torbay
I. of Wight
Plymouth
Boulogne

4. Five years afterward, a more formidable attempt was made by the enemies of the king to raise a pretender to the throne, by counterfeiting Richard, duke of York, the younger of the two sons of Edward IV., who were generally believed to have been murdered in the Tower. The person selected for this purpose was a young man named Perkin Warbeck, the son of a Flemish merchant, of comely appearance, graceful and courtly address, and sprightly and intelligent conversation. He first assumed the name of Richard Plantagenet in Ireland, and many partisans of the York family at once flocked to his standard.

Perkin Warbeck.

5. Charles, king of France, being engaged in war with England, invited him to Paris, and treated him with all the respect due to the prince whom he personated; but, having made peace with Henry, he dismissed him from the French court. The adventurer then proceeded to the duchess of Burgundy, sister of Edward IV., by whom he was most cordially welcomed and acknowledged, receiving from her the appellation of the *White Rose of England* (1493). These circumstances induced very many persons in England to believe that Warbeck was actually the duke of York.

6. Henry, on this account, endeavored to obtain positive evidence of the murder of the duke and his brother; but in this he was unsuccessful, since the remains of the princes had been removed by Richard, and therefore could not be found.* Several of Warbeck's adherents in England were executed for treason, among them Sir William Stanley, the faithful friend

* In 1674, during some repairs, the bones of two youths were discovered under a staircase in the White Tower, and were interred in Westminster Abbey by order of Charles II., being believed to be the remains of Edward V. and his brother.

4. What other pretender came forward? Who was Perkin Warbeck? When did he first assume the name of Plantagenet? What support did he receive?

5. What course was taken by Charles, king of France? By the duchess of Burgundy? The effect of this?

6. What was done by Henry? Who were executed? Crime of Stanley?

of Henry, who had crowned him at Bosworth, after having saved his life in the battle. The only crime of this nobleman was, that he had said privately that, if he were sure the young man was really King Edward's son, he would never bear arms against him (1495).

7. After making a fruitless attempt to raise an insurrection in Ireland, Warbeck proceeded to Scotland, where he was acknowledged by the king, James IV., who gave him the noble lady Catharine Gordon in marriage, and made an invasion of England on his account. The people, however, refused to receive the pretender; and, after making another unsuccessful attempt in Cornwall, Warbeck gave himself up, and was imprisoned in the Tower (1497). There he became acquainted with the earl of Warwick, and arranged with him a plan of escape; but the plot was discovered, and both were executed—Warbeck being hanged at Tyburn, and the unfortunate prince beheaded on Tower Hill. By this act of cruelty Henry destroyed the last male descendant of the Plantagenets (1499).

HENRY VII. (*Family picture.*)

8. Henry was a prudent monarch, and very much averse to war, principally because it prevented the gratification of his ruling passion, avarice. In order to increase his hoards,

7. Further account of Warbeck? What led to his execution? Who also was executed? Who was destroyed by this execution?

8. What was the ruling passion of Henry? How was it gratified? Instruments of his exactions? Amount of his hoards? His death?

he resorted to the most unjust and tyrannical exactions; and two lawyers, named Empson and Dudley, gained an infamous notoriety by acting as instruments of his rapacity. His treasures amounted at his death to almost two millions sterling—an enormous sum at that period. He died after a reign of twenty-four years, and was succeeded by his second son, Henry (1509), his eldest son, Arthur, having died some years before.

Character.

9. This reign was fortunate for the people of England; for, the civil commotions which threatened the peace of the country being repressed by Henry's wise and vigorous administration, general prosperity prevailed, commerce and manufactures were promoted, and the arts of peace flourished. He commissioned John and Sebastian Cabot, Venetians settled in Bristol, by whom the mainland of North America was first reached (1497), the year before that of South America was discovered by Columbus.* Henry also showed his interest in maritime affairs by causing a very large vessel, called the "Great Harry," to be built for naval purposes. This may be considered the foundation of the English navy, since the government previous to this time only used such merchant ships as could be hired or forcibly taken for its service.

Noted Events.

10. The accession of Henry VIII. was hailed by the people with great rejoicing. His father had, long before his death, lost to a considerable extent their respect and affection: but the young prince, now in his eighteenth year, was remarkable for personal

Henry VIII. 1509 '47.

* It is said that Henry was prevented by an accident from participating in the honor connected with the discovery of America. Columbus, discouraged by the many repulses which he met with at other courts, sent Bartholomew to England to solicit aid; but, before this could be obtained, Columbus received assistance from Queen Isabella of Spain, and accomplished the enterprise.

9. Why was this reign fortunate? The Cabots? The "Great Harry"? What was this the commencement of? Where is Bristol? (*See Progressive Map No.* 5.)

10. The accession of Henry VIII.? His character? His marriage? His first act?

beauty, affability, and ease of address, and both mental and bodily accomplishments. Soon after his accession, he married Catharine of Aragon, his brother Arthur's widow, to whom he had been betrothed against his will since his eleventh year, and who was six years his senior. One of his first acts was to redress the grievances of those who had suffered from the unjust exactions of the late king; and Empson and Dudley were tried, convicted, and executed.

Cath. of Aragon.

11. Desirous of military glory, as well as of recovering England's former possessions in France, he entered into an alliance with the Pope, Spain, and Venice against Louis XII. of France; but in the first campaign the English army, under the marquis of Dorset, was not successful (1511). Henry then determined to invade the French territories with an overwhelming force. He landed at Calais with an army of nearly 50,000 men, and was joined by the emperor of Germany, Maximilian, who, enlisting in his army, assumed the cross of St. George, and received the usual pay of a captain. The English forces having advanced a short distance were met by the French cavalry; but the latter, at the sight of the enemy, were seized with a singular panic, and disgracefully fled. In the pursuit many officers of distinction were made prisoners (1513). This affair was called in derision the "Battle of the Spurs."

CATHARINE OF ARAGON.

French Invasion.

11. What expeditions were undertaken against France? What led to the "Battle of the Spurs"? Where is Calais? (See map, page 73.)

12. Instead of improving this victory by marching on Paris, Henry allowed himself to be delayed by the siege of some inconsiderable towns, and soon afterward returned to England. In the mean time, the Scots, who had formed an alliance with Louis, invaded England with a large army, under their king, James; but at Flodden Field were met by an English force inferior in numbers, under the earl of Surrey. The battle was long and desperate, and resulted in the defeat of the Scots, 5,000 of whom, including their king and the flower of the Scottish nobility, were left dead on the field (1513).*

Flodden Field.

13. Henry's favorite minister at this time was Thomas Wolsey (*wool'ze*), who, from a very humble origin, had advanced successively to the highest honors. With varied and extensive learning, a genius for statesmanship, and all the wit and gayety necessary in an accomplished courtier, he soon gained an unbounded influence over the young English monarch; and in his magnificent equipage and gorgeous attire he outshone even the king himself. From being bishop of Lincoln, he was made archbishop of York, and subsequently appointed by the Pope a cardinal (1515). Foreign princes sued for the favor and courted the smiles of this haughty minister and prelate; but he was careful, by pretending a complete submission to the will of his own sovereign, to conceal the extraordinary influence which he had acquired over him.

Wolsey.

* The Scots would not believe that their king was slain, asserting that the body which was taken to London and interred as the king's, was, in reality, that of one Elphinston, who, to deceive the English, was arrayed in arms resembling the king's during the battle. Hence, the populace entertained the opinion that James was still alive, having secretly gone on a pilgrimage to the Holy Land, and that he would return and take possession of the throne. To this fond conceit they clung for many years.

12. Did Henry take advantage of this victory? Battle of Flodden Field? Its consequences? (For Flodden, *see Progressive Map No.* 5.)

13. Who was Thomas Wolsey? His character? What offices were given him? What is said of his influence? How was it secured?

14. On the death of the Emperor Maximilian, Henry was tempted to make some effort to obtain the vacant throne of Germany, but found that the votes of the electors were engaged either to Francis, king of France, or to Charles of Spain. The latter was ultimately successful, and thus became, as the Emperor Charles V., the greatest potentate of Europe; since not only Spain and Germany, but the Netherlands, a part of Italy, and the recently discovered regions of the New World, yielded obedience to his sway (1520). Francis retired from the contest filled with chagrin and disappointment; and, in order to strengthen himself against the power of his great rival, planned an alliance with the English king (1520).

German Emperor.

MILITARY COSTUME IN THE TIME OF HENRY VIII. (*Selected from Cotton MS.*)

15. For the purpose of effecting this, the two kings met at a place near Calais; and a fortnight was passed in the interview, the whole time being spent in tournaments and other entertainments of the most magnificent character (1520). So gorgeous was the display on both sides, under the management of Wolsey, that the place of meeting was called the "Field of the Cloth of Gold."* The treaty which was made was, however, soon

Meeting with Francis.

* "After the tournament, the French and English wrestlers made their appearance, and wrestled in presence of the kings and the ladies. . . . After this, the kings of France and England retired to a tent, where they

14. What followed the death of the Emperor Maximilian? Who was elected to succeed him? Dominions of Charles? Feelings and conduct of Francis?

15. Account of the meeting of Henry and Francis? "Field of the Cloth of Gold?" Why was the treaty broken?

broken; for Charles had artfully gained over Cardinal Wolsey to his interests by promising his influence to secure for the ambitious minister the papal throne on the death of the reigning pontiff (Leo X.).

16. Martin Luther having caused great excitement in Europe by the promulgation of his doctrines, Henry, who had been carefully educated in the faith of the Catholic church, wrote a treatise in defense of it, and dedicated it to the Pope, who, as a token of his approbation, conferred on the royal author the title of "Defender of the Faith" (1521). This was one of the last acts of the pontificate of Leo X., his death occurring before the close of the year. He was succeeded by Adrian VI., greatly to the disappointment of Wolsey. The cardinal, however, was soothed by renewed promises on the part of the emperor, who paid a visit to England in order to confirm the friendship of Henry and his haughty minister (1522).

Luther.

17. In pursuance of the agreement made with Charles, war was waged with France, but no success attended the English arms; and the king was embarrassed by the want of funds, Parliament refusing to comply with his demands, in spite of the most strenuous efforts on the part of Wolsey to induce it to vote the sums asked for. The cardinal soon after experienced a second disappointment in the election of Clement VII. to fill the papal chair on the decease of Adrian; and as this was effected by the emperor's influence, Wolsey, seeing his insincerity,

French War.

drank together, and the king of England, seizing the king of France by the collar, said, '*My brother, I must wrestle with you;*' and endeavored once or twice to trip up his heels; but the king of France, who is a dexterous wrestler, twisted him round, and threw him on the earth with prodigious violence. The king of England wanted to renew the combat, but was prevented."—*Mémoires de Fleuranges.*

16. What title was conferred on Henry by the Pope? Why? How was Wolsey disappointed?

17. Result of the French war? Second disappointment of Wolsey? What change of policy did it cause?

determined to prepare the way for a union between his master and the French king (1523).

18. The war with France was, however, continued for some time; until, Francis having been defeated and taken prisoner by the imperial army in the battle of Pavia* (1525), Henry entered into a treaty of alliance with the regent, Francis's mother, and engaged, in consideration of receiving a very large sum of money, to assist in procuring the liberation of the French monarch. This was soon afterward effected (1526); and Rome having been sacked by the brutal soldiers of the emperor, and the Pope made a captive, Henry and Francis entered into a league to restore him to liberty.

MEETING OF HENRY VIII. AND FRANCIS I. ON THE FIELD OF THE CLOTH OF GOLD.

19. About this time, the king, captivated by the charms of Anne Boleyn (*an bul'en*), a maid of honor to the queen, began to consider in what way he could obtain a separation from his wife Catharine. Professing to have conscientious

* A city in the northern part of Italy, noted as the ancient capital of the Lombard kings. (*See Progressive Map No.* 6.)

18. How long was the war with France continued? What led to a league between Henry and Francis?

19. Why did Henry desire a divorce from his queen? What course did he pursue? Result of the trial?

scruples with regard to the lawfulness of his marriage with his brother's widow,* he applied to Pope Clement to grant a divorce from her: and the latter commissioned a legate to investigate, with Wolsey, the validity of the dispensation which a previous pope had granted for the marriage of the king and Catharine, and to divorce the parties if they decided it to be invalid. After the trial had continued some months, during which the king and

Anne Boleyn.

THE EMBARKATION OF HENRY VIII. AT DOVER, MAY 31, 1520.

(*From a large print engraved after the original picture preserved in Hampton Court.*)

queen appeared before the court of the two commissioners, it was broken off suddenly, the commission having been revoked, and the case remanded to Rome, before the Pope in person, he having received an appeal from the queen.

* The royal couple had lived together for sixteen years; but, to Henry's disappointment, their only living child was the princess Mary; and when a marriage between her and the dauphin of France was proposed, the French ambassador expressed a doubt of the validity of her parents' marriage. The states of Castile had also opposed the emperor Charles's espousal to Mary on the same grounds. These events, however, occurred some years before the period referred to in the text. Henry's application to Clement was founded on two grounds: "First, that it is not competent for the Pope to grant a dispensation in such a case (marriage with a deceased brother's wife being contrary to canon law); and secondly, that it was granted on the basis of erroneous representations."

20. This greatly exasperated the king, who immediately directed his indignation against Wolsey as the cause of his disappointment. The cardinal was deprived of his office as chancellor, the great seal being bestowed upon Sir Thomas More, a man not only of eminent virtue and capacity, but greatly distinguished for his attainments in science and literature. Wolsey's splendid palace was seized by the king, and with the title of Whitehall, became afterward famous as the residence of the kings of England. The fallen minister was ordered to betake himself to his country residence, Hampton Court, and immediately found himself deserted by all those who, during his prosperity, had paid him the most servile homage (1529).

Fall of Wolsey.

CARDINAL WOLSEY.

21. He afterward retired to his see of York, where he made himself extremely popular by his hospitality, kindness to the poor, and general affability; but his relentless enemies, among whom was Anne Boleyn, were not yet satisfied, and under their influence Wolsey was arrested on a charge of high treason. While being escorted to London for trial, he was seized with severe illness, and expired shortly afterward at Leicester Abbey (1530). Among his last words was the well-known saying, "Had I but served God as diligently as I have served the king, he would not have given me over in my gray hairs." His great faults were his arrogance and inordinate ambition

20. What caused the fall of Wolsey? How was he treated? (Hampton Court, afterward a royal palace, is on the Thames, one mile from Hampton and fifteen miles from London.) Who became chancellor?

21. Further history of Wolsey? His death? His last words? Remarks on his character?

and love of display: but his administration was able and generally judicious, while subsequently Henry's rule was marked by tyranny, extravagance, and passion.

22. Tired of waiting for the Pope's decision, the king, by the advice of Thomas Cranmer, a distinguished ecclesiastic, referred the question respecting his marriage with Catharine to the great universities in Europe: and, these having generally decided that it was unlawful, Cranmer, who had been made archbishop of Canterbury, opened a court to examine the question. Although the queen refused to appear before it, he annulled the marriage, and ratified that with Anne Boleyn (1533), with whom the king had been privately married some time before.*

Divorce of Catharine.

23. The Pope having pronounced the judgment of Cranmer illegal, and threatened Henry with excommunication, the Parliament, under the king's influence, confirmed his marriage with Queen Anne, and formally declared him "the only supreme head on earth of the Church of England." By this declaration and other acts of Parliament, the English Church was separated entirely from the see of Rome (1534). The monasteries were afterward suppressed, and some modifications introduced into the doc-

Reformation.

* "Henry was married to Anne Boleyn on the 25th of January, 1533, at the western end of the palace at Whitehall. She is described by a contemporary chronicler as 'a fair young creature, so exquisitely molded in form and feature, and gifted with wit so sparkling and pleasant, that she enslaved alike the eyes and understanding of all whom she encountered.' And such is the interest with which her memory is still invested, that numbers daily visit her chamber at Hever Castle (near Edenbridge in Kent), and eagerly listen to the romantic traditions which point out the hill where Henry used to sound his bugle when he came to visit her in their happy days of courtship, from his palace at Eltham."—Selby, *Events to be Remembered.*

22. What measure was taken by Henry? By whose advice? How was the marriage annulled? What else was done?

23. What was done by Parliament? What events constituted the "English Reformation"?

trines and forms of religion. These events constituted what is called in history the "English Reformation." *

Sir Thomas More.

24. Sir Thomas More, the virtuous and learned successor of Wolsey, unable conscientiously to support the king in these measures, had resigned the great seal, and, subsequently refusing to acknowledge the king's supremacy, was condemned for treason and executed. Fisher, bishop of Rochester, suffered the same fate (1535). The king, indeed, evinced, during the whole of his subsequent reign, a spirit of the most cruel bigotry and persecution. In abandoning his allegiance to the Pope, he by no means became a convert to the new doctrines of Luther and others against the Church of Rome; and while he plundered the churches and monasteries of their possessions, he caused those who dissented from their doctrines to be burnt without the least mercy.

SIR THOMAS MORE.

25. About three years after her marriage with the king, Anne Boleyn was brought to trial on a charge of being

* "As a matter of fact, the Reformation was, during the reign of Henry, much less of a religious than a political revolution. The only points Henry was particular about were the matters of *supremacy* and *church property*. For a long period, the idea of adopting the new form of faith in all its doctrinal sequence seemed quite foreign to his mind. The doctrine, first, that he, Henry, was supreme king, spiritual as well as temporal, within his own realms; the doctrine, secondly, that he could, in virtue of such spiritual supremacy, give full rein to his beastly lusts; and, lastly, that whatever property the church possessed, bequeathed for pious uses, he might rob and keep for himself, or divide as bribes between his abetting nobles, legislators, and statesmen—these were the 'reforms,' so called, upon which the king set most value."—Sullivan's *Story of Ireland.*

24. What led to the execution of More? Who else was executed? Views and conduct of Henry?

25. Fate of Anne Boleyn? Vengeance of the king? Third marriage of Henry?

unfaithful to her royal husband; and, being pronounced guilty, was sentenced to death, and subsequently beheaded (1536).* Not satisfied with this cruel vengeance, the king caused his marriage with Anne to be annulled, and her daughter, the princess Elizabeth, to be declared illegitimate. The conduct of Henry seemed to disprove the guilt of this unfortunate queen, for on the very next day after her execution he married Jane Seymour, one of her maids of honor, of whom he had a short time before become greatly enamored. This queen died the next year, after giving birth to a son, who was baptized by the name of Edward (1537).

Jane Seymour.

26. The suppression of the monasteries, and the other innovations introduced by the king, occasioned a serious insurrection, called the "Pilgrimage of Grace," in which many priests participated, the object being "to restore the Church and suppress heresy." Hull and York were taken by the rebels, who, however, were soon dispersed by the duke of Norfolk, and their leaders taken and executed (1536). This rebellion led to severer measures against the remaining abbeys and monasteries. All were seized, their rich possessions taken by the crown, and many of the most sacred shrines were pillaged and destroyed,

Monasteries.

* "The axe with which the 'little neck' of the cruelly sacrificed queen was severed is still preserved in the Tower, and shares with her grave in the chapel the melancholy interest which for more than three hundred years has been associated with her name. . . . It is said that during the night which followed her execution, her body was secretly removed from its grave before the altar in Tower chapel, and buried in the church of Salle, in Norfolk, where a black marble slab is shown as the covering of her remains."—Selby, *Events to be Remembered.*

"In these two direful deeds (the executions of More and Anne), Henry approached, perhaps, as nearly to the ideal standard of perfect wickedness as the infirmities of human nature will allow."—*Sir James Mackintosh.*

26. What was the "Pilgrimage of Grace"? How caused? What was done by the rebels? How did the insurrection end? To what did it lead? What was done to the remains of Thomas à Becket?

including even that of St. Thomas of Canterbury, whose name, by the king's order, was erased from the calendar, his bones dug up and burned, and their ashes scattered to the winds (1538).

27. Immediately after the death of Jane Seymour, Henry turned his attention to the selection of a new queen, and by the advice of his minister Cromwell consented to marry Anne of Cleves, a Protestant princess, with whose portrait he had been highly pleased (1540). He was, however, so greatly disappointed with the original that he soon divorced her, but settled upon her a handsome annuity, upon which she lived in England until her death, in 1557. Cromwell, who had been instrumental in bringing about this unfortunate marriage, was charged with treason, condemned, and executed (1540).

Anne of Cleves.

28. The king soon afterward married Catharine Howard, niece of the duke of Norfolk; but in less than two years she was charged with adultery, and, being proved guilty, was beheaded (1542). During the same year, war again broke out with Scotland, brought on through the contrivance of the Catholic party in that country, aided by Mary of Guise (*gweez*), wife of the Scottish king, James V. This monarch sent a considerable force into England, but it was disastrously routed by the English at Solway Moss; and James was so deeply chagrined at the defeat that he expired in less than a month afterward. A few days before his death his queen gave birth to a daughter, afterward celebrated as Mary Queen of Scots (1542).

Scottish War.

29. Henry then planned the union of the two kingdoms

27. Fourth queen of Henry? (Cleves, a town in Prussia, on the Rhine.) How was she selected? How treated? Her subsequent history? Fate of Cromwell?

28. Fifth marriage of Henry? Guilt and punishment of Catharine Howard? What caused a war with Scotland? How ended? Where is Solway Moss? *Ans.* In Cumberland. (*See Progressive Map No.* 4.) Death of the Scottish king? What is said of his infant daughter?

29. What plan was conceived by Henry? How was it frustrated? What war followed? Sixth marriage of the king? Catharine Parr?

by effecting a marriage between his son Edward and the young Scottish queen; but this was prevented by the Catholic party, through whose influence Scotland again formed an alliance with France. Henry, therefore, entered into a league with the emperor of Germany, in order to attack France; but no results of importance followed, although the war was continued more than three years (1543–'46). Meanwhile, the king, for the sixth time, entered into a matrimonial alliance, choosing Catharine Parr, widow of Lord Latimer, a lady of beauty, wit, and intelligence, and attached to the new church doctrines.

Catharine Parr.

30. The king, however, was exceedingly intolerant of any innovations in religion, except such as he ordered; and many suffered death for daring to express opinions at variance with his own. Among these martyrs, Anne Ascue, a young woman of singular merit and beauty, suffered death at the stake, heroically refusing to deny her faith. The queen fell into great danger by attempting a similar freedom, and only saved herself by pretending an entire submission to her royal husband's will.

Martyrs.

31. The last victim of Henry's tyranny was the accomplished Henry Howard, earl of Surrey, who was beheaded on Tower Hill, having been unjustly condemned on a charge of treason (1547).* The king survived this event only a few days. His excesses had entirely de-

Character.

* He perished by the accusations of his unnatural sister, the duchess of Richmond. The chief evidence of his guilt was her statement that he used the king's cipher, H. R.; although it was shown by him that this cipher had been worn by his ancestors as well as by himself. His genius was of a very high order, and his accomplishments quite extensive, including a knowledge of the Latin, French, Italian, and Spanish languages. He had a remarkably vigorous intellect, as well as a keen and ready wit. Chaste both in thought and expression, his writings breathe the most fervent regard both for virtue and religion, while they abound in those beautiful flights of fancy which are the characteristic of genuine poetry.

30. Intolerance of Henry? Anne Ascue? Danger of the queen?

31. Last victim of Henry's tyranny? Death of Henry? His character?

stroyed his health, so that for some time before his death he had become loathsome to all around him, while his irascibility made him an object of constant terror. Macaulay pronounces him "a king whose character may be best described by saying that he was despotism itself personified." Froude's *History of England* presents the ablest apology for him. He was without doubt a most remorseless despot; but, notwithstanding his arbitrary violation of every principle of political and religious liberty, he never lost entirely the good-will of his subjects.

HENRY VIII.

32. During this reign, the first complete copy of the English Bible was printed, and ordered by the king to be placed in every parish church. It was based upon the translation of William Tyndale, and executed by Miles Coverdale. Henry VIII. encouraged learning. He founded Trinity College in Cambridge, and munificently endowed it. Wolsey founded Christ Church in Oxford, and was the first to establish in the same university a professorship for giving instruction in Greek. The most noted poets of this period were the unfortunate Surrey and Sir Thomas Wyatt.* Henry left three children —Mary, daughter of Catharine; Elizabeth, daughter of

Bible.

* Wyatt and Surrey were intimate friends, being congenial both in taste and sentiment. Wyatt was a great favorite with the king, and was employed on some important embassies on the continent. He died in October, 1542, in the thirty-ninth year of his age.

32. What translation was made during this reign? What institution did Henry found? What was founded by Wolsey? Who were the most noted poets? What children did Henry leave? Who succeeded him?

Anne Boleyn; and Edward, son of Jane Seymour. The last succeeded him (1547).

33. Edward VI. being only ten years of age, the government was intrusted to his maternal uncle, Edward Seymour, duke of Somerset, as Protector;* who, being in favor of promoting the cause of the Reformation, took care that those who directed the education of the youthful monarch should be of the same principles. Edward readily imbibed these views, and showed a knowledge, zeal, and devotion quite remarkable in one so young. His attention to his studies and the gentleness of his disposition also made him much loved by all around him.† Cranmer and Latimer were the most eminent of his religious preceptors, as they were likewise among the most active of the Reformers; while Gardiner, bishop of Winchester, showed the greatest zeal in opposing all further religious innovations.

Edward VI. 1547–'53.

EDWARD VI. (*After Holbein.*)

* The deceased king's last will nominated sixteen persons to be his executors, and to act as governors of his son and of the kingdom until Edward should have completed his eighteenth year. One of these was Edward Seymour, earl of Hertford; and it was agreed that he, being the uncle of the young king, should be his governor during his nonage; and subsequently the earl of Hertford was made duke of Somerset. The title of the latter was finally settled as "Governor of the Person of the King's Majesty and Protector of his Realms."

† "There was reason to hope extraordinary things from this young prince, had it pleased God to bless him with a longer life. He had an excellent memory, a wonderful solidity of mind, and withal he was laborious, sparing no pains to qualify himself for the well-governing of his kingdom. At eight

33. Who was appointed Protector? Education of Edward VI.? His character? His religious preceptors? Most noted reformers? Who opposed them?

34. In accordance with the views of the late king, Somerset was desirous of effecting a union between England and Scotland, by the marriage of Edward with the young Scottish queen. This being opposed by the Scots, he marched a large army across the border, and gained a great victory near Edinburgh (*ed'in-bur-ruh*) (1547), but was unable to take advantage of it, being compelled to return to England, to oppose the machinations of his enemies, among whom was his own brother, Lord Seymour.* Shortly afterward, the infant queen of Scotland was sent to France,† where she was educated, and subsequently became the wife of Francis II., king of that country.

35. The duke of Somerset, finding his authority endangered by the ambitious schemes of his brother, caused him to be arrested and committed to the Tower; and, a bill of attainder‡ being passed against him by Parliament, he was executed (1549). Further changes were made in the established religion through the influence of the Protector, and

years of age, he wrote Latin letters to his father. French was as familiar to him as English; he learned, also, Greek, Spanish, and Italian. After that he applied himself to liberal sciences, wherein he made an astonishing progress, so much so that in his fifteenth year he was considered the wonder of his time."—Rapin's *History of England.*

* Sir Thomas Seymour, lord high-admiral, a very ambitious man, had married the late king's widow Catharine, a short time after Henry's decease.

† "The four Marys"—Seton, Beton, Fleming, and Livingston—each about the same age as Mary Stuart, were sent to France with the latter to be educated, when seven years old, on the betrothal of Mary Stuart to the young dauphin (Francis II.). After his death (§ 53) they vowed that they would remain unmarried while Queen Mary was a widow. After her marriage with Darnley (§ 55), all married except Mary Seton, who was forbidden by her family to wed the man she loved.

‡ A bill of attainder is a law declaring a person guilty of treason, and condemning him without a formal trial. It was a noted instrument of tyranny for many years.

34. What led to an invasion of Scotland? What was the result? Where is Edinburgh? (*See Progressive Map No.* 5.) The infant queen of Scotland?

35. What proceedings were taken against Lord Seymour? What changes took place in religion? The Book of Common Prayer? What persecutions took place?

severe laws were enacted against those who refused to comply with the liturgy, as contained in the "Book of Common Prayer," compiled chiefly by Cranmer and Ridley. Some persons, who persistently refused a compliance with the new doctrines and practices, were committed to the flames.

Insurrection.

36. The breaking up of the religious houses, the inclosure of the commons on which the peasantry had formerly pastured their cattle, the depreciation of money from the debasement of the coin by the late king, and the great influx of gold and silver from the New World, causing an increase in the price of commodities, had occasioned very general distress, all of which was attributed by the people to the religious innovations; for, they urged in their complaints, the new occupants of the church lands no longer attended to the wants of the poor, as had been the practice of the former proprietors. Besides, the time approached when the use of the old liturgy, to which they had been accustomed from infancy, was to be discontinued, and the new one, with its abolition of high mass, its absence of music, and its scanty ceremonials, was to be introduced. An insurrection was the consequence, the people rising in several parts of England at the same time, and demanding a restoration of the former religious institutions. These commotions were, however, soon put down; chiefly by the energetic conduct of the earl of Warwick, who defeated the rebels with great slaughter, and caused the leaders to be hanged (1549).

Fall of Somerset.

37. Somerset, who up to this time had ruled England with kingly power, now became very unpopular; and, principally through the management of Warwick, was finally deposed and sent to the Tower, the latter thus obtaining the chief control of the government (1549). Somerset having made humble submission to his

36. What occasioned great distress? To what was it attributed? What insurrection broke out? How was it suppressed?

37. What proceedings against Somerset? Through whom was this done?

enemies, was released, but was a short time afterward accused of high treason and executed (1552). This was accomplished by the contrivance of Warwick, now bearing the title of duke of Northumberland, whose unbounded ambition was such as to extinguish in his mind every generous and honorable feeling.

38. The ill health of the young king prompted the duke to undertake a still bolder enterprise, which was no less than to place one of his own family on the throne. In pursuance of this scheme he married his son, Lord Guilford Dudley, to Lady Jane Grey, a descendant of Henry VII., and persuaded the king to set aside the claims of his sisters Mary and Elizabeth on the ground of illegitimacy, and to settle the succession upon his cousin, the Lady Jane. After this settlement was made, the young king grew rapidly worse, Northumberland having dismissed his physicians and placed him in charge of persons entirely committed to his own interests. A short time after this, Edward expired,* in the sixteenth year of his age, much lamented for his many virtues (1553).†

Death of Edward.

39. The lords, being under the influence of Northumber-

* Some were disposed to attribute the young king's death to the administration of slow poison; but he had, the previous year, suffered from the measles, and then the small-pox, which left him very weak; and this, added to a natural delicacy of constitution, led to a disease of the lungs, which, most probably, was the cause of his decease.

† "The encomiums bestowed on Edward VI. are an example of the folly of excessive praise. What he was in reality was a diligent, docile, gentle, sprightly boy, whose proficiency in every branch of study was remarkable, and who showed a more than ordinary promise of capacity. But sycophants and lovers of the marvelous have almost drowned in a flood of adulation these agreeable and amiable qualities. . . . His position in English history between a tyrant and a bigot adds somewhat to the grace of his innocent and attractive character."—Mackintosh's *History of England.*

38. What other scheme was planned by the duke of Northumberland? What was done to effect it? Illness and death of the king?

39. Announcement of Lady Jane Grey? What is said of her character and attainments? Why did she accept the throne?

land, immediately waited upon the Lady Jane to inform her of the death of her royal cousin, and of her own elevation to the throne by his designation; but she received the news with visible concern and anxiety. She was a lady of unusual accomplishments and singular amiability, having passed much of her time in a close application to study, and made great attainments in the Greek and Latin languages, as is stated by the distinguished scholar, Roger Ascham (*as'kam*).* For other occupations she expressed an entire indifference, and only yielded to the persuasions of her friends to accept the throne, from the representations made to her that her title to it was clear, and that her duty dictated the step (1553).

Lady Jane Grey.

LADY JANE GREY.

40. The people, however, heard the proclamation of her accession with sullen silence or expressions of scorn and contempt; and Mary at once took measures to assert her right. She was proclaimed queen by the authorities of London, and

* Ascham was a noted classical scholar. One of his most celebrated works is "Toxophilus," a defense of archery, dedicated to Henry VIII. He was teacher of languages to the Lady Elizabeth, and subsequently Latin secretary to Edward VI. and Mary; and, later, was secretary and tutor to Queen Elizabeth. He died in 1568, leaving his principal work, entitled "The Schoolmaster," which was published by his widow in 1571.

40. Effect on the people? Measures of Mary? Who were punished?

hailed with shouts of applause by the populace when she entered that city. Northumberland and his colleagues were obliged to submit, and the former with two of his accomplices was convicted of treason and executed. Lady Jane Grey and Lord Guilford were also sentenced to death, but the queen was reluctant to carry the sentence into execution. Cranmer was also tried, and convicted of participating in the treason of Northumberland, but was reserved for future punishment.

Mary, 1553-'58.

41. The cherished object of Mary was to restore the Catholic religion; and her chief counselors in carrying out this object were Bishops Gardiner and Bonner, whom she had reinstated in their sees. Parliament repealed all the laws of King Edward with regard to religion, and, having annulled the divorce pronounced by Cranmer, declared the queen legitimate. Mary shortly afterward expressed a willingness to marry Philip of Spain, son of the emperor Charles V., and a treaty to that effect was arranged, though it was quite contrary to the general wishes of the English people. The marriage took place in 1554.

Marriage of Mary.

42. In consequence of these changes a rebellion broke out in Kent, under Sir Thomas Wyatt (son of the poet, and hence surnamed "the Younger"); but it was speedily reduced, and Wyatt was executed. Some of the friends of Lady Jane Grey having taken part in it, the queen was finally induced to sign the death-warrant of that unfortunate princess and her husband, and they were consequently beheaded (1554). Her last message to her youthful husband (for neither of them was over seventeen years of age) was: "Our separation will be only for a moment; we shall soon meet each other in a place where our affections will be forever

Lady Jane Grey.

---

41. Chief object of Mary? Measures to attain it? Her marriage?

42. What rebellion broke out? Result? Consequence to Lady Jane and her husband? Her last words to her husband? Who were imprisoned?

united, and where misfortunes will never more disturb our eternal felicity."* The queen filled the Tower and other prisons with the numerous objects of her suspicion, many of them among the most distinguished of the nobility and gentry. The Princess Elizabeth was also imprisoned, but made so good a defense that she was soon released.

43. The queen had already communicated to the Roman pontiff her wish that England should be reconciled to the Catholic Church; and Cardinal Pole was directed to proceed to that country as a papal legate to direct measures necessary for its formal restoration. This was accomplished by the third parliament of this reign (1555), the motion being carried almost by acclamation, and a memorial sent to the queen and her royal consort, regretting the nation's previous defection from the Roman see. A decree of general absolution was granted by the legate, and the laws against heresy were soon afterward revived.

England Catholic.

44. A severe persecution of the Protestants ensued, under the direction chiefly of Bishops Gardiner and Bonner. The first to suffer death at the stake were John Rogers, one of

* "Such was the end of that pattern of female excellence, Lady Jane Grey, who fell a victim to the rashness and ambition of her misguided parents. Under the tuition of Aylmer, who was afterward bishop of London, she made great progress in learning, and, though but seventeen years of age when she suffered, she had evinced, by the variety and extent of her acquirements, a most extraordinary capacity and mind, with personal claims which made her an object of admiration; she was endued with exemplary piety, and possessed a sweetness of disposition and a nobleness of heart that gained her universal love; in short, by her virtuous qualities she was no less distinguished than by her illustrious birth; and though she was induced to accept the crown, she took it rather as a burthen than a favor, and resigned it with as great indifference as she would have laid down a garland when its beauties had faded and its scent had gone."—Bayley's *History of the Tower.*

43. How was England restored to the Roman see? Who was Papal Legate?

44. What persecution ensued? Who were burned? What account is given of Cranmer and his execution? How many persons suffered? What excuse can be offered for this persecution?

the clergy of St. Paul's, and Hooper, bishop of Gloucester; and these were soon followed by Saunders and Taylor, two other clergymen. Soon after this, Ridley, bishop of London, and Latimer, of Worcester, were burned together, both of whom showed the greatest fortitude and constancy in their sufferings, refusing to the last to recant their religious opinions (1555). Cranmer, by the promise of pardon, was induced to sign a recantation, but was nevertheless committed to the flames. At the stake, he expressed the deepest contrition for his weakness; and thrusting into the flames the hand which had signed the paper, and exclaiming, "This hand has offended," he kept it there till it was entirely consumed. His sufferings were, however, short, as the flames rapidly enveloped him, so that he expired in a few moments (1556). It has been computed that two hundred and seventy-seven persons suffered death at the stake during this persecution. The only excuse or extenuation that can be offered for it is, that the age was remarkable for religious intolerance, and that both parties showed a like spirit in similar circumstances.

Persecution.

ARCHBISHOP CRANMER.

45. The queen had been for some time urged to aid her husband Philip, now king of Spain, in a war against France; but her ministers and Parliament were greatly opposed to it; Mary, though treated by her husband with great coolness and indifference, was yet very anxious to promote his views, and by various artifices at length succeeded in obtaining the means necessary to carry

Loss of Calais.

45. How was aid obtained for Philip? War in Flanders? Taking of Calais?

on the proposed war. An army, which was sent into Flanders, had considerable share in the victory gained by Philibert, duke of Savoy, at St. Quentin, a town near the eastern frontier of France (1557). As an offset to this victory, the French, under the duke of Guise, surprised the garrison at Calais, and took the town, after it had been in the possession of the English for more than two hundred years (1558).

46. The queen, whose health had been for some time failing, was greatly dejected at this loss, and fell into a lingering fever, of which she expired a short time afterward (November 17, 1558).* Cardinal Pole died the same day. Mary possessed a vigorous and resolute mind; and, could she have divested herself of the spirit of bigotry, so common in her age, she would have deserved a place among the most virtuous and energetic of sovereigns; but the cruelties perpetrated under her sanction have tended to obscure the many virtues and accomplishments which she undoubtedly possessed. The interests of trade were considerably promoted during her reign. A commercial treaty was made with Russia, and the woolen and linen fabrics of England were exchanged for the skins and furs of the northern regions.

Mary's Death.

Character.

*"Mary had long been in a declining state, and, having made use of an improper regimen, her malady daily augmented. Every reflection now tormented her. The consciousness of being hated by her subjects, the prospect of Elizabeth's succession, apprehensions of the danger to which the Catholic religion stood exposed, dejection for the loss of Calais, concern for the ill state of her affairs, and, above all, anxiety for the absence of her husband, who she knew intended soon to depart for Spain, and to settle there during the remainder of his life; all these melancholy reflections preyed upon her mind, and threw her into a lingering fever, of which she died in her forty-second year. She was buried in Westminster Abbey, in Henry VII.'s chapel. Her sister, Queen Elizabeth, was afterward buried in the same vault."—Hume's *History of England*.

46. Effect on the queen? Her death? Her character? Promotion of trade? What discovery was made? Exchange of goods?

47. Elizabeth, daughter of Henry VIII. and Anne Boleyn, who succeeded Mary, had been educated in the Protestant faith, and her accession to the throne was hailed by the people with great rejoicing. She commenced her reign with moderation, treating all with kindness and courtesy, even those by whom she had been deeply injured during the previous reign. She retained some of the council of Queen Mary, but added others who were favorable to her own views, among whom were Sir Nicholas Bacon and Sir William Cecil (*ses'il*), the latter being made secretary of state, and her chief adviser.

Elizabeth, 1558–1603.

QUEEN ELIZABETH.

48. The first important event of her reign was the re-enactment of the laws of King Edward concerning religion, and the re-establishment of the new liturgy, to which all were required to conform under severe penalties. By the "Act of Supremacy" all clergymen and government officers were compelled to take an oath acknowledging the English sovereign head of the Church, and by the "Act of Uniformity" no persons were allowed to attend any other place of worship than those of the Established Church. Hundreds suffered death, imprisonment, or other persecution for refusing to comply with these arbitrary statutes.

Act of Supremacy.

47. How was Elizabeth's accession received? Her previous history? How did she commence her reign? Of whom was her council composed? Her chief adviser?

48. Laws regarding religion? The "Act of Supremacy"? Persecution?

49. Philip of Spain made proposals of marriage to Elizabeth, but these were declined; and she told her Parliament, who urged her to accept a consort, that she desired no higher distinction than to have engraved on her tombstone, "Here lies Elizabeth, who lived and died a maiden queen." The first eleven years of her reign were distinguished for internal quiet and prosperity. Peace was established with France and Scotland; the government, under Cecil, afterward made Lord Burleigh, was administered with energy and prudence; the debts of the crown were promptly paid; and the nation was put in a posture of defense by the construction of a navy which gained for Elizabeth the title of "Queen of the Northern Seas."

Maiden Queen.

QUEEN ELIZABETH GOING IN STATE.

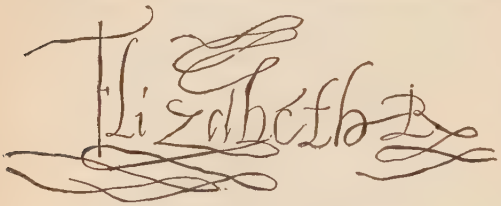
50. There were about this time three religious parties in the kingdom: the *Churchmen*, or those who were attached to the Established Church; the *Catholics*, who, supported by the great continental powers, expected to re-establish their religion; and the *Puritans*, who now contended for more radical changes in religious forms

Puritans.

49. What proposals were made to the queen? Views of Elizabeth as to matrimony? What were the chief events of the first eleven years of her reign?

50. What religious parties existed at this time? Describe each. Why did the Puritans oppose Elizabeth's government? Was this opposition effective during Elizabeth's reign?

and doctrines (1569). These last had imbibed their principles from those who, during the persecutions of the previous reign, had taken refuge in Geneva and Frankfort ;* and they opposed Elizabeth's government, not only on the ground of religious differences, but on account of her assuming a prerogative and authority opposed to the civil and political rights of the people. It was not, however, until a subsequent reign that these fearless agitators were enabled to bring their principles into complete operation ; for Elizabeth lost no opportunity of repressing their efforts, although some of her ministers favored their principles and practices.



SIGNATURE OF ELIZABETH. (*Harleian MS.*)

51. England now began to distinguish herself in that splendid career of maritime enterprise which has shed such luster upon her name. Under the auspices of Sir Walter Raleigh (*raw'le*), a favorite courtier of Elizabeth, voyages were made to North America, and the queen gave to the region discovered the name of *Virginia* (1584). Martin Frobisher also made explorations for a northwest passage to India ; and Sir Francis Drake† completed a voyage around the world by way of Cape Horn and the Cape of Good Hope (1580).

Raleigh.

Discoveries.

* It is computed that, during the persecutions under Queen Mary, as many as eight hundred Protestants sought an asylum in Switzerland and Germany. But these were of various views, and disputes arose as to the extent of the changes to be made in religious matters. After Elizabeth's accession these disputes were transferred to their own country.

† Drake was the first Englishman to accomplish this enterprise. As he had captured some of the Spanish treasure-ships, some persons, fearing the

51. How did England begin to be distinguished ? What voyages and discoveries were made ? Sir Francis Drake ?

52. The people of the Netherlands having revolted against Philip II. of Spain, in consequence of his dreadful oppressions and persecutions (1572), Elizabeth warmly espoused their cause; and Philip, therefore, made extensive preparations to invade England, with the view to conquer it and restore it to the authority of the Roman pontiff. For this purpose he equipped an immense fleet, which was styled the "Invincible Armada," consisting of 150 ships, bearing 3,000 guns and 27,000 men. But this vast armament, as it sailed up the Channel, was attacked and partly destroyed by a much smaller fleet, under the command of Lord Howard as admiral, assisted by those renowned captains, Drake, Frobisher, and Hawkins. The Spanish admiral, therefore, finding it impossible to effect a landing on the coast, or to gain any advantages over the English fleet, attempted to return to Spain by sailing around Scotland; but, a storm arising, nearly all his vessels were wrecked off the Orkney Islands (1588).

Armada.

RALEIGH.

53. The year preceding this glorious event is memorable for the execution of the unfortunate Mary, Queen of Scots, at Fotheringay castle,* after an imprisonment of more than

hostility of Spain, endeavored to persuade the queen to disavow the enterprise and punish Drake; but she, in admiration of his valor, conferred on him the honor of knighthood, and participated in a banquet given on board of his ship at Deptford, a port near London, on the Thames river.

* Fotheringay, a parish in Northampton county, in the central part of England. The castle was razed to the ground after the accession of James I.

52. What led to a war with Philip? The "Invincible Armada"? By whom was it attacked? How destroyed?

53. What execution occurred the year before? Early history of Mary, Queen of Scots?

eighteen years. Mary, as has already been related (¶ 34), was sent to France, and became the wife of Francis II. She had been educated in the Catholic faith, and had imbibed a strong partiality for the doctrines and practices of that form of religion. The early death of her husband compelled her to return to Scotland (1561), where she assumed the throne, although she was much disliked by the Scots on account of her religion and gay manners.

Mary Stuart.

54. The Scottish "Reformers" were at this time in the ascendant, under the guidance of the celebrated John Knox, and had made even greater havoc of the religious establishments in that country than had occurred in England. From this zealot and his associates the young queen received every possible indignity, the Protestant preachers taking pride in insulting and vilifying her to her face, although they were treated by her with the most gracious condescension and respect, and although she had issued a proclamation enjoining all to submit to the established religion.*

John Knox.

MARY STUART.

55. A few years after her return to Scotland, she married her cousin, Henry Stuart, Lord Darnley (1565); but she lived very unhappily with him, on account of his misconduct, extravagance, and vicious excesses. Becoming jealous of her

* She was also an object of suspicion and dislike to Elizabeth and her ministers; for her religion made her a favorite with the Catholic party, and in youth and beauty she had greatly the advantage of the English queen.

54. After her return to Scotland, how was she treated? John Knox and the Scottish Reformers? Why was she suspected and disliked by Elizabeth?

55. What is said of her second marriage? Of its consequences? Of the murder of Rizzio? Of the death of Darnley?

secretary—one Rizzio (*reet'se-o*), an Italian—Darnley, accompanied by several of his friends, rushed one evening into her apartment, where she was engaged with her secretary and others; and the unfortunate favorite was seized and hurried into the antechamber, where he was dispatched with fifty-six wounds (1566). Mary, though at first horror-stricken at this crime, and indignant at the insult offered to herself, afterward professed to pardon it, and extorted from her weak and wicked husband the confession that a plot had been formed by himself and others against her. Some time after this, Darnley was attacked by illness, during which his house, a lonely, half-ruined mansion in Edinburgh, where he had been placed by the queen, was blown up by gunpowder, and he was thus killed.

Lord Darnley.

56. The suspicion that Mary was accessory to this crime seemed afterward to be confirmed by her marriage with the earl of Bothwell, a reckless and dissolute nobleman, who was generally believed to have been concerned in its perpetration (1567). This led to a confederation of the nobles, who, having taken the queen prisoner, compelled her to abdicate the throne in favor of her infant son James, and confined her in Lochleven castle.* She, however, escaped thence, and raised a small army, which was defeated by the regent, Murray; whereupon Mary fled into England, and threw herself upon the protection of Elizabeth; but, instead of the generous hospitality which she had anticipated, she found herself a captive for life (1568).

Bothwell.

57. Mary had given great offense to Elizabeth when in

*Lochleven, a small lake in the eastern part of Scotland, about twenty miles north of Edinburgh. It contains several islands, on one of which the remains of the castle still exist. The lake must be carefully distinguished from Loch Leven, in the western part of Scotland, near which is the famous valley of Glencoe.

56. Why was Mary suspected of the crime? What did it lead to? Escape and flight of Mary?

57. Why was Elizabeth offended at her? What party supported Mary? What led to her execution? How was it effected?

France, by assuming the title of queen of England, on the ground that the marriage of Henry VIII. with Anne Boleyn was unlawful, and hence that her daughter Elizabeth, being illegitimate, had no right to the throne. During Mary's life, the Catholic party in England favored these pretensions; and many conspiracies were formed by them to place her upon the throne. In the last of these, the object of which was to take the life of Elizabeth, Mary, notwithstanding her

COSTUMES. (*Time of Elizabeth.*)

repeated avowals of innocence, was pronounced guilty of being an accomplice, and sentenced to death (1586). Parliament urged her execution, but the queen appeared very reluctant to give her assent, and the French and Scotch ambassadors interceded earnestly in behalf of the unfortunate queen. Elizabeth, however, was at last induced to sign the death-warrant, and Mary was beheaded at Fotheringay (1587).* (*See Progressive Map No.* 5.)

* The execution of Mary, Queen of Scots, presents one of the most pathetic scenes in history. "She knelt down with great courage, and, still holding the crucifix in her hands, stretched out her neck to the executioner. She then said aloud, and with the most ardent feeling of confidence, 'My God, I have hoped in you; I commit myself to your hands.' . . . There

58. Queen Mary was one of the most beautiful and accomplished princesses of her age. Her manners were graceful and winning, and her conversation full of wit and sprightly intelligence. She was a charming singer, and could accompany herself on several instruments; and the poems which she has left attest a genius for that kind of composition. Her imprudence and want of self-control, and, it is to be feared, the absence of strong moral principles, brought upon her those great calamities which have shed a mournful interest upon her name. The signing of her death-warrant is, however, considered by some the greatest blot upon the fame of the virgin queen.

Character of Mary.

59. Elizabeth not only contended with Philip of Spain upon the ocean, but sent a force of auxiliary troops to Holland, under the earl of Leicester, a nobleman for whom she appears to have entertained a singular esteem and affection. He was, however, quite unsuccessful, possessing neither the courage nor capacity requisite for the duty assigned to him. In an attack upon Zut'phen,* he entirely failed, and the gallant and accomplished Sir Philip Sidney was mortally wounded in the battle (1586). Leicester, whose death occurred soon afterward (1588), was succeeded in the queen's affections by his stepson, Robert, earl

Leicester.

was a universal feeling of compassion at the sight of this lamentable misfortune, this heroic courage, this admirable sweetness. The executioner himself was moved, and aimed with an unsteady hand; the axe, instead of falling on the neck, struck the back of the head, and wounded her; yet she made no movement, nor uttered a complaint. It was only on repeating the blow that the executioner struck off her head, which he held up, saying, 'God save Queen Elizabeth!' 'Thus,' added Dr. Fletcher, 'may all her enemies perish.'"—Mignet's *History of Mary, Queen of Scots.*

* Now a noted manufacturing city of Holland, in the province of Gilderland, and about seventeen miles from Arnhem, the capital of the province, where Sidney died of the wounds received at Zutphen.

58. Character of Queen Mary? Signing of her death-warrant?

59. Whither was Leicester sent? The queen's regard for him? His conduct? Battle of Zutphen? Death of Sidney? Of Leicester? By whom was he succeeded in the queen's affections? Character of Essex?

of Essex, a young man of handsome appearance and considerable merit, but of a daring and reckless disposition.

60. During the religious wars in France, Elizabeth gave all the aid in her power to the cause of the Protestants; and when Henry IV. ascended the throne of France (1589), she sent him money and a force under Essex to assist him in subduing his enemies. She was, however, much displeased at his abjuring the Protestant religion and assuming that of the Catholics, and wrote him a letter reproaching him in angry terms for his apostasy; but from interested motives she still continued to assist him with supplies of men and money.

COSTUME. (*Time of Elizabeth.*)

61. An insurrection having broken out in Ireland, Essex was sent with a large army to subdue it; but having failed disgracefully in this expedition, and returned to England without the consent of the queen, he was arrested by her orders, and deprived by the council of all his public offices. He, however, expected a free pardon from the queen, but, not receiving it, attempted to raise an insurrection against her government. In this mad scheme he met with no success, but, with his accomplices, was seized and thrown into the Tower. Being arraigned for treason, he was found guilty; and the queen, though with great reluctance, having signed his death-warrant, he was beheaded (1601).

---

60. What aid did Elizabeth give to the Protestants? Why was she displeased with Henry IV.? How did she still assist him?

61. Why was Essex sent to Ireland? What was his conduct there? How was he punished by the queen? What was his subsequent conduct? What is said of his arrest, trial, and execution?

62. Elizabeth survived this event but a short time. The fate of this young nobleman, for whom she appears to have had a very deep affection, oppressed her mind with a settled melancholy.* For ten days previous to her death she lay upon the floor, supported by cushions, and gave way to her feelings of distress by sighs and groans. She seldom spoke, and persistently refused nourishment. Being solicited to nominate a successor, she replied that she would have a king to succeed her, referring to James of Scotland. In reply to the archbishop of Canterbury, who advised her to fix her thoughts upon God, she said that her mind did not in the least wander from Him. She soon after fell into a lethargy, and without a struggle expired (March 24th, 1603), in the forty-fifth year of her reign and the seventieth of her age.

Death of Elizabeth.

63. Elizabeth was endowed with remarkable talents for government, and commanded the respect not only of her own subjects but of foreign states. She was, however, more mindful of the present prosperity and happiness of her people than of permanently establishing their liberty. She was haughty and despotic, especially in the latter part of her reign; and, though in her religious principles and practices she appears to have inclined toward Catholicism, she persecuted Catholics and Puritans with equal

Her Character.

* It is said that the countess of Nottingham, who died about this time, had confessed that Essex had committed to her care a ring to be delivered to the queen, and that from enmity to him she had withheld it. This ring had been given to Essex by the queen with the promise that, whenever he should send it to her, it should not fail to remind her of their friendship, and awaken her tender regard for him. The queen, it is said, shook the dying countess, exclaiming, "God may forgive you, but I never can." Knight, however, says (*History of England*): "This story of the ring has been circumstantially told by Hume. We have not inserted a similar narrative in our text, believing that it is of too doubtful authenticity."

62. How was Elizabeth affected by the execution of Essex? Her behavior? What were her last words? What is said of her death?

63. What is said of Elizabeth's administration? Her character?

severity. Her private character was somewhat marked by insincerity and cruelty, and was too much wanting in the softer virtues of her sex to be highly commendable; while her personal vanity, with her petty jealousy of female competitors, has subjected her to considerable ridicule and contempt.

64. During this illustrious reign, flourished the poet Spenser, who wrote the "Faerie Queene;" the immortal poet and dramatist, William Shakspeare, whose works are the especial glory of English literature; and Francis Bacon, who commenced his splendid career as a philosopher, though he disgraced himself by his virulence in the prosecution of the unfortunate Essex, from whom he had received many favors and benefits. Sir Philip Sidney was also a prominent character in the literary world, being the author of a sort of pastoral romance styled "Arcadia," very much admired at that time. Ben Jonson, the dramatist and poet, was also one of the noted characters of Elizabeth's reign.

Literature.

Sidney.

SPENSER.

STATE OF SOCIETY UNDER THE TUDORS.

65. The proceedings of Parliament during this period show that the principles of civil and political freedom made but little progress. The Tudors were in general very vigorous princes, and ruled with a high hand. In all things, except in the voting of supplies of

Parliament.

64. What distinguished writers flourished during this reign? How did Bacon disgrace himself? What was Sidney's most celebrated work?

65. Progress of civil and political freedom? Parliament under the Tudors? Court of Star Chamber? Of High Commission?

money to the sovereign, the parliaments showed a remarkable spirit of submission to their will; and many practices were acquiesced in which violated the most sacred of the subjects' liberties. Of this character were the proceedings in the *Court of Star Chamber*, established or revived in the reign of Henry VII., and the *Court of High Commission*, instituted by Queen Elizabeth.

Star Chamber, etc.

THE STAR CHAMBER, WESTMINSTER, LONDON. (*From an old drawing.*)

Both were used as instruments of the most flagrant oppression, one for punishing political offenses, the other to compel religious conformity. (See note, page 228.)

66. The great change which during this period occurred in religious matters had for a time the effect to increase the influence of the monarch. Unlimited supremacy was conferred by Parliament; and during the reign of Elizabeth the utterance of seditious words against

Legislation.

66. Effect of the Reformation? Absolute power of the sovereign? Arbitrary and severe punishments inflicted? Difficulty in obtaining justice?

the queen was made a capital offense. A Puritan who had written a book against the government of bishops was, during the same reign, condemned to death; and another was executed on the charge of denying the "absolute power of the queen." No justice could be obtained by any one in opposition to the will of the court or its officers. If a tradesman sued a nobleman or member of the privy council for his just debt, he was liable to be thrust into prison, from which he could obtain release only by the relinquishment of a large part of his property.

67. The revenue of Queen Elizabeth has been estimated at half a million sterling. She caused the customs to be more carefully collected; and, in 1590, they amounted to fifty thousand pounds a year, having been raised to that sum from fourteen thousand. The supplies obtained from Parliament during her whole reign are said to have amounted to only three millions, so that she must have exercised very great economy to carry on such vast undertakings with so slender a revenue. Loans had been formerly very often obtained from the Dutch, particularly from the city of Antwerp, the per cent. paid being as high as ten or twelve; but Elizabeth established so good a credit in her own capital that the merchants of that city readily granted her loans, and thus rendered it unnecessary to have recourse to foreigners.

Revenue.

68. Commerce and navigation made immense progress during the sixteenth century. The voyage of Columbus had given a vast impulse to maritime adventure, which was still further stimulated by the rich traffic to which it gave rise. Magellan's discovery of a southwest passage to the East, led to many

Commerce and Navigation.

67. Revenue of Queen Elizabeth? The customs? Supplies from Parliament? Loans? Elizabeth's economy and credit?

68. Commerce and navigation? How stimulated? Frobisher, Davis, and Drake? Russian trade? By what discovery was it affected?

attempts during this period to discover one in the northwest. Martin Frobisher made three fruitless voyages with this object; and Davis, not discouraged by this failure, made other attempts, in one of which he discovered the strait that bears his name. The discovery of a passage to Archangel, which was made during the reign of Edward VI., brought England into close communication with Russia; but active commerce with that country did not begin until 1569. Elizabeth obtained from the Czar a patent by which the English were to have the whole trade of the empire.* To these enterprises should be added the maritime achievements of Sir Francis Drake, already referred to. (Page 200, ¶ 51.)

SIR FRANCIS DRAKE.

69. Encouraged by privileges so extensive, the English ventured further into that extensive region than any Europeans had previously done. They transported their goods a long distance up the Dwina in boats made of the trunks of

* "In the year 1553, the English sent forth three ships for the discovery of a northeastern passage to Cathay, or China. Two of these were wrecked; the third, commanded by Richard Chancellor, proceeded to 'an unknown part of the world,' and reached a place where there was 'no night at all, but a continual light and brightness of the sun shining clearly upon the huge and mighty sea.' At length they came to a bay, and the mouth of the Dwina, and report having announced them to the terrified natives as men of 'a strange nation, of singular gentleness and courtesy,' Chancellor was able to travel into the interior. He found that the country was called Russia, or Muscovy, and that Ivan Vassilievitch II. 'ruled and governed far and wide.' This was 'the discovery of Russia,' of which the fame spread through Spain the belief 'of the discovery of New Indies,' and in England gave immediate impulse to mercantile adventure." —Bancroft's *Studies in History*.

69. Eastern trade—how carried on? Turkish trade? The Hanse Towns?

trees, and then conveying their commodities overland to the Volga, carried them down that river to Astrachan, whence they shipped them across the Caspian Sea, and distributed them through Persia and other eastern countries. Trade was also for the first time carried on with Turkey (1583). These successes were the occasion of great jealousy on the part of the Hanse Towns, which obtained an edict from the German emperor prohibiting the English from carrying on trade in any part of the empire. Elizabeth, in retaliation, seized and confiscated sixty of their ships which had been taken in the river Tagus with contraband goods of the Spaniards.

Naval Power.

70. The naval power of England commenced in the reign of Henry VII.; but ship-building was evidently not active, since his successor was obliged to hire vessels from Hamburg, Lubeck, Genoa, Venice, and other great commercial towns. Under the vigorous sway of the Virgin Queen a better state of things was introduced; and in 1582, the number of seamen in England was registered at over fourteen thousand, and the number of vessels amounted to above twelve hundred. The navy, at the queen's death, was considered large; but the whole number of guns was less than eight hundred. The military force of the nation at the time of the threatened attack by the Spanish Armada was set down at about two hundred thousand men able to bear arms.

Manufacturing Industry.

71. Manufacturing industry, at the commencement of Elizabeth's reign, had made but little progress, foreign wares of all kinds enjoying the preference over those made at home. The persecutions in France and the Netherlands, however, drove a large number of skilled artisans into England, who laid the foundation of the manufacturing prosperity afterward attained. It is said

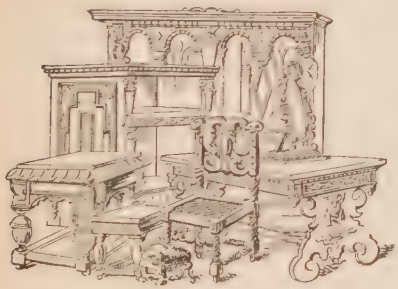
70. Naval power of England? Ship-building? Number of English seamen and vessels? English navy? Military force?

71. Manufactures? Cloth manufacture? Pins?

that Queen Elizabeth was presented, in the third year of her reign, with a pair of silk stockings, with which she was so much pleased that she never wore cloth hose afterward. The cloth manufacture was so extensive, that as many as two hundred thousand pieces were said to be exported annually from England. The making of pins commenced during Elizabeth's reign. Before that time the ladies used to fasten their dresses with clasps, small skewers of gold, silver, or brass, or hooks and eyes. Industry and regular employment were enforced by severe laws during the reign of Elizabeth.*

72. Agriculture was carried on with more success, although vast tracts of land were still devoted to the pasturage of sheep. The introduction of clover, hops, and various vegetables, together with apricots, currants, gooseberries, cherries, and other fruits, changed somewhat the character of horticulture. Pleasure gardens were laid out with more taste, and were ornamented with terraces, grottoes, statuary, fountains, etc. The condition of the peasantry was considerably improved. Their wattled huts gave place, by degrees, to

Agriculture.



FURNITURE OF THE SIXTEENTH CENTURY.

*Several acts were passed against "vagabonds." By that of 1536, it was enacted that a "vagabond," if out of employment, and preferring to be idle, might be demanded for work by any master of the craft to which he belonged and be compelled to work. If caught begging, being neither aged nor infirm, he was whipped at the cart's tail for the first offense, for the second had his ear slit or bored through with a hot iron, and for the third suffered death as a felon.

72. Agriculture? Horticulture? Pleasure gardens? Condition of the peasantry? What is said of wheaten bread? Potatoes? Tobacco?

comfortable houses, built of stone or brick, and glass windows came into general use. Wheaten bread was eaten more generally, although rye and barley constituted the principal food of the poorer classes. Potatoes were introduced from South America by Raleigh, who also brought tobacco from the West Indies, and set the example of using it in England.

73. The nobility still supported, to some extent, their ancient magnificence in hospitality, and in the number of their servants and retainers. The earl of Leicester gave the queen an entertainment at his famous castle at Kenilworth, in which the most astonishing profusion was displayed. Among other particulars, it is said that as many as three hundred and sixty-five hogsheads of beer were consumed at it. Lord Burleigh is said to have kept a hundred servants; and his silver plate, it is remarked by a writer of the period, "amounted to only fourteen or fifteen thousand pounds in weight." Great luxury in apparel was also indulged in, the queen taking the lead; who, though she issued a proclamation to restrain this species of extravagance, at her death left a wardrobe of 3,000 dresses.

Luxury.

BACON.

74. The revival of learning, particularly the study of the classics, constituted a remarkable feature of this period. Erasmus, a native of Holland, was professor of Greek in the university of Oxford, and did much toward the attainment of this result. Henry VIII., Mary,

Learning.

73. Magnificence and hospitality of the nobles? Leicester's entertainment of the queen? Servants of Lord Burleigh? Luxury in apparel?

74. Revival of learning? Erasmus? Distinguished classical scholars? Ascham? Language of the period? The drama?

SHAKSPEARE.

Elizabeth, and Lady Jane Grey were all distinguished for their classical learning.* Roger Ascham has already been referred to as an eminent teacher of Latin and Greek. Middle English now gave place to the New or Modern English, which, with slight modifications, continues to be the language used. This was the language of Shakspeare and Bacon. In the first part of this period the drama consisted of short plays called "Interludes," of which the most successful writer was John Heywood, who lived at the court of Henry VIII. At the end

* As likewise was Mary, Queen of Scots, who had acquired a facility in the use of several languages. The Latin prayer which she composed a short time before her melancholy and tragic end has been much admired. Although in the mediæval style, the language is expressive :

O Domine Deus, speravi in te !
O Care mi Jesu, nunc libera me !
In dura catenâ, in misera pœnâ desidero te !
Languendo, gemendo, et genuflectendo,
Adoro, imploro, ut liberes me !

It has been thus rendered into English, following as closely the Latin as the English idiom permits :

My hopes, O Lord, have been in thee !
O Jesus ! Saviour ! set me free !
In anguish and pain—in this iron chain—I call on thee !
With many a groan, and bitter moan—and kneeling on this prison stone.
I adore thee—implore thee,—to set me free !

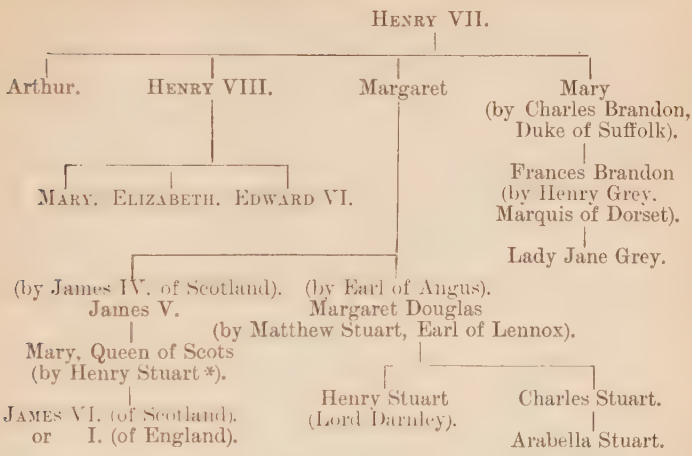
An old writer says : "It became fashionable in Elizabeth's reign to study Greek at court. The maids of honor indulged their ideas of sentimental affection in the sublime contemplations of Plato's 'Phædo'; and the queen, who understood Greek better than the canons of Windsor, and was certainly a much greater pedant than her successor, James I., translated Isocrates. But this passion for the Greek language soon ended where it began; nor do we find that it improved the national taste, or influenced the writings of the age of Elizabeth."

of the period and at the beginning of the next, the stage, under William Shakspeare and his contemporary dramatists and actors, was patronized by all classes; and the Blackfriars, Globe, and Fortune theaters were highly prosperous. Of the first two of these Shakspeare was part proprietor, and in them his immortal plays were first performed.

CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

1485. Henry VII. Reigned 24 years.
1492. Perkin Warbeck personates the duke of York.
1499. Perkin Warbeck and the earl of Warwick executed.
1509. Henry VIII. Reigned 38 years.
1513. Battle of Flodden Field, and Battle of the Spurs.
1520. Interview between Henry VIII. and Francis I.
1530. Death of Cardinal Wolsey.
1533. Marriage of Henry VIII. with Anne Boleyn.
1534. Papal power abolished in England.
1535. Execution of Bishop Fisher and Sir Thomas More.
1537. Birth of Edward VI. and death of Jane Seymour.
1542. Execution of Catharine Howard. Birth of Mary, Queen of Scots.
1547. Execution of the earl of Surrey. Death of Henry VIII.
" Edward VI. Reigned 6 years.
1549. Lord Seymour beheaded. Somerset, the Protector, deposed.
1552. Somerset beheaded.
1553. Mary. Reigned 5 years.
" Execution of the duke of Northumberland.
1554. Wyatt's rebellion. Execution of Lady Jane Grey.
1555. Burning of Hooper, Ridley, and Latimer.
1556. Burning of Archbishop Cranmer.
1558. Calais taken by the French. Death of Queen Mary.
" Elizabeth. Reigned 44 years.
1561. Return of Mary, Queen of Scots, from France.
1568. Mary's flight into England.
1586. Battle of Zutphen. Death of Sir Philip Sidney.
1587. Mary, Queen of Scots executed.
1588. Defeat of the Spanish Armada.
1601. Conspiracy and execution of the earl of Essex.
1603. Death of Elizabeth.

GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE TUDOR FAMILY.



TOPICAL REVIEW.

NARRATIVE.

When did the event occur?
What led to it?
What resulted from it?

	PAGE
The Simnel plot	171, 172
The Warbeck conspiracy	173, 174, 175
Execution of Sir William Stanley	173
Execution of Warwick	174
The Cabots' expedition	175
Building of the "Great Harry"	175
Marriage of Henry VIII.	176
Alliance against Louis XII	176
Invasion of France	176
Battle of the Spurs	176
Battle of Flodden Field	177 *n*
Alliance with Francis I	178
"Field of the Cloth of Gold"	178
Henry, "Defender of the Faith"	179
Death of Pope Leo X.	179
Battle of Pavia	180
Divorce of Catharine	181, 183
Marriage of Anne Boleyn	181, 183
Fall of Wolsey	182
The "English Reformation"	183, 184
Suppression of the monasteries	185
Execution of Sir Thomas More	184
Execution of Anne Boleyn	184, 185
The "Pilgrimage of Grace"	185
Other marriages of Henry VIII.	185, 186, 187
Execution of Thomas Cromwell	186
War with Scotland	186, 187
Religious persecution	187

* The name *Stuart* (originally *Stewart*) was first assumed by Mary, Queen of Scots. It was derived from the office of steward of the royal household, held in hereditary succession for several generations by the same family, on some of whose members the regency had been conferred, until Robert the Stewart, in 1371, was declared king.

PAGE

Execution of Henry Howard..... 187
Translation of the Bible..... 188
Somerset's invasion of Scotland 190
Fall of Somerset 190, 191
Insurrection on account of religion... 191
Reign of Edward VI.....189–192 *n*
Accession of Queen Mary. 194
Marriage of the queen 194
Execution of Lady Jane Grey..... 194
Rebellion under Wyatt..... 194
Restoration of England to the Roman see 195
Persecution of the Protestants 195, 196
Execution of Cranmer..... 196
Loss of Calais 197
Commercial treaty with Russia..... 197
Act of Supremacy passed 198
Act of Uniformity..... 198
Rise of the Puritans..... 199, 200
Settlement of Virginia..... 200
Destruction of the Armada 201
Execution of Mary Stuart..... 201
Death of Sir Philip Sidney..... 205
Execution of Essex..... 206
Death of Queen Elizabeth 207
Passage to Archangel discovered..... 211

BIOGRAPHICAL.

Who were they?
With what events connected?
Other incidents of their lives?

Henry Tudor..... 171
Earl of Warwick.....171, 174
Lambert Simnel.....171, 172
Perkin Warbeck 173, 174
Catharine of Aragon.....176, 180, 183
Thomas Wolsey 177, 178, 179, 182
Anne Boleyn 180, 182, 184, 185
Sir Thomas More..... ... 182, 184
Thomas Cranmer.... 183, 189, 191, 194, 196
Bishop Fisher 184
Jane Seymour..... 185
Anne of Cleves..... 186
Catharine Howard..... 186
Mary, Queen of Scots ..186, 190, 201, 202, 203, 204, 205
Catharine Parr..... 187

PAGE

Anne Ascue..... 187
Henry Howard, earl of Surrey..... 187
Sir Thomas Wyatt 188, 194
Edward VI..... ..189, 192
Bishop Gardiner.....189, 194, 195
Bishop Bonner..... ... .194, 195
Edward Seymour, duke of Somerset, 189, 190, 191
Lord Seymour .....190 *n*
Bishop Ridley.....191, 196
Duke of Northumberland.....191, 192, 194
Lord Guilford Dudley.....192, 194
Lady Jane Grey .....192, 193, 194, 195 *n*
Reign of Mary.....193, 197 *n*
Roger Ascham .....193 *n*, 215
Cardinal Pole 195, 197
John Rogers..... 195
Bishop Hooper..... 196
Sir William Cecil, Lord Burleigh..198, 199
Sir Walter Raleigh..... 200
Sir Francis Drake... .....200, 211
Earl of Leicester..... 205
Sir Philip Sidney.....205, 208
Robert, earl of Essex.....205, 206
Spenser (Edmund), poet..... 208
William Shakspeare 208, 215, 216
Francis Bacon.....208, 215
Martin Frobisher..... 211
John Heywood..... 215

GEOGRAPHICAL.

Where situated?
With what events connected?

Stoke..... 172
Bristol..... 175
Calais.....176, 196, 197
Flodden 177
Pavia 180
Hampton..... 182
Solway Moss. 186
Cleves..... 186
Edinburgh 190
St. Quentin 197
Fotheringay..... 201
Lochleven.....203, 204
Zutphen..... 205

CENTRAL AND SOUTHERN EUROPE
NORTH SEA
BALTIC SEA
ATLANTIC OCEAN
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
BLACK SEA
IRELAND
Dublin
Liverpool
Cork
ENGLAND
Bristol
Portsmouth
LONDON
AMSTERDAM
HOLLAND
BELGIUM
BRUSSELS
Hamburg
Lubeck
Hanover
Cologne
Leipsic
Jena
Frankfort
Waterloo
Amiens
PARIS
Sedan
Versailles
Melun
Metz
Nantes
Orleans
Rochelle
FRANCE
SWITZERLAND
Lyons
Bordeaux
Toulouse
Corunna
Oporto
Salamanca
Vittoria
Cuidad Rodrigo
MADRID
Talavera
Saragossa
Vimeira
LISBON
PORTUGAL
Tagus R.
Badajos
SPAIN
Barcelona
Valencia
Cordova
Alicante
Gibraltar
Malaga
C. St. Vincent
Str. of Gibraltar
Balearic Is.
CORSICA
SARDINIA
Genoa
Milan
Pavia
Marengo
Turin
Alessandria
Ulm
Augsburg
Ratisbon
Strasburg
Ratisbon
Passau
VIENNA
Presburg
Wagram
Austerlitz
Dresden
Prague
Leipsic
Lutzen
Berlin
Stralsund
Konigsberg
Eylau
Friedland
Tilsit
SWEDEN
COPENHAGEN
DENMARK
GERMANY
WARSAW
POLAND
Cracow
Vistula R.
Niemen R.
Wilna
Beresina
Smolensk
Borodino
MOSCOW
RUSSIA
Kiev
Pultava
Dnieper R.
Dniester R.
Pruth R.
Bessarabia
Bender
Danube R.
ROMANIA
Belgrade
BOSNIA
SERVIA
Widin
Nissa
Plevna
BULGARIA
Nicopolis
Sillistria
Varna
Shumla
CONSTANTINOPLE
Adrianople
TURKEY
Durazzo
Salonika
Gallipoli
Bruza
Trebizond
Erzerum
Euphrates R.
Tigris R.
Aleppo
Smyrna
ATHENS
Missolonghi
Navarino
GREECE
CANDIA
CYPRUS
Damascus
Acre
Jaffa
Jerusalem
Damietta
Alexandria
Aboukir
Nile R.
EGYPT
CAIRO
The Pyramids
Sea of Azof
CRIMEA
Sebastopol
CAUCASUS MTS.
Kuban R.
Don R.
MOROCCO
ALGERIA
TUNIS
TRIPOLI
ALGIERS
TUNIS
MALTA
Palermo
SICILY
Naples
ROME
Florence
Venice
Trieste
Comp Formio
Ravenna
Genoa
Elba
Spalatro
AFRICA
Longitude 15 East from London
20
25
30
35
45
50
40
30
35
45

No. 6.

SECTION II.

THE STUART FAMILY.

Extending from the Accession of James I. (1603) *to that of George I.* (1714).

1. James I., the king of Scotland, succeeded without any opposition to the throne left vacant by the death of Elizabeth. He was thirty-six years of age, had received a good education under the celebrated George Buchanan,* but was very vain of his learning, and took every opportunity to make a display of it. Wanting in judgment and good sense, and totally deficient in refinement of manners, he was constantly an object of ridicule or contempt. He had also unfortunately imbibed the notion that a king was divinely vested with absolute power; and hence his conduct was often tyrannical in the extreme, being utterly at variance with those principles of liberty which the English people had long viewed as their most valuable birthright.

James I., 1603–'25.

2. Scarcely had James commenced to reign, when a plot was formed to depose him, and place his cousin, Arabella Stuart, on the throne. The leaders of the conspiracy—among whom were Lord Cobham, Lord Grey (a Puritan), and others—were tried and convicted, and some were exe-

* George Buchanan, born in Scotland in 1506, was educated in Paris, and became famous for his classical scholarship and Latin poetry. In 1562 he was appointed tutor to Mary, Queen of Scots, and in 1570 preceptor to her son James. He died in Edinburgh in 1582.

1. What was the age of James I. when he ascended the throne? His character? What caused him to be tyrannical?

2. What plot was formed? Who were its leaders? Who was also implicated? How was Raleigh convicted? Was he punished? Who were pardoned?

cuted. Sir Walter Raleigh was also charged with being concerned in the plot; and the jury, influenced by the bitter invectives of Sir Edward Coke, the attorney-general, found him guilty, though it was generally admitted that the proof was insufficient to convict him. He was afterward reprieved by the king, though still kept a prisoner, and Cobham and Grey were pardoned after they had laid their heads upon the block, but were condemned to imprisonment in the Tower (1603).

JAMES I.
(*From a portrait by Vandyke, after a miniature by Hilyard*, 1617.)

3. Soon after this, a plot was arranged by some of the Catholic party, disappointed in not receiving the religious privileges which they had expected on the accession of James. The object of it was to overturn the government by the destruction of the king and both houses of parliament. For this purpose a vault beneath the House of Lords was hired, and thirty-six barrels of gunpowder were stored therein, which, on the opening of parliament, were to be fired by one Guy Fawkes, an officer in the Spanish service, brought to England to perpetrate this act. This conspiracy, styled the "Gunpowder Plot," was discovered just on the eve of its execution (1605); and Guy Fawkes, with some of his fellow-conspirators, was executed.

Guy Fawkes.

4. During the previous reign, unsuccessful attempts had

3. What other plot was formed? What means were adopted to carry it out? How was it discovered?

4. What attempts at colonization were made? What companies were organized? What settlement was effected? Its condition under Delaware? How did Virginia become a royal province? What other important events occurred?

been made by Raleigh to plant a colony in the region to which the queen had given the name of Virginia. King James, in the early part of his reign, granted charters to two companies—the London, or South Virginia Company, and the Plymouth, or North Virginia Company. Under the former of these, the first permanent settlement was made at Jamestown (1607); and under its first governor, Lord Delaware, it attained a condition of considerable prosperity. By an arbitrary act of the king, the

Virginia.

COSTUMES OF THE TIME OF JAMES I.

company was afterward dissolved, and Virginia made a royal province (1624). The East India Company, established by Queen Elizabeth (1600), was rechartered by James for an unlimited period (1609); and a short time afterward the first English factory was established at Surat (1612).

East India Company.

5. During this period, Sir Walter Raleigh, who had originated many of these enterprises, was enduring the miseries

5. What led to the execution of Sir Walter Raleigh? Why does it reflect disgrace upon James?

of a hopeless imprisonment, the long and tedious hours of which he had relieved by the composition of his great work, the "History of the World." Being released in order that he might point out a gold mine which he asserted to exist in Guiana (*ghe-ah'nah*), and having failed in the expedition, he was, on his return, beheaded in pursuance of the sentence previously pronounced upon him (1618).* This act reflects a lasting disgrace upon James, who, it was generally believed, sacrificed this illustrious man to appease Spain, incensed by the attack which Raleigh had made upon some of her settlements in South America.

Death of Raleigh.

ROBERT CARR, EARL OF SOMERSET, AND HIS COUNTESS. (*From a rare contemporary print.*)

6. One of the worst characteristics of King James was his proneness to attach himself to unworthy favorites, the first of whom was Robert Carr, a young Scotchman, on whom the king for several years lavished the most profuse favors, finally bestowing upon him the title of the earl of Somerset (1612). The favorite's fall occurred a short time afterward; for being concerned, with his wife,

Carr.

* Raleigh mounted the scaffold with that courage which never deserted him. When he had taken off his gown and doublet, he asked the executioner to let him see the ax. He poised it, and running his thumb along the edge, said, with a smile, 'This is a sharp medicine, but it will cure all diseases.' The executioner was going to blindfold him, but he refused to let him, saying, 'Think you I fear the shadow of the ax, when I fear not the ax itself?' He gave the signal by stretching out his hands, and his head was struck off at two blows."—Keightley's *History of England.*

6. What was one of the king's worst characteristics? What is said of Robert Carr? What led to his fall? What is said of George Villiers?

previously countess of Essex, in the murder of Sir Thomas Overbury in the Tower, the guilty pair were tried and convicted, but were pardoned by the king, and afterward lived in total obscurity. James had previously transferred his favors to a young man named George Villiers (*vil'yerz*), of good family, engaging manners, and fine personal appearance (1615). The infatuation of the monarch in regard to this new minion was unbounded; and, in the course of a few years, he was created Viscount Villiers, subsequently earl and marquis, and finally duke of Buckingham. He soon gained an infamous notoriety by his arrogance and profligacy.

7. James, although of a pusillanimous disposition, was very persistent in upholding the royal prerogative. His arbitrary acts and principles, however, met with decided opposition from the parliament of 1621, who declared their privileges to be the ancient and undoubted birthright of the English people, which bold declaration so incensed the king that he sent for the journals of the Commons and tore the record out with his own hands. The same parliament impeached the celebrated Lord Bacon, Viscount St. Albans and Chancellor. His prodigality and fondness for ostentation and luxury had plunged him into great expenses, to defray which he had taken bribes from suitors in his court. He confessed his guilt, and was sentenced to pay a fine of £40,000, to dismissal from all his offices, and imprisonment in the Tower. In consideration of his many merits, the king released him from prison, and remitted the fine. He survived his disgrace five years, during which he prosecuted those studies in philosophy and science from which he obtained so splendid and enduring a fame.

Fall of Bacon.

8. James, who by his reckless extravagance, was always in want of money, was anxious to bring about a marriage

7. How was James opposed by the parliament of 1621? What was done by the king? Who was impeached? What is said of Lord Bacon?

8. What was the king anxious to do? Why? What project was undertaken? What visit was made, and who was seen by Charles?

between his son Charles and the Infanta of Spain, expecting that a large dowry would be paid with her. To this the nation was much opposed, on account of the religion of the princess; but it was favored by the duke of Buckingham. The latter conceived the romantic project of a journey to Spain by Prince Charles and himself in disguise, so that the former might pay his addresses in person to the princess. To this the king reluctantly consented, fearing for the safety of the Prince of Wales, whom he used to call "Baby Charles." On their way they visited the French court, where Charles first saw the French princess Henrietta Maria, whom he subsequently married.

9. The king of Spain treated his visitors with great respect; but the levity, insolence, and extravagant behavior of Buckingham disgusted everybody at the Spanish court, so that, finding himself an object of great dislike, he determined to prevent the match, and, on returning to England, it was publicly renounced, greatly to the joy of the people. Buckingham, to clear himself from censure, made a false statement to Parliament, accusing the Spanish court of insincerity; and to this the young prince, equally untruthful, gave his assent.

Buckingham.

10. A treaty was soon afterward made with France, one of the terms of which was the marriage of Charles to Henrietta Maria. Before it was completed, however, King James was suddenly seized with illness, and expired in the fifty-ninth year of his age, after a reign of twenty-two years (1625).*

* "James, though an able man, was a weak monarch; his quickness of apprehension and soundness of judgment were marred by his credulity in partialities, his childish fears and habit of vacillation. Eminently qualified to advise as a councilor, he wanted the spirit and resolution to act as a sovereign. His discourse teemed with maxims of political wisdom; his conduct frequently bore the impress of political imbecility. If, in the language of his

9. What was Buckingham's conduct in Spain? How did he screen himself from censure? What was the conduct of Prince Charles?

10. What treaty was afterward made? When did the king die? What important event is referred to? How was the translation executed? When was it published?

One of the most important events of this period was a new translation of the Bible. It was executed under the patronage of the king, and by a number of learned men designated by him. It was published in 1611; and having superseded other versions, continues to be the *English Bible* in general use among all English Protestants. It is usually called "King James's Bible."

MUSKETEER AND PIKEMAN, TIME OF JAMES I.

11. The Puritans—so called from their strict principles and austerity of life—greatly increased in numbers and influence during this reign. Their public preachings were directed against the dissoluteness, levity, and luxury of the times, and particularly inculcated a more serious observance of the Sabbath, which had previously been a day of pleasure and pastime. Some of them, who had become disgusted with the king's high-handed measures against those who refused to conform to the established church, emigrated to Holland, and afterward to New England, where they made a settlement at a place which they called Plymouth (1620).

Puritans.

12. Charles I., the second son of James, succeeded that monarch, his eldest son, Henry,* having died some years

flatterers, he was the British Solomon, in the opinion of less interested observers, he merited the appellation given him by the duke of Sully, that of "*the wisest fool in Europe.*"—Lingard's *History of England.*

*It was for this young prince that Raleigh composed his "History of the World." He was amiable, intelligent, and well-disposed; and his death was greatly lamented.

11. What is said of the Puritans? Whither did some of them emigrate?

12. Who succeeded James I.? Whom did Charles marry? What led to a war with Spain? What difficulty with Parliament broke out? Who were prominent leaders among the Commons?

previously. Shortly after his accession Charles completed his marriage with Henrietta Maria, whom he had previously espoused by proxy in France, and who was escorted to England by the duke of Buckingham. The conduct of Charles toward the Infanta of Spain had greatly incensed the Spanish monarch, and war had been declared. To prosecute this war the king summoned a parliament and asked for a vote of supplies. This the Commons, who were determined to assert their privileges, under the leadership of many distinguished men, among whom were Sir Edward Coke, Sir Thomas Wentworth, and Sir John Eliot, refused to grant, unless Charles would relinquish some of the prerogatives which had been exercised by his father, and which he still claimed as his hereditary right. Charles, therefore, dissolved the Parliament, and proceeded to levy money by his own authority (1625).

Charles I., 1625-'49.

CHARLES I.

13. These forced loans, called *tonnage and poundage* * and *ship-money*,† gave great offense to the people, whose discontent was still further increased by the conduct of Buckingham, through whose influence a war was undertaken against France, and an expedition sent to Rochelle (*ro-shel'*) to aid the Huguenots, then assailed by

Forced Loans.

* *Tonnage and poundage* were duties on imported merchandise which it had been customary to allow the king to levy since the reign of Edward III. The parliament of 1625 refused, however, to grant this privilege to the king for a longer period than one year.

† *Ship-money* was an arbitrary tax levied on the seaports for the equipment of a fleet. Charles extended it over the whole kingdom.

13. What gave offense to the people? What unfortunate expedition took place?

Richelieu (*reesh'ch-lu*). Buckingham himself assumed the command, but managed the affair so badly that nothing was accomplished; and in a few months he returned to England, having lost the greater part of his forces, and was universally reprobated for his rashness and folly (1627).

14. In a parliament called a few months afterward, Charles met with still more determined opposition, although many of the former members had been made to suffer for their boldness by imprisonment and other oppressive measures of the court. Charles attempted intimidation, but the spirit of liberty was not to be thus crushed. In a bill called the *Petition of Right** the Commons emphatically asserted the privileges which had been conferred upon them by Magna Charta and other ancient statutes; and to this bill the king was forced to give his assent (1628).

Petition of Right.

CHARLES I. AND ARMOR-BEARER.

15. Soon after this, one cause of popular discontent was removed by the assassination of the duke of Buckingham at Portsmouth, whither he had gone to superintend the preparations for a second expedition against France. The murderer, one Felton, who had served under the duke as lieutenant, but had failed in his application for promotion, was immediately apprehended, and soon afterward was executed. The command of the French expe-

Buckingham Assassinated.

* The Petition of Right was an emphatic statement of the privileges of the people as conferred by previous enactments. It is regarded as the *second great charter* of English liberty.

14. What was done in the next parliament? What was the Petition of Right?

15. How and by whom was Buckingham assassinated? Who received command of the French expedition? What was the result? How is Rochelle situated? (See map, page 74.)

dition was conferred on the earl of Lindsay; but it reached Rochelle too late to afford any assistance to the Huguenots, who were obliged to surrender the town in sight of the English admiral (1628).

16. Another session of Parliament having taken place (1629), and the members* still proving refractory, the king dissolved it, and determined to rule without a parliament, continuing the illegal exactions which had already made him so unpopular. He also, principally by means of the *Star Chamber*,† attempted to punish such of the members of Parliament as had made themselves particularly obnoxious to him. Some of them were fined for what was called their seditious language and behavior, and, refusing to pay the fines, were imprisoned. The death of Sir John Eliot in prison greatly increased the popular indignation, all regarding him as a martyr to the cause of English liberty.

Star Chamber.

17. Charles, however, adopted the policy of choosing some of his ministers from among the popular leaders, one

* Among these was Oliver Cromwell, who, on this his first appearance in Parliament, attracted considerable notice by the plainness of his dress, his clownish manners, and his intense zeal in favor of the Puritans. He was the son of Robert Cromwell, and was born at Huntingdon, April 25, 1599. At the age of seventeen he was sent to the University of Cambridge, but remained there only a short time. He afterward settled at Huntingdon, and carried on the business of a brewer, but on receiving a handsome legacy he abandoned it.

† The Court of Star Chamber was of very ancient origin, and derived its name from the chamber of the king's palace at Westminster in which it used to hold its sessions, the ceiling of this apartment being decorated with stars. It had very extensive powers, both civil and criminal, and could adjudge cases without the intervention of a jury. Hence it became a formidable instrument of tyranny. It was abolished in 1641. (See page 209.)

16. What resolve did Charles adopt, and why? How did he punish the refractory members? Who died in prison? Effect of this?

17. What policy was adopted by Charles? Who became earl of Strafford? Effect of receiving the royal favors? The Puritans? Sunday laws? To whom offensive? Why?

of whom, Sir Thomas Wentworth, was created earl of Strafford, and soon became the principal minister of the king. All who accepted any of these royal favors were viewed as traitors by the popular party, and pursued with the bitterest hatred, more especially by the Puritan leaders, toward whom Charles, under the influence of his queen, pursued a course of studied hostility. He renewed the edict of his father, allowing sports and recreations on Sunday, and ordered the proclamation to be read by the clergy after divine service, punishing all such as refused obedience. This was a cause of great scandal to the austere Puritans, who were very rigid in the observance of the Sabbath, and preached against the popular pastimes—plays, dancing, May festivals, etc.—common at this time.

18. Under the influence of Archbishop Laud, the liturgy was altered, and the ritual increased by the addition of many of the ceremonial observances of the Church of Rome; and this was also a cause of great displeasure to the Puritans as well as to the Protestants in general. Many of the former, chiefly of the sect styled *Independents*, to avoid a conformity with the established church, which the laws required, emigrated to New England and founded Massachusetts and other colonies in that country. Charles also attempted to impose this liturgy upon the Scottish people; but on the first attempt to read it in Edinburgh, a tumult arose among the people, during which the bishop had a stool thrown at him, and on leaving the church narrowly escaped from the enraged populace (1637).

Liturgy.

19. The king insisting upon obedience, and issuing a proclamation to enforce it, an insurrection ensued; and the famous *Covenant* was formed and signed, according to which the Scottish people bound themselves to

Covenant.

18. What other measures were adopted? What was the effect? What was the conduct of the Scots?

19. Signing of the "Covenant"? What was it? How was war brought on?

unite for their mutual defense, and to resist all religious innovations (1638). With his accustomed weakness and insincerity, Charles first attempted partial concessions; but, these proving ineffectual, war ensued, Richelieu, who was then at the head of the French government, fomenting the animosities of the Scots, in revenge for the previous interference of Charles in the affairs of France.

War.

20. The advantages were on the side of the Covenanters, and Charles, to obtain supplies, was obliged to have recourse to that parliament which he had failed to summon during more than eleven years. The same spirit of opposition being manifested, he dissolved it after a session of three weeks (May, 1640); and, having resorted to the same illegal expedients as before to raise money, he marched with a considerable army against the Covenanters. The latter invaded England, and, after defeating a detachment of the royal forces at the Tyne River, took possession of Newcastle. (*See Map* 5.)

21. This compelled the king to call a new parliament; but the elections resulted in favor of the popular party, and on the assembling of this body (November 3, 1640), memorable as the "Long Parliament," Charles found his authority confronted with the same spirit of sturdy independence and opposition which he had so often experienced. The first act of the Commons was to impeach the earl of Strafford, so odious to them on account of his desertion of their cause, and as the ready instrument of the king's most obnoxious measures. Archbishop Laud was also impeached, and both were taken into custody to await their trial.

Parliament.

Strafford.

22. That of Strafford lasted thirteen days; and such were

20. What led to the calling of the Parliament? The result? Subsequent events?

21. What was next done by the king? What was this parliament called? What were its measures? Who were impeached?

22. What is said of the trial of Strafford? What expedient was adopted? What induced Charles to give his assent to Strafford's execution?

the eloquence and ability which he displayed in his defense, that his enemies, despairing of his conviction by the House of Lords, abandoned the impeachment, and resorted to the expedient of a *bill of attainder.** This they carried through the House of Commons with but few dissenting voices, and the popular excitement was so great that the Peers also were induced to pass it, but by a small vote (May 7, 1641). The king at first refused to give his assent; but the loud clamors and measures of the populace made him irresolute, and after the earl had written to him, generously requesting that he would not allow his personal regard for him to weigh against the wishes of his subjects, and stating that he was willing to be a sacrifice for the removal of the present troubles, Charles weakly and ungratefully assented to the bill.

23. When informed of the royal assent, Strafford started up and exclaimed in the words of Scripture, "Put not your trust in princes, nor in the sons of men!" In three days he was brought to the block, passing to which he stopped under the window of Laud's prison to receive his blessing. The prelate raised his hand to pronounce it; but grief choked his utterance, and he fell senseless on the floor. Strafford acted on the scaffold with great dignity and composure. His execution took place in the presence of a vast multitude, who subsequently expressed

Strafford's Death.

* By a bill of attainder, a person is pronounced guilty by act of Parliament, which is passed as other laws with the consent of King, Lords, and Commons. In an impeachment, the Commons are only the accusers, and the Peers are the judges. Such bills were frequently resorted to in the reign of Henry VIII., to convict persons who could not have been proved guilty by the ordinary process of the courts. The following is the entry on the journals in regard to Strafford's case: "April 19, 1641. Resolved upon question, that the endeavor of Thomas, earl of Strafford, to subvert the ancient fundamental laws of the realms of England and Ireland, and to introduce an arbitrary tyrannical government against law, is *high treason*."

23. What was Strafford's behavior? His exclamation? What is said of his execution? Of his character? Of Charles's conduct toward him?

their joy by illuminations and bonfires (May 12, 1641). Although convicted by a most arbitrary and unjust measure, he was without doubt an enemy to his country's liberty; but Charles, who most cowardly deserted his friend, was afterward convinced of the weakness of his conduct, and deeply repented of it.

24. Meanwhile, Parliament continued its vigorous measures for protection and reform. A bill was passed that it should not be adjourned, prorogued, or dissolved without its own consent; the Star Chamber was abolished, and the jurisdiction of the king's council abridged. These proceedings, together with the success of the Covenanters in Scotland, excited a spirit of opposition in Ireland against the English Parliament, which, through its intense hostility to the Roman Catholic worship, was in that country an object of fear and suspicion. Commissioners were sent to the king to demand religious toleration; and Charles, feeling it to be for his interest to conciliate them, gave them a favorable reception. The Irish, however, rose in insurrection; and the English settlers were massacred by thousands with every circumstance of barbarity. The ancient English planters, called the "English of the Pale," also joined with the natives in this dreadful revolt and massacre.

Parliament.

Irish Insurrection.

25. The Commons accused Charles of encouraging this rebellion, and, therefore, instead of voting supplies to the king, they levied money, and took arms from the magazines, ostensibly for its suppression, but secretly kept them as a reserve for future opposition to the royal authority. To vindicate their open mistrust of the king, they adopted and published a "Remonstrance" to the people against the various

24. What further measures were adopted by Parliament? Effect of them in Ireland? What was the conduct of Charles toward the Irish commissioners? What insurrection and massacre occurred in Ireland?

25. What course did the Commons pursue? The populace? Who were called "Cavaliers"? Who "Roundheads"?

measures of his reign, artfully fanning in every way the popular feeling against him, as well as against the established church, the bishops, and others connected with what was styled *prelacy*. Multitudes flocked to Westminster, insulted the lords and bishops, and insolently threatened the king himself. The adherents of the royal cause were styled "Cavaliers"; while these bestowed on the opponents of the king the name of "Roundheads," in derision of their cropped hair.*

26. The bishops, being prevented from attending Parliament, protested against the illegality of its acts; and on this account they were impeached by the Commons and committed to custody. A few days afterward, the king was betrayed into taking a step which injured him greatly in the opinion of the well-disposed part of his subjects, and promoted the objects of his enemies. This was the impeachment of Lord Kimbolton and five distinguished members of the House of Commons, including Hampden† and Pym,‡ charging them with conspir-

Attack on Parliament.

* "The Cavaliers, who affected a liberal way of thinking, as well as a gayety and freedom of manners inconsistent with Puritanical ideas, were represented by the Roundheads as a set of abandoned profligates, equally destitute of religion and morals, the devoted tools of the court, and the zealous abettors of arbitrary power. The Cavaliers, on the other hand, regarded the Roundheads as a gloomy, narrow-minded, fanatical herd, determined enemies to kingly power, and to all distinction of ranks in society. But in these characters, drawn by the passions of the two parties, we must not expect impartiality; both are certainly overcharged. The Cavaliers were, in general, sincere friends to liberty and the English Constitution; nor were republican and leveling principles by any means general at first among the Roundheads, though they came at last to predominate." Russell's *Modern Europe*.

† John Hampden had been very prominent in opposing the illegal exactions of the government. In 1627 he was imprisoned for refusing to pay his proportion of the loan levied by the king's sole authority; and in 1636 he resolutely refused to pay any of the ship-money, and was prosecuted and convicted by the government. His opposition to Charles in Parliament had been very open and decided.

‡ John Pym was one of the most conspicuous and talented of the par-

26. What was done by the bishops, and with what result? What false step did Charles take?

ing to alienate from him the affections of his subjects, to subvert the rights of the Parliament, to excite the disobedience of the army, and to extort the consent of the majority in Parliament by the aid of mobs. A sergeant-at-arms afterward demanded from the House the surrender of the five members, but could obtain no answer to the demand; and royal messengers were dispatched to seize them (1642).

JOHN PYM.

27. To add to the difficulty, the king came himself to the House attended by an armed retinue, and demanded that the obnoxious members should be pointed out. But the speaker, Lent'hall, refused to comply, boldly declaring that he was the servant of the House, and could act only in accordance with its directions. The king, therefore, retired without effecting his purpose, amid the low murmurs of "Privilege! privilege!" from the indignant members. This arbitrary act excited universal opposition; and the citizens of London were the whole night in arms, determined to protect at all hazards the five members from arrest. Hampden, who had made a bold stand five years before against the

Breach of Privilege.

liamentary leaders. During the latter part of the reign of James I., he became noted for his vigorous opposition to the arbitrary measures of the court; and in the succeeding reign, until his death in 1643, evinced the same earnest regard for his country's liberty. His fearless spirit, fervid eloquence, and thorough knowledge of parliamentary business, gave him so great an influence that he received from his party the title of "King Pym."

27. What account is given of the king's visit to Parliament? The result? What honor was shown to Hampden?

payment of ship-money, was particularly dear to the people; and four thousand horsemen went to London to testify their devotion to him (1642).

28. The king, obliged to abandon his prosecution of the members, formally pardoned them, and offered an apology to the House for the breach of privilege which he had committed. The latter, aware that it could only preserve its newly acquired power by the sword, made preparations for

COSTUMES OF THE NOBILITY. (*Time of Charles I.*)

the impending struggle. The magazine at Hull was seized by one of its adherents, the command of the Tower was bestowed on another, and a bill was passed giving the control of the militia entirely to the Commons. But Charles, finding himself supported by a considerable party, refused his assent to the bill, and issued a proclamation against the attempted usurpation.

29. This brought matters to an issue. The king and his counselors determined to resist the demands of Parliament,

28. The further course of the king? Of the Commons? What followed?

29. How was the civil war inaugurated? Whom did the Royalists include? The Roundheads? Who were the Independents?

which amounted to no less than the annihilation of the royal authority; and, collecting what forces he could, Charles erected his standard at Nottingham—the signal of civil war throughout the kingdom (August, 1642). The Royalists, or *Cavaliers*, included the greater part of the nobility, clergy, and landed gentry, with all who were attached to the established church, and also the Catholics. The *Roundheads*, or supporters of Parliament, were chiefly composed of the yeomanry of the country, the townspeople, and the dissenters or Puritans. Of the latter, the sect called *Independents* were particularly hostile to the monarchy as well as to the established church.

Civil War.

JOHN HAMPDEN.

30. The parliamentary forces were at first led by the earl of Essex, son of Elizabeth's favorite, and a general of considerable skill and experience. The command of the royal army was intrusted to the earl of Lindsay; the cavalry was commanded by the king's nephew, the famous Prince Rupert;* and it was the latter who commenced the war by routing a body of the parliamentary cavalry at Worcester. The first general engagement took place at Edgehill, and Lindsay was mortally wounded and taken prisoner, but there was no decided victory

First Events.

* Prince Rupert was the son of Frederick, elector-palatine, and Elizabeth, daughter of James I.; so that Charles I. was his uncle. He was not only prominent in this war, but afterward acquired great distinction as a naval commander. Subsequently, he became noted for his researches in science and the useful arts.

30. Who was the leader of the parliamentary forces? Of the royal army? Of its cavalry? When did the first general engagement occur? Its result? Death of Hampden? (For location of place, *see Prog. Map No.* 5.)

on either side (1642). In a skirmish the next year, the illustrious Hampden was mortally wounded, and his loss was felt as a severe blow to the popular party.*

31. During this year (1643), the Royalists, under Prince Rupert, gained some advantages in the west; and a general engagement took place at Newbury, but with no decided result. The Royalists lost one of their chief supporters in the brave and eloquent Lord Falkland (*fawk'land*), who, while he had at first firmly and patriotically opposed the unjust pretensions of the king, stood by him when the attempt was made to deprive him of his legal authority. He held, at his death, the office of Secretary of State, and in that position had won a high reputation for the able papers in which he advocated the royal cause.

Falkland.

32. The Parliament entered into negotiations with Scotland to bring about a combination of their forces against the king; and, principally through the skill and address of Sir Henry Vane, who had been sent as a commissioner to Edinburgh, a "solemn league and covenant" was entered into, by which the Scottish people renewed the pledges of the previous covenant, and bound themselves to assist the cause of the English Parliament. A large army of Scots was accordingly sent into England; but

League and Covenant.

* "The news of Hampden's death produced as great a consternation in his party, according to Clarendon, as if their whole army had been cut off. The journals of the time amply prove that the Parliament and all its friends were filled with grief and dismay. Lord Nugent has quoted a remarkable passage from the next *Weekly Intelligencer*. 'The loss of Colonel Hampden goeth near the heart of every man that loves the good of his king and country, and makes some conceive little content to be at the army now that he has gone. The memory of this deceased colonel is such that in no age to come but it will more and more be had in honor and esteem; a man so religious, and of that prudence, judgment, temper, valor, and integrity, that he hath left few his like behind him.'"—Macaulay's *Miscellaneous Essays*.

31. Operations of Prince Rupert? Battle of Newbury? What loss did the Royalists sustain? What is said of Falkland?

32. What league was formed with Scotland? Through whose influence? What forces were brought into England?

this was counterbalanced by a considerable force which the king succeeded in obtaining from Ireland (1643).

33. Lord Fairfax, who commanded the parliamentary forces in the north, formed a junction with the Scotch, under Leslie, earl of Leven, and laid siege to York; but the arrival of Prince Rupert with a considerable army raised the siege, and led to the battle of *Marston Moor*, in which the Royalists, under the marquis of Newcastle, sustained a severe defeat, principally through the skill and activity of Oliver Cromwell, by whom Prince Rupert's cavalry was routed and his artillery captured (July 2, 1644). The prince had insisted on giving battle to the parliamentary army contrary to the advice and wishes of Newcastle; and, after the disastrous result, that nobleman abandoned the royal cause and left the kingdom. His courage, talents, and nobleness of character made him the ornament of the court and of his order, and consequently his loss was a severe blow to the king. In the south, the Royalists met with some success over the parliamentary forces under Essex and Sir William Waller; but another army, under the earl of Manchester, defeated Charles in the second battle of Newbury, and compelled him to retreat to Oxford (October 27, 1644). (*See Prog. Map No.* 5.)

Marston Moor.

PRINCE RUPERT.

34. For some time previous to this, the sect denominated

33. What led to the battle of Marston Moor? Its result? Who abandoned the royal cause? Why? Character of Newcastle? What other operations are related?

34. What is said of the Independents? What were they often called? What was the "Self-denying Ordinance"?

Independents had been growing in influence. They held that every congregation formed a church by itself, and was independent of all general assemblies or synods, having the right to elect its own pastor and make all needful rules for its own government. They were often called the "Root-and-branch men," since they advocated the entire abolition of the monarchy and the establishment of a republic. To these belonged Oliver Cromwell and Sir Henry Vane, and through their influence a bill, styled the "Self-denying Ordinance," * was passed by Parliament, which forbade any of its members from holding command in the army.

Independents.

35. Essex, Manchester, Waller, and others, therefore, resigned their commissions; and Sir Thomas Fairfax † was appointed commander-in-chief. Cromwell, although a member of Parliament, artfully contrived to obtain permission to continue in the army, and was made lieutenant, but soon became, in fact, the general of the entire army, Fairfax being merely an instrument in his hands. Under his management every regiment assumed the appearance of the most intense piety; officers and men met regularly for religious exercises; and they sang hymns as they advanced to battle. Soon after this a very decisive victory was gained over the king's forces at Naseby (*naze'be*), chiefly through the skill and valor of Cromwell (June 14, 1645).

Cromwell.

36. After this battle many of the towns which were held

* After the king departed from London, the Parliament passed bills without the king's consent; and, instead of "Acts of Parliament," styled them "Ordinances." Many of them were much more arbitrary and oppressive than any of the measures of Charles.

† Sir Thomas Fairfax was the son of Lord Fairfax, under whom he served in the operations which took place in the north, and in which he gained great distinction, especially in the battle of Marston Moor. He succeeded to the title of his father in 1648.

35. Who resigned their commissions? What did Cromwell do? Effect of his policy? Battle of Naseby? (*See Progressive Map No.* 5.)

36. What followed this battle? Earl of Montrose? Execution of Archbishop Laud?

by the Royalists surrendered to Fairfax, who at last laid siege to Bristol, then occupied by Prince Rupert. This, too, was finally taken, and Charles, after other disasters, fled to Newark, and thence escaped to Oxford. The armies under Fairfax and Cromwell soon afterward reduced all the western and middle counties to submission; and the earl of Montrose in Scotland, who had gained several important victories over the Covenanters, was finally vanquished. Meanwhile, Archbishop Laud was, by an "ordinance" of Parliament, as it was called, tried for treason, condemned, and executed (January 10, 1645).

Flight of Charles.

37. The king being now reduced to the greatest extremity resolved to leave Oxford, which was on the point of falling into the hands of Fairfax, and to yield himself up to the Scottish army at Newark, knowing that the Scots had already gained everything for which they had contended, and that they had become disgusted with the dominant influence of the Independents in Parliament. He was received with respect, but treated as a prisoner, and compelled to issue orders for the surrender of all his remaining garrisons (May, 1646). The Parliament, desiring to gain possession of the fallen monarch, at last agreed to pay the Scots £400,000 in lieu of all demands, on condition that he should be given up; and accordingly he was surrendered to the English commissioners (January 30, 1647).

Charles a Captive.

38. Discontents having arisen in the army on account of the neglect with which it was treated by Parliament, Cromwell and those leagued with him secretly encouraged this dissatisfaction; and, in order to obtain control of affairs, took the king by force from the parliamentary commissioners, and

37. What course did the king adopt? Why? How was he treated? To whom was he surrendered, and why?

38. How did Cromwell and his colleagues gain control of affairs? Course of Cromwell toward London and Parliament? How was Charles treated? Whither did he escape? How is the Isle of Wight situated? (*See Progressive Map No.* 5.)

placed him under the protection of the army. This being resented by Parliament and its adherents in London, the leaders marched the army into the city, and reduced both the city and Parliament to submission. Charles was treated by his captors with respect and kindness; but, escaping from the confinement in which he was held, he fled to the Isle of Wight, where he was kept a prisoner by the governor in Carisbrook castle.

39. Under the direction of Cromwell and the other army officers, Parliament now made proposals of settlement to the king; and these being rejected by him, voted that no further addresses should be made to him, thus practically dethroning him altogether (January 13, 1648). He was then shut up in close confinement, and all correspondence with his friends was strictly prohibited. This treatment of the king greatly displeased the Scots; and, the Scottish parliament having voted to raise an army to support his authority, preparations were made to invade England and form a combination with the Royalists. While Cromwell and the army were exerting themselves to oppose these efforts, the Presbyterians in Parliament regained their power, and, annulling its previous acts, again entered into negotiations with the king.

40. A treaty was at last made with him and adopted by a considerable majority in the House of Commons; but Cromwell in the mean time had defeated the Scots, and the council of officers, causing the parliament-house to be surrounded with two regiments of soldiers under Colonel Pride, formerly a drayman, excluded all who were not favorable to their views (December 6, 1648). This measure, called "Colonel Pride's Purge," reduced the Parliament to about fifty members, by whom the vote in

Pride's Purge.

39. What was the next measure of Parliament? Its result? What was done with Charles? Effect of this on the Scots? What was done by the Presbyterians?

40. What was "Colonel Pride's Purge"? How was it effected? Its effect? What measures were then adopted in regard to the king?

favor of the treaty was rescinded, and a trial of the king ordered on the charge of treason against the people.

41. A court was accordingly organized to try him. It consisted of one hundred and thirty-three members, among whom were the chief officers of the army, including Cromwell, and was presided over by John Bradshaw, a lawyer. Its sessions were held at Westminster Hall, and the king was called upon to answer to the charges brought against him. Charles acted with the courage and dignity becoming his character. He refused to acknowledge the jurisdiction of the court, though thrice brought before it, and demanded a conference with Parliament. This was refused, and he was condemned to death as a "tyrant, traitor, murderer, and enemy of his country." Three days afterward, in front of the banqueting hall of Whitehall Palace, he was beheaded (January 30, 1649).*

Trial of Charles.

His Death.

42. The character of Charles I. was in many respects worthy of commendation. In the private relations of life his conduct was quite exemplary, being entirely free from those vices which so often sully the character of kings. As a monarch, his principal fault was insincerity, by which he lost the confidence of his people;

Character.

* "It was a calm, bright winter day. Soldiery, strongly ranked up, lined the streets around the palace of Whitehall, the matches of their muskets smoking in the clear, frosty air. A scaffold, hung with black, stood at the end of the banqueting hall of the palace. Two men, dressed as sailors, and masked, stood by the ax. A window of the hall had been removed to give access to the scaffold. The king stepped out, for to this grim conclusion had it come at last; and all that he had now to do in this world was to die. The stormy journey, begun nine-and-forty years before in the chamber of Dunfermline Palace, whose ivy-curtained window is still to be seen, was to end here. He read a short speech calmly, and even coldly, knelt down and laid his head on the block, prayed silently for a minute, and then held out his hands as a signal to the executioner. The ax rose and fell, a gory head rolled on the scaffold, and Charles Stuart ceased from troubling."—Mackenzie's *History of Scotland.*

41. What account is given of the trial of Charles? His behavior? His execution?
42. What is said of the character of Charles I.?

for he gave his assent to measures of reform which he subsequently endeavored to evade. His arbitrary policy finds some apology in the fact that his predecessors had exercised the same powers which he claimed: but his prudence and moderation were not sufficient to convince him that the great change which had taken place in the sentiments of the people necessitated a corresponding change in the royal pretensions.*

43. The Scots had protested against the trial and execution of the king, and foreign nations had interceded in his behalf. The Prince of Wales, anxious to save his father's life, sent a blank sheet of paper, subscribed with his name and sealed with his arms, on which the judges might write what conditions they pleased, as the price of the king's release; but these men were not to be moved from their purpose. A few days after the execution of the king, the Commons voted to abolish the House of Lords as well as the monarchy, declared it high treason to acknowledge Charles, the Prince of Wales, king of England, and ordered a new seal to be engraved with the legend, "*The first year of freedom by God's blessing restored*, 1648." Thus was established what is known in English history as the "Commonwealth."

Commonwealth, 1649-'60.

* "Charles I. was a young man of four-and-twenty when he succeeded his father on the throne. His foolish parent had brought him up in his own insane notions of kingship. Kings rule by divine right. Kings are accountable to God alone. A king's mere will is above all law, and to resist it in any way is a crime. This was his creed -a creed destined to rouse the English and Scottish nations to 'actions of a very high nature, leading to untrodden paths.' But the fatal vice of his nature was his utter falsity. No mortal could trust his promises. Lying was with him a kingly right and prerogative. As a king, he was privileged to work himself out of every difficulty by dint of lies. If forced by necessity to yield and make some concession, he was entitled, as soon as the pressure was past, to cast all his promises to the winds."—Mackenzie's *History of Scotland.*

43. What had been done to prevent the execution of the king? What vote of Parliament followed it? The new seal?

44. Having thus made an entire change in the outward form of government, the Commons next appointed a Council of State, consisting of forty-one members; and of this the regicide Bradshaw was made president. The real head of the government, however, was Oliver Cromwell, who, with Desborough, his brother-in-law, Ire'ton, his son-in-law, and others, wielded the power of the army, then nearly fifty thousand strong. Affairs in Scotland and Ireland first claimed their attention. In the former Charles, the late king's son, had been proclaimed his legal successor, with the title of Charles II.; and in the latter the authority of Parliament was defied, and a civil war had for some time been raging.

Council of State.

45. Cromwell, as lord-lieutenant, having almost subdued the rebellion in Ireland by the most dreadful slaughter of the insurgents, next proceeded to Scotland, where Prince Charles had landed, and was supported by a considerable army, partly consisting of English Royalists. Cromwell marched to Edinburgh, but found it too strongly fortified to be attacked. His position on the sea-shore, near Dunbar, was very critical, for he was unable to advance or retreat, and was cut off from any supplies. The Scots, however, rashly marched to attack him, and were most disastrously defeated, the greater number of them being either killed or captured (September 3, 1650). Edinburgh immediately surrendered, and the remnant of the Scottish army fled to Stirling.

Ireland.

Scotland.

46. Charles, a few months after this, was crowned at Scone;* but, becoming disgusted with the restraint under

* Near Perth. Very little of the ancient town now remains. Here the kings of Scotland were crowned on a famous stone now preserved in West-

44. What was next done by the Commons? Who was the real head of the government? What had taken place in Scotland and Ireland?

45. What was done by Cromwell in Ireland? In Scotland? Battle of Dunbar?

46. What is said of Charles II.? The battle of Worcester? Its consequences? How did Charles escape?

which he was kept by the Covenanters, he resolved to march into England, expecting to obtain there large accessions to his army. But in this he was disappointed; and, being promptly pursued by Cromwell, was defeated at Worcester (*woos'ter*), where the whole Scottish army were either killed or taken prisoners (September 3, 1651), most of those that escaped from the battle-field being massacred by the country people from national antipathy. This victory was styled by Cromwell his "crowning mercy." Charles escaped from England with great difficulty, being obliged to travel for two months in the disguise of a peasant. At one time he concealed himself for twenty-four hours in a large oak-tree while his pursuers passed by. This tree was afterward known as the *Royal Oak*.

Worcester.

47. The affairs of the English republic, now under the administration of Parliament, continued to be prosperous. The Portuguese, who had aided Prince Rupert in making his escape, were humbled by Admiral Blake, the subjugation of Ireland was completed by Ireton, and Scotland was entirely reduced to submission by General Monk, whom Cromwell had left to complete the work commenced by the victory at Dunbar. The people were disarmed, the preachers silenced, and all opposition immediately quelled at the point of the sword. The American settlements, all of which except those of New England had adhered to the royal cause, were subdued, as were likewise the islands of Jersey and Guernsey, and the Isle of Man. The latter had been bravely and persistently defended by the countess of Derby, though without success. This complete submission of the British territories left Parliament free to attend to foreign enterprises.

Other Victories.

minster Abbey. It was originally brought from Tara, the ancient seat of the Irish monarchs. (See notes, pages 49, 115.)

47. What is said of the administration of Parliament? What was accomplished? What was done in Scotland by Monk? What other territories were subdued?

48. The first of these was a war with the Dutch republic, which was provoked by the haughty behavior of the Dutch toward the English minister St. John, and the encouragement and hospitality shown toward the English Royalists. To cripple their commerce, Parliament passed the famous "Navigation Act," which prohibited all nations from importing any merchandise into England or her colonies except in English ships, or in the ships of the country where the goods were produced (1651). By this law, the Dutch were the chief sufferers, they being at this time the chief commercial nation of Europe. Admiral Blake, with an inferior force, encountered the Dutch fleet under the celebrated Van Tromp; and the latter, after losing two of his ships, was compelled to retire (1652).

Dutch War.

ADMIRAL ROBERT BLAKE.

49. Several engagements followed between Blake and the Dutch admirals Van Tromp and De Ruyter, in which both nations contended with the utmost skill and bravery for the mastery of the ocean: the balance of victory was, however, on the side of the English (1652–'53). Meanwhile, Cromwell, perceiving that Parliament had become jealous of his power, determined to dissolve it. Accordingly, going to the House with a body of three hundred soldiers, he loaded the members with the vilest reproaches, and bade them "to be gone and give place to honester men." Seizing the mace, he exclaimed, "Take

Parliament Dissolved.

48. What led to a war with Holland? What measure was passed by Parliament? What was the effect of this law? What naval battle occurred?

49. What other engagements followed? With what results? How did Cromwell dissolve Parliament? What words did he use?

away this bauble!" Then commanding the soldiers to clear the hall, he ordered the doors to be locked, and putting the keys into his pocket departed to his lodgings in Whitehall (April 20, 1653).*

Barebone's Parliament.

50. Desiring, however, to preserve some of the forms of the republic, he issued writs for the election of one hundred and forty persons, who might constitute a parliament. These, by his management, consisted of the meanest and most fanatical of the citizens; one of whom, a leather-seller named Praise-God Barebone, having made himself conspicuous by his sanctimonious cant and long prayers, the parliament was called, in derision, "Barebone's Parliament." Cromwell, however, soon dissolved this ridiculous assembly, and caused himself to be appointed "Lord Protector." He was to be assisted by a Council of State, and was bound to summon a parliament every three years (December, 1653).

51. A few months previously Van Tromp, the distin-

* "After several conferences, ending all in smoke, Cromwell's resolve broke into clear, bright flame, which all can see. He sent the contemptible remnant of the Long Parliament about its business. The Lord-General came down from Whitehall on that memorable morning, dressed very simply, as his custom was, in black clothes and gray worsted stockings, and, entering the House, sat down in his wonted place. He listened a while to the speaking, and then rose, hat off, to give his mind on the settlement of affairs. Blazing soon into anger, he clapped on his hat and strode up and down the floor, declaring that the members (only fifty three were present) had sat there too long. Go they must. Twenty or thirty musketeers, armed with loaded snaphances, entered at his command, and then the storm of words broke out in the fullest fury. Withering the members, now all huddled on their feet, with words and looks of fire, he lifted the mace, emblem of the sacred authority of the Commons, and, with the contemptuous word 'bauble,' handed it to a soldier. Speaker Lenthall, disposed at first to be obstinate, left the chair, from which Harrison was going to pull him. The Rump vanished; and mace and key passed in a colonel's keeping from the locked-up chamber."—Collier's *History of England.*

50. What account is given of "Barebone's Parliament"? What title did Cromwell obtain? By whom was he to be assisted?

51. Death of Van Tromp? What treaty was made? Administration of Cromwell?

guished Dutch admiral, had been shot in an action with the English; and the Dutch, terrified by their losses and overwhelmed with the expenses of the war, solicited peace. A treaty was finally signed by Cromwell, establishing a defensive league between the two republics, but yielding the honor of the flag to the English (1654). The administration of the Protector was, in other respects, characterized by extraordinary vigor and ability. He boasted that he would make the name of *Englishman* as much feared and respected as had anciently been that of *Roman;* and the uniform success of his military and naval enterprises went far to realize the saying.

League with Holland.

52. Under Blake, the English fleets achieved an uninterrupted series of victories. He subdued the Barbary Powers (1655), and defeated the Spaniards in several important actions (1656–'57). His death occurred in 1657. Blake was an inflexible republican, and, as such, he disapproved of the usurpations of Cromwell, notwithstanding the honors which the latter heaped upon him. During the war waged with Spain, the island of Jamaica was taken by an English squadron under Admirals Penn* and Venables (1655); and the town of Dunkirk was captured from the Spaniards by the combined forces of France and England (1658), and by agreement was delivered to the latter country.

Blake.

Conquests.

53. Although prosperous abroad, the Protector was at home involved in very great difficulties. He had called two

* Father of the celebrated William Penn, the founder of Pennsylvania. During the reign of Charles II. he obtained a high command under the duke of York, and acquired considerable distinction by his skill and valor. He was knighted by Charles for his services, in consideration of which, also, his son subsequently received the grant of land in North America which he settled, and which was named after him.

52. What was achieved by Blake? His death and character? What conquests were made during the war? Where is Dunkirk? (See map, page 74.)

53. In what difficulties was Cromwell involved? What caused him anxiety? The effect of it? The date and manner of his death?

parliaments successively; but, not finding them subservient to his views, he had promptly dissolved them (1654–'56). His military enterprises had involved him in heavy debt; conspiracies, one after another, were formed against his government; and discontents arose in the army itself. A book entitled "Killing no Murder," published by one Colonel Titus, and boldly advising the removal of the usurper by assassination, caused him thereafter ceaseless apprehension and anxiety. He constantly wore armor under his clothes, and carried pistols in his pockets; and scarcely ever slept three nights in the same chamber, or returned from any place by the same way in which he went. At last this dreadful anxiety of mind, coupled with grief for the loss of a favorite daughter, brought on a fever, of which he expired (September 3, 1658), the anniversary of the day of his great victories at Dunbar and Worcester.

Cromwell Protector.

Death.

54. Cromwell was in his sixtieth year when he died. He was of a robust frame of body, and of a manly though not an agreeable aspect. His eyes were gray and keen, his nose immoderately large and of a deep red, and his manner uniformly abrupt and clownish. His character had very many traits of greatness. No one can gainsay the splendid talents which he displayed both as a general and as a statesman; and, had he rightfully possessed the sovereign power, he would undoubtedly have compared favorably with any monarch that ever reigned, both for ability and uprightness of intentions. But his perverted ambition, not content with vindicating the liberties and redressing the grievances of his country, prompted him to "wade through slaughter to a throne"; and therefore, instead of receiving the benedictions of his countrymen, he was execrated and abhorred.*

Character.

* "He was of a robust make and constitution, his aspect manly though clownish. His education extended no further than a superficial knowledge

54. Cromwell's age? Personal appearance? Character?

55. Richard Cromwell quietly succeeded his father in the office of Protector. He was a young man of no experience and very little strength of character, though of a mild and virtuous disposition. His want of capacity for so difficult a position was soon manifest, notwithstanding the support which he received from General Monk, who commanded the army in Scotland, and from his brother Henry, as Lord-Lieutenant of Ireland. A parliament was called, but, it having given offense to the army officers, the latter compelled Richard to dissolve it (1659). Soon after this he signed his own abdication, and thus left the supreme authority to the army, who afterward ruled by a council of officers.

Richard Cromwell.

56. The country was now threatened with a renewal of civil war; but General Monk, a man of great caution and reserve, marched into England with the avowed intention of restoring the parliament which Cromwell had violently expelled. This was accomplished, the members generally taking their places, and the Presbyterians and Royalists forming a coalition against the Independents. Under Monk's direction this parliament was formally dissolved, and writs issued for the election of a new one. In the new parliament a majority was found in favor of restoring the king; and when the messenger of Charles appeared, he was received with great joy. The terms offered were at once accepted, and the king was proclaimed with great solemnity by both Houses (May 8, 1660). A few

Restoration.

of the Latin tongue, but he inherited great talents from nature. His character was formed of an amazing conjuncture of enthusiasm, hypocrisy, and ambition. He was possessed of courage and resolution that overlooked all dangers, and saw no difficulties. He dived into the characters of mankind with wonderful sagacity, whilst he concealed his own purpose under the impenetrable shield of dissimulation."—Noble's *Memoirs of Cromwell.*

55. Who succeeded Oliver Cromwell? The character of Richard Cromwell? What led to his abdication?

56. What was done by Monk? What led to the Restoration? How was the king received in London?

days afterward Charles entered London, amid the joyful acclamations of the citizens (May 29, 1660), and reascended the throne of his ancestors. This event is known in English history as the Restoration.

57. Charles II. was thirty years old when, after an exile of sixteen years, he was restored to his throne. His cheerful disposition, and easy, graceful manners, made him a very engaging person: and he won the hearts of all who approached him by his manly figure and his frankness and affability. Sir Edward Hyde, now created earl of Clarendon, who had returned with the king from exile, was made chancellor and prime minister, and soon afterward became connected with the royal family by the marriage of his daughter, Anne Hyde, with the king's brother, James, duke of York. General Monk was rewarded with the title of duke of Albemarle.

Charles II., 1660-'78.

CHARLES II.

58. Among the first acts of the restored king's reign were the abolition of the last relic of the Feudal System—the tenure of lands by knight's service,* the disbanding of Cromwell's army, and

* This was originally an obligation imposed upon the holder of a certain extent of land, called a *Knight's Fee*, to perform the duties of a knight to his superior or lord. Afterward, a money compensation was allowed as an equivalent, which in time led to many abuses.

57. What is said of Charles II.? Who was made chancellor? How was he related to the king? How was General Monk rewarded?

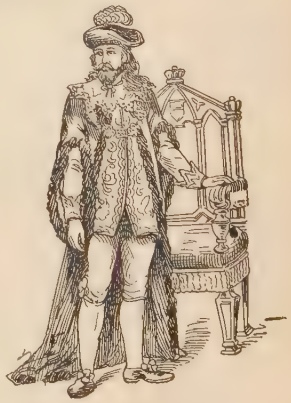
58. What were the first acts of this reign? Who were excepted from the general pardon? Treatment of the regicides' remains? What took place in Scotland?

the restoration of the Church of England. An act was also passed pardoning all who had taken part in the great Rebellion, except the regicide judges, thirteen of whom were tried and executed. On the anniversary of the late king's death, the bodies of Cromwell, Ireton, and Bradshaw were disinterred, hanged on the gallows, then decapitated, and their heads fixed on Westminster Hall. With this exception, the king showed great moderation and clemency, and admitted into his council both Royalists and Presbyterians. In Scotland more severity was exercised, and the marquis of Argyle was beheaded for having favored the usurped government.

Regicides.

59. In compliance with the wishes of Charles and his minister, the "Act of Uniformity" was passed, requiring that every clergyman should be ordained by the bishops, and should declare his assent to everything contained in the Book of Common Prayer, and should abjure the Covenant. Two thousand clergymen were expelled from their livings for refusing to comply with this law (1662). The "Corporation Act," passed at the same time, enjoined all magistrates and officers of corporations to take an oath never, under any circumstance, to resist the king's authority, or to take up arms against him.

Act of Uniformity.



LORD MAYOR OF LONDON.

60. The most remarkable feature of this period was the entire change which took place in the sentiments of the people. During the reign of Charles I., they mani-

59. What was the "Act of Uniformity"? How was obedience to it enforced? What was the "Corporation Act"?

60. What change took place in the manners of the people? What was Charles's conduct? Whom did he neglect?

fested the most intense zeal for liberty; but now seemed eager to evince an equally extravagant spirit of submission. While they were under the control of the Puritans, they seemed to think that religion consisted in gloom, austerity, and the sacrifice of all social gayety and pleasure; but, going to the opposite extreme, they now plunged into riot and dissipation. Everything religious or serious was ridiculed; and nothing but scenes of gallantry and festivity occupied the general attention. The monarch set the example, and indulged himself in mirth and festivity, while those who had suffered in his father's cause, as well as in his own, were left by him to pine in neglect and wretchedness.

61. In the third year of his reign, Charles married Catharine of Braganza, a Portuguese princess, with whom he received a large dowry; but, finding her disposition serious and her manners formal and grave, he entirely neglected her for the society of his gay and dissolute companions. After a short time, his profusion and reckless self-indulgence considerably abated the people's loyalty; and they could not forbear to make comparisons between this slothful and licentious monarch and the great Protector who had made the name of England so glorious throughout the world by his careful and vigorous administration. Dunkirk, which had been acquired during that splendid period, was now sold to the French to supply means for the king's extravagant pleasures (1662).

Marriage of Charles.

LADY OF LONDON.

Conduct.

61. Marriage of Charles? His treatment of the queen? Popular sentiments regarding Charles? Sale of Dunkirk?

62. But scarcely any amount of money was found adequate for this purpose; and, in order to obtain supplies from Parliament, he recklessly plunged into a war with Holland, the avowed cause of the war being certain alleged wrongs committed by the Dutch against the English trade. Before the war had been formally declared, a fleet sent out by the duke of York took possession of New Netherland, afterward New York, in North America (1664), and some of the Dutch settlements in Africa were captured. De Ruyter retaliated by attacking Barbadoes and some of the other English dependencies. At the beginning of the war, a great naval battle was fought off the eastern coast of England, in which James, the duke of York, assisted by Prince Rupert and the earl of Sandwich, defeated the Dutch fleet with immense loss (1665).

Dutch War.

63. The French monarch (Louis XIV.) then took sides with the Dutch, alarmed lest the English might acquire an unlimited control of maritime affairs. The king of Denmark also declared war against England. The combined fleets of the allies, commanded by the great Dutch admiral De Ruyter and the duke of Beaufort, the French admiral, were met by those of the English, under the duke of Albemarle and Prince Rupert (1666). This battle was not decisive, though it lasted four days, and was one of the most terrific naval engagements ever fought: it occurred near the southeast coast of England. In an engagement about a month later, and near the same place, the English, under the same commanders, gained a decided victory over De Ruyter, and for a time rode the seas triumphant.

64. During this war, the Great Plague broke out in Lon-

62. Why was war waged with Holland? Capture of New Netherland? Other settlements? How did De Ruyter retaliate? What naval battle was fought?

63. Course of Louis XIV.? The king of Denmark? What great naval engagement occurred? Its result? What other battle was fought?

64. The Great Plague? Mortality caused by it? The Great Fire? What buildings were burned? St. Paul's Cathedral? What is said of the new edifice?

don: and such was the awful mortality occasioned by it, that in the city alone the number of deaths during the year (1665) was estimated at no less than 100,000. The rich and panic-stricken fled from the city; grass grew in the streets; and the silence of death reigned everywhere, except when it was broken by the rumbling of the dead-cart as it carried away its fearful burden. Close upon this calamity followed the Great Fire, which raged for three days, and destroyed 13,200 dwelling-houses, besides ninety churches (1666). St. Paul's cathedral was burned: but on its site was afterward erected, by the distinguished architect Christopher Wren, that beautiful edifice, the dome of which now towers above the smoke-stained roofs of London.*

Great Plague.

Great Fire.

65. The desire of Charles to save expense, in order that he might have means for his extravagant pleasures, led to neglect in keeping up the naval force of the kingdom; and the Dutch, under De Witt and De Ruyter, taking advantage of this, defiantly entered the harbors, and did immense havoc to the shipping. They even sailed up the Thames, and extended their ravages as far as London Bridge, thus revenging their great defeat and loss of the year previous (1667). Peace was, however, declared the same year. The disgraceful close of this war, together with the previous measures of the government, excited intense indignation among the people, particularly against Clarendon, who was accordingly impeached and

Clarendon.

* Except St. Peter's at Rome, this is considered the finest church edifice in Europe. It was commenced in 1675, and required thirty-five years for its completion. Wren superintended the whole. He also drew designs for more than fifty other churches in place of those destroyed by the fire, and formed a plan for the entire rebuilding of the metropolis, embracing wide streets, magnificent quays, and other valuable improvements. He died in 1723, in his ninety-first year.

65. What disaster was caused by the king's neglect? What followed the close of the war? Lord Clarendon's impeachment? His subsequent life?

banished. He survived his banishment six years, which he spent in France, employing his time in the composition of his great work, the "History of the Rebellion."

66. After the fall of Clarendon, five ministers were chosen, whose unprincipled intrigues subsequently caused them to be stigmatized as the "Cabal."* Their first measure was, however, very popular. This was the formation of a league with Holland and Sweden (hence called the "Triple Alliance") for the purpose of restraining the French king, Louis XIV., in his ambitious scheme of seizing the Spanish Netherlands (1668).† Louis was thus obliged to abandon the enterprise, and to submit to the terms agreed upon by the plenipotentiaries of the three countries, among whom England was represented by the celebrated Sir William Temple,‡ and Holland by the famous statesman John De Witt.§

Cabal.

* The initial letters of the names of these ministers—Clifford, Ashley, Buckingham, Arlington, and Lauderdale—gave point to this term of reproach, which at that period, as at present, was used to signify any secret committee, or junto.

† That part of the Netherlands which remained in the possession of Spain after the Dutch provinces had revolted and achieved their independence was so named. It chiefly consisted of the present kingdom of Belgium.

‡ Sir William Temple was especially celebrated for his skill as a negotiator. After spending twenty years in the affairs of state, he retired in 1680 from public employment, and spent the remainder of his life in literary pursuits and in the cultivation of his grounds. He died in 1700, at the age of seventy-one. His works, consisting chiefly of memoirs of public affairs, are very valuable.

§ John De Witt, for several years "Grand Pensionary" of Holland, was noted for his scientific attainments, eminent ability as a statesman, and incorruptible integrity. He was at the head of affairs during the wars with England under Cromwell and Charles II., but uniformly deprecated a warlike policy on the part of the two countries. His hatred of the Orange family and the Stadtholder was intense, and involved him in many troubles. During a popular insurrection occasioned by the invasion of the French in 1672, the odium of which was attached to him, he and his brother were seized by the enraged mob, and murdered with every circumstance of indignity and cruelty.

66. What ministry succeeded Clarendon? Why were they called the "Cabal"? (See note.) The "Triple Alliance"? Its result? Who were the plenipotentiaries of England and Holland? What is said of them? (See notes.)

67. Charles, however, disliked the alliance against Louis, although so acceptable to the people, because he hoped, by means of aid received from that monarch, to make himself independent of the English Parliament. He, therefore, secretly concluded with Louis a most disgraceful treaty, agreeing to assist him in subjugating Holland, and to make a public profession of the Catholic religion. In return, he was to receive a large sum of money (£200,000) yearly, and was promised an army in case of an insurrection in England (1670). The negotiations by which this was brought about were chiefly carried on by the duchess of Orleans, the sister of Charles, aided by a beautiful French lady, who afterward came to England, and, having won the favor of the king, was made duchess of Portsmouth.

French Treaty.

68. One of the most dishonorable acts of Charles's government, in order to obtain supplies, was the closing of the Exchequer, or Treasury, in which the London merchants and goldsmiths had deposited their funds, on which they were now told that they would receive only the interest, as the principal would not be paid (1672). General bankruptcy and ruin followed this shameful violation of public credit, and all trade was for a time completely paralyzed. Other measures adopted by the king without the consent of Parliament were of an arbitrary and unconstitutional character.

Closing of the Exchequer.

69. A few months later, England joined France in a war against the Dutch; and while the fleets of the latter contended against those of the English, commanded by the duke of York, the French army invaded the territory of the republic, captured many of its cities, and

Dutch War.

67. Why did Charles dislike the alliance? What treaty did he make? By whom was it negotiated?

68. What dishonorable act was committed by the government? The consequences?

69. What war followed? What were its effects on Holland? Its duration? How terminated?

drove it to the extreme measure of opening the sluices, and inundating the country. In these perilous circumstances the Dutch forces were commanded by William, Prince of Orange,* who gained great distinction by his determined courage and patriotism. The war continued about two years, at the end of which it had become so unpopular in England that the king was compelled to make a treaty of peace with the Dutch provinces (1674).

70. While this war was in progress, the "Test Act" had been passed by Parliament (1673), obliging all government officers to take the oaths of allegiance and supremacy, and to abjure the doctrines of the Catholic Church. In consequence of this, the duke of York, who had previously made a public profession of his faith in that church, resigned his office as admiral, and was succeeded in the command of the fleet by Prince Rupert. The subsequent marriage of the duke with a Catholic princess (Mary of Modena) increased the popular feeling which had been manifested against him as being a Catholic.

Test Act.

71. The general distrust and suspicion felt at this time against the Catholics led to what was called the "Popish Plot" (1678). This was a conspiracy alleged to have been formed by the Catholics to set fire to the city of London, assassinate the king, massacre the Protestants, and betray the kingdom to the French. The principal witness in this absurd accusation was one Titus Oates,† whose false and malicious statements were received with

Popish Plot.

* Afterward William III., king of England. He was then in the twenty-second year of his age, but had already given many indications of the greatness of character for which he subsequently became so distinguished.

† This infamous character had been a clergyman, but was dismissed for vicious practices. During the next reign he was condemned for perjury, and sentenced to be whipped and pilloried. He died in 1705.

70. The Test Act? Conduct of the duke of York? By whom was he succeeded as admiral? Effect of his marriage?

71. The so-called "Popish Plot"? Titus Oates? Viscount Stafford? His fate?

implicit confidence, and occasioned the wildest excitement. The rewards bestowed upon him led others to commit similar perjuries, and many innocent persons suffered death before the imposture was discovered. The most illustrious of these victims was William Howard, Viscount Stafford, whose gray hairs could not save him from an unmerited death. He was condemned, after a trial of six days, and perished on the scaffold, amid the loudly expressed sympathies of the spectators (December, 1680).

Stafford.

72. The year preceding this event was rendered memorable by the passage of the famous "Ha'beas Cor'pus Act," * securing all subjects from imprisonment, except where it can be shown to be justified by law. This was designed to check the illegal and arbitrary arrests made by the authority of the king, who in many respects exercised the most despotic sway. He deprived many of the cities, London included, of their charters, in order to extort money for their restoration; and no one felt himself secure from the numerous gangs of spies and informers who were employed by the court.

Habeas Corpus.

73. This state of things led to a conspiracy called the "Rye-House Plot," from the name of the house in which the conspirators met, it being situated at a place called Rye, a lonely spot on the road by which the king returned from Newmarket to London. The plan was to overturn a cart, so that the king's coach would be stopped, and then to rush out and assassinate him (1683). The failure and discovery of this plot brought to light the existence of another combination, the object of

Rye-House Plot.

* *Habeas Corpus* means "have the body." The writ, or order of the court of justice, was so called because it enjoins any person restraining another's liberty to *have his body* (that is, to produce the prisoner) before the court, so that the cause of his detention may be known.

72. The "Habeas Corpus Act"? Its object? Arbitrary conduct of the king?

73. The "Rye-House Plot"? Its object? The result? To what information did its failure and discovery lead?

which was to create a revolution by dethroning Charles, and placing his natural son, the duke of Monmouth, on the throne, or at least to compel Charles to acknowledge Monmouth as his successor, there being a rumor that his mother had been lawfully married to the king.

74. The chief members of this combination were the duke of Monmouth, Lord William Russell, Algernon Sidney, John Hampden (grandson of the distinguished patriot of that name), the earl of Essex, and Lord Howard. On the evidence of some of the conspirators, Russell and Sidney were beheaded; but Monmouth escaped by flight (1683). The fate of Lord Russell, who was a most virtuous nobleman, excited the deepest sympathy; and that of Sidney,* who was in principle a republican, and had fought in the civil war against the late king, was also greatly regretted. Hampden was punished only by the imposition of a heavy fine; and Monmouth, having made an humble submission to the king, was pardoned.

Russell.

MILTON.

75. A short time after this, Charles married his niece, the Lady Anne, daughter of the duke of York, to Prince George, brother to the king of Denmark, thinking to in-

*Sidney was the second son of Robert, earl of Leicester. He made Brutus his model in his political character, and on Cromwell's usurpation he retired in disgust from the country. He returned in 1677, having obtained the king's pardon. His political writings, especially the "Discourse on Government," have been very greatly admired.

74. Who were the chief conspirators? Who were beheaded? Lord Russell? Sidney? (See note.) Hampden? Monmouth?

75. Marriage of the Lady Anne? The king's death? His character? Effects of his example? Of his extravagance?

crease his popularity by allying himself thus closely to a Protestant prince. The death of the king soon followed, being caused by an apoplectic fit (1685). During his last illness he received the offices of the Catholic Church. The only redeeming traits of his character were his affability, ease, and cheerfulness as a companion. In other respects he was most unworthy, being utterly unprincipled, and immoral in the lowest degree. His whole court was steeped in vice and profligacy, and the tone of society in every grade was affected by his degrading example. With no natural disposition to tyranny, his recklessness and extravagance caused him to disregard the most sacred privileges of his subjects, and to trample, without scruple, upon their dearest liberties. He left no legitimate children, and therefore the crown descended to his brother James, duke of York.

Death of Charles.

Character.

76. In the first part of the reign of Charles II. (1667), the celebrated poet, John Milton, published his greatest work, "Paradise Lost." This illustrious man had been Foreign Secretary under Cromwell, and had distinguished himself by his writings in defense of the Commonwealth.* His principal contemporaries in the field of literature were John Bunyan, the author of "Pilgrim's Progress"; Samuel Butler, who wrote "Hudibras," a bur-

Milton.

* During the Commonwealth, Latin was selected as the language to be used in communicating with foreign states: and Milton, on account of his scholarship, was appointed secretary. Macaulay says: "In the character of Milton the noblest qualities of every party were combined in harmonious union. From the Parliament and from the court, from the conventicle and from the Gothic cloister, from the gloomy and sepulchral circles of the Roundheads and from the Christmas revel of the hospitable Cavalier, his nature selected and drew to itself whatever was great and good, while it rejected all the base and pernicious ingredients by which those fine elements were defiled. Like the Puritans, he lived 'as ever in his great Taskmaster's eye.' Like them, he kept his mind continually fixed on an Almighty Judge and an eternal reward."

76. What writers flourished? Milton? Bunyan? Butler? Locke? Dryden? The Drama? Sir Matthew Hale?

lesque poem on the Puritans and the civil war; and John Locke, the author of the immortal "Essay on the Human Understanding." Dryden also wrote several of his finest poems, and was made poet-laureate. The drama received many talented contributions from Ot'way, Wych'erley, and others; but, taking its character from the court, it was shamefully immoral. Sir Matthew Hale, the just and pious judge, also flourished during this period.

Other Writers.

77. No opposition was made to the accession of James, duke of York, brother of the late king, his title being generally recognized as indisputable; but, notwithstanding the glory which he had acquired as a naval commander, he was viewed with distrust by the people on account of the attachment which he had openly manifested to the church of Rome. Soon after the coronation of James and his queen, Parliament assembled, in his address to which the king showed something of the same spirit of defiance which had involved his father in so much trouble. All the chief offices of the crown continued in the hands of Protestants.

James II., 1685-'88.

JOHN DRYDEN.

78. The duke of Monmouth, who had fled to Holland during the preceding reign, now, under the instigation of the earl of Argyle, an exiled nobleman from Scotland, renewed his claim to the throne. Argyle landed in the western part of Scotland, but was soon defeated, taken prisoner, and a short time afterward executed at Edin-

Argyle.

77. James II.? Popular feeling toward him? His address to Parliament?

78. The duke of Monmouth? The earl of Argyle? Monmouth's invasion? its result? Monmouth's conduct and fate?

burgh. Monmouth landed in England with scarcely one hundred followers, but was soon joined by a considerable force, and proceeded slowly into the interior of the country. At Sedgemoor, a wild tract in the southwest of England, he was met by the royal army, and, after a battle of three hours, defeated with great slaughter. Monmouth fled, but in a few days was found concealed in a ditch, and taken to London. In an interview with the king he threw himself on his knees, and implored forgiveness; but as he had plotted several times against the government, and had publicly proclaimed James a traitor, a tyrant, the murderer of his brother, and a popish usurper, the king was deaf to his entreaties. Two days after this interview with the king, his uncle, the duke was beheaded (1685).

JAMES II.
(*From a print after Kneller.*)

79. Those who had been concerned in this rebellion were pursued with the most dreadful ferocity, an officer named Kirke acquiring a disgraceful notoriety by the shocking cruelties perpetrated by his soldiers, who were ironically styled "Kirke's Lambs." * Trials were held

Kirke.

* "This ruffian [Colonel Kirke] had been a soldier of fortune at Tangiers, and had contracted, from his intercourse with the Moors, an inhumanity less known in European and in free countries. At his first entry into Bridgewater, he hanged nineteen persons without the least inquiry into the merits of their cause. As if to make a sport of the sufferings of his victims, he ordered a certain number to be executed while he and his company should drink the king's health, or that of Chief Justice Jeffreys. Observing their feet quiver in the agonies of death, he cried that he would give them music to their dancing,

79. Treatment of the rebels? "Kirke's Lambs"? Judge Jeffreys? The "Bloody Assize"? Alice Lisle?

under the infamous Judge Jeffreys,* and many innocent persons were condemned and executed. This circuit was called the "Bloody Assize," Jeffreys boasting of the large number of persons (more than three hundred) whom he had caused to be hanged. More than eight hundred others were sent as slaves to the West Indies, under the orders of court favorites to whom they had been granted, and who made a shameful gain by their sale, or extorted various sums for their liberation. Two women were

Jeffreys.

and he immediately ordered the drums to beat and the trumpets to sound. By way of experiment, he ordered one man to be hung up three times, questioning him at each interval, whether he repented of his crime; but, the man persisting he would engage in the same cause, Kirke ordered him to be hung in chains. This monster suffered his regiment to live at free quarters, and, instructed by his example and encouraged by his exhortations, they committed all manner of excesses. By way of pleasantry, he called the military his *lambs*, an appellation which was long remembered with horror in the west of England. It is worthy of remark that Kirke afterward served in the army of the Prince of Orange."—Hume's *History of England.*

* "This sanguinary monster had already given a specimen of his character in many trials where he had presided, and he set out on the western circuit with savage joy, as to a full harvest of blood and destruction. He began at Dorchester, and thirty delinquents being arraigned, he exhorted them, but in vain, to save him, by their confession, the trouble of trying them. And when twenty-nine of them were found guilty, he ordered them, as an additional punishment of their disobedience, to be led to immediate execution. Most of the other prisoners, terrified with this example, pleaded guilty, and no less than two hundred and ninety-two received sentence at Dorchester; of these, eighty were executed. Exeter was the next scene of his cruelty; two hundred and thirty-three were there tried, of whom a vast number were condemned and executed. He also opened his commission at Taunton and Wells, and everywhere carried consternation along with him. On the whole, besides those butchered by Kirke, two hundred and fifty-one are computed to have fallen by the hand of this merciless tiger. The whole country was strewed with the heads and limbs of the insurgents. Every village almost beheld the dead carcass of a wretched inhabitant. England had never known such a carnage. Dr. Burnet says that no fewer than six hundred persons were hanged in consequence of Monmouth's rebellion. James applauded these proceedings, and he took pleasure to relate them in his drawing-room to foreign ministers, and at his table, calling it '*Jeffreys's Campaign.*' Upon his return Jeffreys was created a baron and peer of the realm."—Hume's *History of England.*

executed for sheltering fugitives, and their case excited much compassion, more especially that of Alice Lisle (*lile*), widow of one of Cromwell's lords, who was sentenced by Jeffreys to be burned alive; but through the intercession of friends, her sentence was changed to beheading.

Alice Lisle.

80. The imprudent zeal of the king in the promotion of Catholics to office and power occasioned great excitement and dissatisfaction. Having published on his own authority, and in opposition to the Test Act, a declaration allowing liberty of conscience, and declaring that non-conformity to the established religion should no longer be punished, he issued an order requiring that this declaration should be read in all the churches. This, as being illegal, the clergy refused to obey; and a petition was presented against it by seven bishops, including Archbishop Sancroft. James, greatly exasperated at this opposition, caused the bishops to be committed to the Tower, where they remained a week before they were set free on bail (1688).

James and the Bishops.

81. The popular excitement produced by this conduct of the king was intense. Crowds attended the bishops as they were conducted from the Tower, and signified their sympathy and veneration in every possible way. The trial took place in Westminster Hall, the bishops being charged with having published a false and seditious libel; and when the jury had delivered their verdict, "Not Guilty," and the bishops were discharged, the city of London was illuminated, and the people became almost frantic with joy. During these exciting events the queen gave birth to a son; and a false rumor was spread by the Protestant party that the child had been brought into the palace in order to be imposed upon the people as an heir to the crown. The infant was baptized by the name of James. He was afterward the Elder Pretender.

80. What caused much popular excitement? What declaration was published by the king? What led to the arrest of the bishops?

81. Conduct of the populace? The trial of the bishops? Effect of their acquittal? The king's son? What rumor was spread?

82. The king, expecting opposition, had collected a standing army of about sixteen thousand men; but these openly expressed their sympathy with the Protestant party. By the advice of the French minister, James had obtained several regiments of Irish soldiers, in whom, as being Catholics, it was thought reliance could be placed. These were hated by the English; and a popular air, called from its burden *Lillibulero*,* still further fanned the flame against James and the Irish troops. In the mean time some of the leading nobles and clergy of England had sent to William, Prince of Orange, nephew and son-in-law of the king,† entreating him to come with an army and aid them in defending their religion and their freedom.

King's Measures.

83. William promptly accepted the call, and having collected an army of fourteen thousand men, and a fleet of five hundred ships, he sailed from Holland, and landed safely and without opposition at Torbay, on the southern shore (November 5, 1688). He was received with acclamations of joy by the people, and advanced slowly, reaching Exeter in four days. James at first resolved to stake his kingdom on the issue of a great battle; but being abandoned by his subjects, among them Lord Churchill (afterward so celebrated as the duke of Marlborough) and other distinguished noblemen, and being deserted also by his daughter Anne, and her husband, Prince George, he resolved on flight. Having previously sent away

Landing of William.

* "The whole of William's army, and at last the people, both in city and country, were singing it perpetually. Never had so slight a thing so great an effect."—*Burnett.*

† William was the son of Mary, eldest daughter of Charles I., and consequently was a nephew of James II.; and Mary, his wife, was his first cousin. Setting aside the family of James II., William was thus the next lawful heir to the throne.

82. What course did James pursue? What is said of the song *Lillibulero?* What message was sent to William, Prince of Orange?

83. What was done by William? By James? By whom was the king abandoned? How did he make his escape? By whom was he received?

his queen and son to France, he followed them in disguise, but was captured and brought back. His enemies were, however, not desirous of retaining him; and the Dutch soldiers having occupied London, he was permitted again to escape, whereupon he sailed away to France, and joined his wife at the castle of St. Germains, near Paris, which had been provided by Louis XIV., who received him with the greatest sympathy and kindness.*

84. A convention parliament was immediately called (January 23, 1689), and the crown was bestowed on William and Mary for their lives, the former to have the sole administration of the government. The succession was settled, first on the children of Mary, and then on those of her sister Anne; and, these failing, on the children of William by any other wife. Annexed to this settlement was a Declaration of Rights, definitely fixing the extent of the king's prerogative, and more precisely stating the constitutional principles of the government.

Convention Parliament.

85. Among these the chief articles were: 1. The king cannot suspend the laws or their execution; 2. He cannot levy money without the consent of Parliament; 3. The subject has a right to petition the crown; 4. A standing army cannot be kept in time of peace without the consent of Parliament; 5. Elections and parliamentary debates must be free, and parliaments must be frequently assembled. These acts of the Convention were afterward confirmed by a parliament regularly summoned, in an enactment called the "Bill of Rights." Thus was con-

Declaration of Rights.

* "A royal palace was allotted for his residence, his wants and those of his queen were anticipated and supplied, and the same honors were paid to him as if he had still been in possession of the two thrones of Great Britain and Ireland."—Lingard's *History of England.*

84. What was called? What did the Convention do? The settlement of the crown? Declaration of Rights?

85. What were the chief articles? How was the declaration confirmed? Revolution of 1688?

summated what is known in English history as the "Glorious Revolution of 1688."*

86. James spent the remainder of his life at St. Germains, a pensioner on the bounty of the French king. He died there in 1701. His character is variously drawn, in accordance with the partisan views of those who have delineated it. By some, his zeal for his religion is represented as sectarian bigotry, and his ardor in vindicating its freedom becomes perversity and spite. His rash violation of the laws, and his defiance of the constitution of the country, were characteristic of the whole Stuart race, every member of which was distinguished by a blind resistance to public opinion. In these things, James evidently proved that he was incapable of learning by experience. While, therefore, his character cannot be held up to admiration, it should be spared very much of the obloquy to which his indiscretions and the disasters consequent thereon rendered it liable.

Character of James.

87. The navy greatly increased under James II., containing, at the time of the Revolution, one hundred and seventy-three vessels, manned by forty-two thousand seamen. James, who had displayed considerable talents as an admiral, took great interest in this branch of the service, and was the inventor of naval signals. During this and the preceding reign the country advanced greatly in wealth and commerce, and the population of its colonial territories was considerably augmented. Newspapers had been established in the reign of Charles I., but the jealousy and arbitrary conduct of the crown prevented their free publication, and thus the coffee-houses became the chief places for the circulation of news

Navy.

Newspapers.

* So called, although it took place in 1689 (January); because, until 1752, the English commenced the year on the 25th of March.

86. Further history of James II.? His character?

87. Increase of the navy? Commerce? Newspapers? Coffee-houses?

and the discussion of political opinions. On this account the government regarded these places with much suspicion, and at one time made an ineffectual effort to close them.

Coffee-Houses.

88. William, on whom the sole exercise of regal power devolved, although an able sovereign, was deficient in those personal qualities which are needed to acquire popularity; and hence he had scarcely ascended the throne when opposition confronted him from various quarters,—even from some of those who had been instrumental in his elevation. Suspecting disaffection among the Scotch regiments in the English army, he resolved to send them to Holland, and supply their places with Dutch troops. They, however, indignant at the order requiring them to leave the country, mutinied, and marched northward. William promptly dispatched several regiments of Dutch dragoons after them, and compelled them to submit to the order. This caused the passage of the Mutiny Bill, which excluded soldiers from the civil tribunals, and placed them under martial law (1689).

William and Mary. 1689-'94.

WILLIAM III.

89. Although the clergy had been in a great degree instrumental in accomplishing the Revolution, a large number, including the primate and seven bishops, refused to take the oath of allegiance to William, on the ground that they could not be released from the oath which they had previously taken to James. On this account they were called "non-jurors," and were punished by ejectment

Clergy.

88. What is said of William? Difficulty with the Scotch troops? How subdued? The Mutiny Bill?

89. The Non-jurors? The Toleration Act? The Catholics?

from their livings. This led to the passage of the "Toleration Act," by which Protestant dissenters were exempted from the penalties previously incurred by the free exercise of their religion. The disabilities of the Catholics were, however, continued in full force.

Toleration Act.

90. Although William had been acknowledged king by the Scotch convention in Edinburgh, there was a considerable party in favor of James. Under Viscount Dundee (more celebrated as Graham of Claverhouse), an army of Highlanders defeated the royal forces;* but Dundee was slain at the moment of victory, and the insurgents were so much discouraged by his death that they dispersed. The Scots were, accordingly, soon reduced to submission, after which Episcopacy was abolished, Presbyterianism being established in its place (1689). The full pacification of the Highlands was not effected, however, until some time afterward (December, 1691).

Scotch Revolt.

91. In connection with this resistance of the Highlanders, occurred the dreadful "Massacre of Glencoe" (1692). Mac-Ian, chief of the Macdonalds, had delayed to take the oath of allegiance to William until after the time appointed for it; whereupon Sir John Dalrymple, secretary for Scotland, a bitter enemy of the Macdonalds, obtained from the king, by a false statement, an order for the military execution of the whole clan. Accordingly, a body of soldiers entered the valley of Glencoe, slaughtered the chief, and put to the sword all who were unable to escape, including men, women, and children.† The signing of this order very much increased William's unpopularity, and has since subjected his name to considerable obloquy.

Glencoe.

* This battle was fought at a place called Killiecran'kie, at the northwest extremity of a pass in the Grampian mountains.

† Glencoe is situated at Loch Levin, in the western part of Scotland.

90. Insurrection in Scotland? How terminated?

91. Massacre of Glencoe? Its effects?

92. In Ireland the opposition to William was much more general and decided: and James, taking advantage of this circumstance, invaded the island, having been supplied with a large naval force by Louis XIV. of France. He landed at Kinsale (1689), and was received

Irish Revolt.

with great demonstrations of joy by the people; and, his army being soon augmented by large accessions under Tyrconnel, the lord-deputy, he entered Dublin in triumph. Lon-

92. Invasion of Ireland by James II.? Siege of Londonderry? How long did it last? What happened at Enniskillen?

donderry and Enniskillen alone held out against him, the former of which he closely besieged; but the inhabitants, led by a Presbyterian clergyman named Walker, resisted with the greatest fortitude during one hundred and five days, and were at last relieved, the besieging forces being compelled to retire. The inhabitants had suffered the most dreadful hardships during the long siege, and the garrison was reduced from seven thousand to three thousand effective men. The forces of James were also routed at Enniskillen with great loss (1689).

Londonderry.

93. William's general, Marshal Schomberg (*shom'berg*), arrived a few days afterward, and took possession of Carrickfergus. Here he was joined the next year by William with a large army, whereupon the Irish army took up a strong position on the south bank of the Boyne river, and was soon joined by James with 10,000 French troops. William at once proceeded to the attack, and having crossed the river, after a sharp contest routed the enemy (July 1, 1690). Schomberg and Walker, the brave defender of Londonderry, fell in the engagement. The "Battle of the Boyne" virtually decided the fate of James, who immediately afterward fled to Dublin, and thence to Kinsale, from which port he escaped to France in a French frigate. Other important towns soon surrendered, and the next year the whole country submitted to the authority of William (1691).

Battle of the Boyne.

94. The war with France still continued, and William was obliged to spend most of his time on the Continent, leaving the management of affairs in England to Queen Mary. Meanwhile plots were formed by many of the most distinguished men of all parties, Non-Jurors, Tories, and Whigs, to restore James to the throne;

Other Events.

93. Who took Carrickfergus? Battle of the Boyne? Who fell in the action? What was the effect of this battle? What followed it?

94. Absence of William? Plots to dethrone him? By whom were they aided?

and Louis made preparations for the invasion of England, with the same object, being partly induced thereto by the invitation of the duke of Marlborough, who was prominent in these intrigues against the reigning king.

95. The army of invasion consisted of about 30,000 men, principally Irish troops, who, after the pacification of Ireland, had emigrated to France, and the fleet was also very large and powerful. James was quite confident of success, but in an engagement which took place off Cape La Hogue (*hōg*), on the coast of Normandy, the combined Dutch and English fleets, under Admiral Russell, gained a brilliant victory over the French (May, 1692), and the exiled monarch again sought an asylum at the court of Louis. He made no further effort to recover his throne, but passed the remainder of his life in retirement.

French Invasion.

96. The war, however, still went on, and William met with several disastrous losses in his campaigns in Flanders, as well as in the naval engagements which occurred with the French. This encouraged his enemies in England, who were busy in their intrigues with the French. To these misfortunes was added the loss of his queen, who died of small-pox (1694), leaving him sole ruler of the kingdom. Mary was much regretted. She was possessed of many excellent qualities; and as a queen her conduct was very exemplary. As a daughter, she has been deemed unfeeling and ungrateful, since she appeared to be without sympathy for her father's misfortunes. Due consideration must, however, be given to the peculiar circumstances in which she was placed, in passing a judgment on her character and conduct.

Death of Mary.

97. The death of Mary revived the hopes of the friends

95. Army of invasion? Battle of Cape La Hogue? Where is Cape La Hogue? Subsequent proceedings of James II.?

96. Campaign in Flanders? Effect of disasters? Death of Mary? Her character?

97. Effect of Mary's death? William's conduct of the war? Consequences of his success? Peace of Ryswick?

of James II., and several conspiracies were formed in his favor, but they were unsuccessful. William carried on the war against France with great vigor, and gained several splendid victories (1695). This not only discouraged and humbled the French monarch, but frustrated the schemes of his enemies, the Jacobites,* in England. At last, by the treaty of Ryswick,† peace was concluded with France, Louis consenting to resign several of his conquests, and to acknowledge William as king of England (September, 1697).

William III., 1694-1702.

Jacobites.

98. As William had predicted, this treaty only proved a short truce, hostilities being soon renewed. Charles II., king of Spain, having died childless, bequeathed his crown to Philip, duke of Anjou, grandson of Louis XIV. William at first acknowledged the new king of Spain, though with considerable reluctance and dissatisfaction; but the emperor of Germany commenced a war to prevent this increase of the French monarch's power, and finally induced England and Holland to join him in a league, known in history as the "Grand Alliance" (September 7, 1701). A few days after this, James II. died at St. Germains; and Louis at once proclaimed his son king of Great Britain and Ireland (¶ 104), thus violating the peace of Ryswick. Before, however, war was formally declared by Parliament, William met with an accident, which proved fatal. He broke his collar-bone by a fall from his horse, and, in a little over a fortnight afterward, expired (March 8, 1702).

Grand Alliance.

Death of William.

* The Jacobites were those who favored the cause of the dethroned king James (Lat. *Jacobus*), his son and grandson. They were quite numerous in Scotland, and for many years enthusiastically adhered to the house of Stuart, and conspired for its restoration.

† Ryswick is a small town in the western part of Holland, thirty-five miles southwest from Amsterdam. (*See Progressive Map No.* 6.)

98. Renewal of hostilities? The Grand Alliance? Death of James II.? Its consequence? Death of William III.?

99. William was an able sovereign and statesman, as well as a most excellent general, being equally remarkable for sagacity in planning his campaigns and coolness and intrepidity in the time of battle. His frame was feeble, and he constantly suffered from ill health. To all but a very few personal friends his manners were cold and distant, and therefore most of his subjects regarded him with dislike. England, indeed, was always to him a foreign country, which he governed with wisdom, but always so as to gratify his intense ambition and love of military glory. In literature and science he took very little interest. The establishment of a standing army and the accumulation of a great national debt * were some of the results of William's rule and of his expensive foreign wars.

Character.

QUEEN ANNE. (*After Sir G. Kneller.*)

100. In accordance with the terms of the settlement, Anne, wife of Prince George of Denmark, and second daughter of James II., succeeded to the throne. She was thirty-eight years of age, and a member of the Church of England. In her first address to Parliament she expressed

Anne, 1702-'14.

* The first regular loan to the government was £1,200,000, the capital of the Bank of England, incorporated in 1693, having been projected by William Paterson, a Scotchman. At the peace of Ryswick, the national debt of England amounted to twenty million pounds. It is now more than eight hundred millions.

99. Character of William? Standing army and national debt? (See note.)

100. Who was Anne? War of Spanish Succession? Victories of Marlborough? Capture of Gibraltar? (*See Progressive Map No.* 6.)

her desire that England should maintain its place in the Grand Alliance, and war was accordingly declared against France. In this war, known in history as the "War of the Spanish Succession," the duke of Marlborough * had the chief command of the English and Dutch forces. During the first and second campaigns (1702–'3), he made some conquests in Flanders; and in the next (1704), he defeated the French and Bavarians with great loss in the memorable battle of Blenheim † (*blen'-hime*), in which the imperial troops were commanded by the famous Prince Eugene.‡ During the same year the English fleet, under Sir George Rooke, captured Gibral-

DUKE OF MARLBOROUGH.

War of Spanish Succession.

* John Churchill, duke of Marlborough, was the son of a Cavalier, who was in high favor with the duke of York; and he married a young lady who was the special friend and favorite of Anne. When, therefore, the latter ascended the throne, she was so much under the influence of Lady Marlborough and the duke, her husband, that these were regarded as virtually almost the reigning sovereigns, Prince George of Denmark making no interference in English affairs. The correspondence of the queen and her favorite was of the most intimate and confidential character, and was carried on under the names of Mrs. Morley and Mrs. Freeman, the latter name being assumed by the duchess.

† Blenheim is a small village in Bavaria, on the Danube, twenty-three miles west northwest of Augsburg. (*See Progressive Map No.* 6.)

‡ Prince Eugene was born at Paris in 1663. He was the son of Eugene Maurice, count of Soissons, and of Olympia Mancini, niece of Cardinal Mazarin. He entered into the service of the emperor, and soon gained great distinction, especially in the wars with the Turks. He died in 1736. He was small in stature, simple in dress and manner, and kind-hearted in his treatment to his soldiers.

tar; and this strong fortress has ever since remained in the possession of the British.

101. Being badly supported by the imperial army, Marlborough in the following year accomplished but little; but in the next (1706) he gained another brilliant victory over the French at Ramillies (*ram'e-leez*), and by means of it made almost a complete conquest of Flanders. The French also received the same year a terrible overthrow from Prince Eugene at Tu'rin. The year 1708 was signalized by another great victory over the French at Ou'de-nar-de, which was followed the next year by the terrific battle of Malplaquet (*mal-plah'ka*), in which the allied army under Marlborough routed the French, but with the dreadful loss of twenty thousand men. This decided victory finished the war in Flanders (1709).

Marlborough's Victories.

102. While these events were in progress, there had been many other battles by sea and land. The earl of Peterborough,* in conjunction with Sir Cloudesley Shovel, took Barcelona, and the former triumphantly traversed a large part of Spain, everywhere proclaiming Charles III. king (1705). On Shovel's return, a part of the fleet was wrecked on the Scilly Islands, and all on board of the admiral's ship perished (1707). Shovel was a commander of great merit, and had raised himself by his courage and talents from the station of a common sailor. The war lingered for several years, being at last closed by the treaty of Utrecht (*u'trekt*), in 1713. Previous to this Marlborough was recalled; and, being censured by Parliament for

Fall of Marlborough.

* Charles Mordaunt, earl of Peterborough, was one of the most brilliant men of his time, being equally distinguished for his skill as a naval and a military commander. Few generals succeeded in accomplishing so much with such slender means, or displayed an equal degree of genius and originality. He died in 1735.

101. Other victories of Marlborough? Effect of the battle of Malplaquet?

102. Earl of Peterborough? Sir Cloudesley Shovel? Treaty of Utrecht? Disgrace of Marlborough? (See note, page 278.)

his practices in connection with the army contracts and accounts, was dismissed by the queen from all his employments, whereupon he retired from England in disgust, and took up his abode in the Netherlands (1712).* The duchess had before this lost her favor with the queen.

103. During the progress of the war, an important political event occurred at home.

Act of Security.

Disaffection existed in Scotland, and the parliament of that country passed the "Act of Security," providing that the successor to the throne of England, on the queen's death, should not succeed to the throne of Scotland, unless under conditions that would secure the honor and independence of the latter country. This had reference to the settlement already effected† of the English crown on Sophia, wife of the elector of Hanover and granddaughter of James I., to which arrangement there was much opposition in Scotland. Other proceedings tended to actual hostilities between the two countries, and demonstrated the necessity of a closer union between them. This was effected in 1707, by the passage of the "Act of Union," providing

PRINCE EUGENE.

* Marlborough returned to England in 1714, on the accession of George I., and was very enthusiastically received by the people. He died in 1722, possessing a reputation for military skill unsurpassed by that of any other English general. As a politician, however, he was insincere and unprincipled, and his avarice betrayed him into many mean and disgraceful actions. He is said to have been so illiterate that he could not write or even spell his native language correctly.

† By the "Act of Settlement," passed in the latter part of the reign of William III.

103. Disaffection in Scotland? Union of England and Scotland? Provisions contained in the Act of Union?

that the two kingdoms should be united under the name of Great Britain; that the crown should be settled on the Princess Sophia and her heirs, being Protestants; and that there should be but one parliament of the United Kingdom.

Act of Union.

104. To this act the people of Scotland were compelled to submit; but it occasioned great discontent, and James, son of James II., taking advantage of the feeling, obtained from Louis an armament with which he sailed to Scotland, hoping to raise a general insurrection in his favor. On the Continent he was styled the Chevalier de St. George, but the English styled him the Pretender. In history he is known as the "Elder Pretender," to distinguish him from his son, who was called the "Young Pretender." No landing was effected, several of the French vessels being captured by the English fleet under Admiral Byng (1708). James escaped, and for some years made no further effort to accomplish his object.

Pretender.

105. The year after the treaty of Utrecht Queen Anne died, and with her terminated the main Stuart line (1714). She was of middle stature, of dark hair and complexion, and of a heavy, dull expression of features. Her amiable and confiding disposition won for her the title of "Good Queen Anne"; but it subjected her to the influence of wily favorites, who took advantage of her generosity. This was the case with the duchess of Marlborough, who was supplanted by a Mrs. Masham, wife of an officer of the royal household, to whose advice and influence the queen submitted, even in the most important affairs of the government.*

Death of Anne.

Character.

* Mrs. Masham was a cousin of the secretary of state, Robert Harley, and was used by the latter as an instrument to bring about the fall of Marlborough.

104. Effect of the Act of Union in Scotland? The Chevalier de St. George?

105. Death of Queen Anne? Her personal appearance and character? What title did she win? Who were her chief favorites?

106. The reign of Queen Anne was not only distinguished for its military and political events, but was characterized to such an extent by the progress made in science and literature that it has been styled the "Augustan Age of England." Addison, Steele, Bolingbroke, and Swift were the most eminent prose writers of this period. The most distinguished poet was Alexander Pope, who published during this period some of his most admired compositions. His poems are characterized by remarkable terseness and brilliancy of expression as well as keenness of wit. Greenwich Hospital for disabled seamen, which was commenced a short time after the battle of La Hogue, by order of Queen Mary, was finished during the reign of Queen Anne.

Science and Literature.

ALEXANDER POPE.
(*From the portrait by Hudson.*)

Greenwich Hospital.

STATE OF SOCIETY UNDER THE STUARTS.

107. Few nations have undergone so sudden and complete a change in their manners as occurred in England during this period. At the commencement of the century, when James I. ascended the throne, tranquillity, concord, and a general spirit of submission reigned throughout the kingdom; but in a few years all this gave place to faction, fanaticism, and a disposition to rebellion that

Manners.

106. How was the reign of Anne distinguished? Who were the most celebrated writers? Alexander Pope? Greenwich Hospital?

107. Change in manners during this period? Party spirit? Characters imputed by the Cavaliers and Roundheads to each other?

almost amounted to frenzy. The virulence of party animosity was so great that no marriages or alliances of any kind were permitted to take place between the members of the hostile factions. "Your friends, the Cavaliers," said a Parliamentarian to a Royalist, "are very dissolute and debauched." "True," replied the Royalist, "they have the infirmities of men; but your friends, the Roundheads, have the vices of devils—tyranny, rebellion, and spiritual pride."

108. The Cavaliers were indeed gay in their manners and dress, being commonly men of birth and fortune; and they thus presented a marked contrast to the gloomy fanaticism of the Roundheads. The rigid severity of the Presbyterians and Independents permitted no recreations, except such as were afforded by the singing of hymns and psalms. Plays, dances, and all other merry-makings were sinful frivolities; horse-racing and bear-baiting—popular diversions of the time—were wicked enormities. Hence, Colonel Hewson, with pious zeal, marched his regiment into London and killed all the bears; on which incident Butler based a part of his burlesque poem, styled "Hudibras."

Cavaliers.

CAVALIER AND PURITAN.

109. During this period arose also the Quakers, or Friends, a sect founded by George Fox, who was born in 1624. He was by trade a shoemaker; but, feeling a strong inclination toward spiritual contemplations, he abandoned this occupation, and wandered about the country, preaching the doctrines which had been suggested to his

Quakers.

108. Character of the Cavaliers? Of the Roundheads?

109. The Quakers, their origin and peculiarities? How persecuted?

mind during his solitary meditations. Proselytes were soon gained, and a sect formed, peculiar not only in their religious views, but in all their social habits and customs. Their zeal was soon tried by bitter persecution. They were thrown into prison, sometimes into mad-houses; they were pilloried; they were whipped; they were burned in the face, and their tongues bored with red-hot irons; but nothing could overcome their fortitude or quench their enthusiasm.

110. Religious persecution marks the entire period, and led to that emigration which caused the establishment of most of the English colonies in North America. The Puritans fled to Massachusetts to escape the intolerance of James I., and his son's arbitrary zeal. The Catholics, under Lord Baltimore, founded an asylum from English persecution in Maryland; and the Quakers, under William Penn, sought civil and religious freedom amid the wilds and wild men of Pennsylvania.

Emigration.

Lord Baltimore.

111. The superstition and ignorance of the age are clearly but terribly demonstrated by the prevailing belief in witchcraft—perhaps the most awful of popular delusions. After the last heretic had suffered death at the stake (1612), the fires were again lighted for the burning of those charged with the mysterious crime of having dealings with Satan. This strange and fatal delusion was not confined to England, but spread over Europe, and extended to the New England colonies, where (especially at Salem) it raged with peculiar virulence. Between 1640 and 1660, some three or four thousand persons in Europe, it is said, fell victims to this terrible delusion.

Witchcraft.

112. The commerce and navigation of England increased

110. Religious persecution? Effect on the Puritans? On the Catholics? On the Quakers?

111. Witchcraft? How extensively believed in? Number punished for it?

112. Commerce and navigation? Causes of their prosperity? Trade with the American colonies? With the West Indies? Board of Trade?

greatly during the peaceful period of Charles the First's reign. The trade to Guinea, the Levant, and the East Indies was quite large; immense quantities of cloth were annually exported to Turkey; and the English possessed almost the monopoly of the traffic with Spain. Interrupted during the civil wars, commerce soon recovered after the Restoration, and received

Commerce and Navigation.

SHIPS OF WAR IN THE TIME OF CHARLES II.

additional encouragement from the losses sustained by the Dutch. Besides, the prevalence of democratic principles induced many of the gentry to educate their sons to mercantile pursuits, and thus commerce became more honorable than it had ever been at any previous time. The trade with the American colonies soon became considerable. At the close of the century, about 500 vessels were employed in this trade and with the West Indies. Of these, however, some were engaged in the slave trade. Hawkins's voyage to the west coast of Africa, in 1562, marks the beginning of that

inhuman traffic. A board of trade was established in 1670, its first president being the earl of Sandwich.

113. Tea and coffee were introduced from the East,* but for a long time were so expensive that they were used only as luxuries. Ginger, cloves, pepper, and other spices were also brought from the East Indies, and tobacco became an extensive article of commerce. James I., who had a great dislike to its use, wrote a treatise against it, which he called "The Counterblaste to Tobacco," and in which he described it as "a custom loathsome to the eye, hateful to the nose, harmful to the brain, and dangerous to the lungs." Asparagus, artichokes, cauliflowers, and a variety of other vegetables were also introduced into England during this period. Whale-ships visited the shores of Greenland and Spitzbergen, and an extensive trade in whalebone was commenced, the whale previous to this having been valued only for its oil. Madras and Bombay became important centers of the East India trade, Java fell into the hands of the Dutch, but St. Helena became one of the English possessions (1651).

Commercial Products.

114. Next to the capital, the chief seaport was Bristol, and Norwich the chief manufacturing town. Manchester, now the great center of the cotton manufacture, was then a small town of about 6,000 inhabitants; Leeds, the great woolen mart, was but little larger; Sheffield and Birmingham were very small towns; and Liverpool, probably, did not contain 200 seamen. The population of London at the death of Charles II. is estimated at half a million. The streets, narrow, dirty, unpaved, and not lighted till the last year of

Manufacturing Centers.

London.

* Brought into Europe by the Dutch, but introduced into England as a beverage in 1666, by Lords Ossory and Arlington.

113. Introduction of tea and coffee? Spices? Tobacco? Asparagus, etc.? Whale-ships? The East India trade? St. Helena?

114. Important towns their size at the period? Population of London? What was the condition of the streets?

that monarch's reign, were infested with ruffians and robbers, against whom the watchmen, generally old and feeble men, could afford no protection.

115. The first law for the erection of turnpikes was passed in 1662. The roads were exceedingly bad, and traveling consequently was very difficult. Goods were transported in wagons or on pack-horses; passengers were conveyed in stage-coaches, slow, lumbering vehicles, with great difficulty drawn through the mud which filled the roads. In 1669, a "Flying Coach" required thirteen hours to pass between Oxford and London, a distance of fifty-five miles. The inns were numerous and comfortable; but highwaymen, mounted and armed, infested the roads, and were often the confederates of the innkeepers. The postal service commenced in the reign of James I. The post-bags were carried on horseback, traveling at the rate of five miles an hour. A regular postal system was established in 1635 for the more speedy communication of intelligence between England and Scotland, to go and return in six days.

Traveling.

BUTCHER ROW, LONDON.
(*Formerly in the Strand.*)

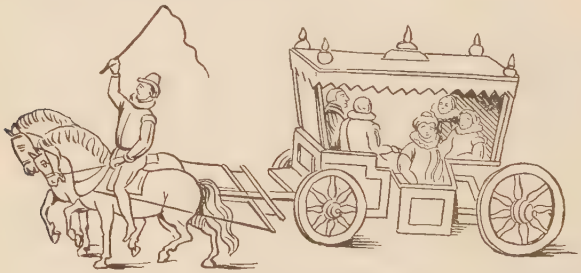
116. The first English newspaper was printed during the session of the Long Parliament (1641), the Star Chamber

115. Turnpikes and roads? Vehicles employed? The Flying Coach of 1669? The inns? Post-bags and post-office?

116. Newspapers, and the liberty of the press?

having previously put effectual restraints upon the publication of intelligence. Liberty of the press was not enjoyed to any extent until 1695; when, the censorship of the press having been abolished, a number of newspapers were at once issued. They were, of course, very small, the entire sheet containing less matter than is now comprised in a single column of a large daily newspaper. King William and his ministers looked with great distrust upon this unprecedented freedom.

Newspapers.



COACH—TIME OF ELIZABETH.

117. During this period, manufacturing industry began to assume that prominence in England which it now possesses. The cotton manufacture was commenced at Manchester, and the art of dyeing woolen cloth was introduced from Flanders, thus saving the nation vast sums of money. New manufactures were also established in iron, brass, silk, paper, etc. The increase of coinage is said to have amounted to upward of ten millions of pounds. A writer, giving an account of this period, remarks that "in 1688 there were on the 'Change more men worth ten thousand pounds than there were in 1650 worth one thousand; and that gentlewomen, in those earlier times, thought themselves well clothed in a serge gown, in which a chambermaid would, in 1688, be ashamed to be seen; and that, besides

Manufactures.

117. Manufacturing industry? What branches were introduced? Coinage? Change in private possessions? Clothing? Coaches?

the great increase of rich clothes, plate, jewels, and household furniture, coaches were in that time augmented a hundredfold."

118. The trade with India and the Levant led to the introduction of many articles of luxury, both in dress and furniture. Carpets, from being used only as covers for tables, came gradually into their present use, although during most of this period rushes or matting constituted the only covering used for floors. The manufacture of oil-cloth was commenced in 1660. The duke of

Arts.

PURITAN COSTUMES.

(*From prints of* 1645 *and* 1649, *and the First Edition of* "*Hudibras.*")

Buckingham introduced the making of glass from Venice. Prince Rupert, who was a zealous patron both of the useful and the fine arts, invented or improved the method of engraving called *mezzotint*. The glass bead called Prince Rupert's Drop derives its name from him.

119. The Stuarts were patrons of the fine arts. The value of pictures is said to have doubled in Europe in con-

118. Effect of trade with India and the Levant? Carpets? Oil-cloth? Glass-making? Engraving in *mezzotint?* Prince Rupert?

119. The fine arts? Inigo Jones? Sir Christopher Wren?

sequence of the competition of Charles I. and Philip IV. of Spain to obtain them. The distinguished Dutch painters Van Dyke and Rubens were invited into England, and received great attention from the court. Inigo Jones and Sir Christopher Wren, the renowned architects, flourished during this period. The former built the beautiful banqueting-house at Whitehall; the latter is especially celebrated as the designer of St. Paul's and many other buildings in London. (See note, page 255.)

Fine Arts.

120. The Royal Society for the Promotion of Science was established during the reign of Charles II., and there arose in England a galaxy of great men, distinguished for their researches in every branch of human knowledge. Boyle, by improving the air-pump, was enabled to make many valuable experiments on the nature and properties of the air; Wallis and Hooke made some valuable improvements in optical instruments; Flamsteed and Halley were eminent as astronomers—the former noted for the catalogue of stars which he made, the latter as the first to predict the return of a comet. Harvey also announced his famous discovery of the circulation of the blood (1619). Above all, however, towered the sublime genius of Newton, the discoverer of the law of universal gravitation.

Science.

SIR ISAAC NEWTON.

120. The Royal Society? What eminent physicists are mentioned? For what distinguished?

121. The number of printing-presses in the kingdom was, however, very small. Books were therefore very scarce and dear, and consequently the booksellers' shops were thronged with readers, as there was a very general taste for the study of both science and literature. There were many distinguished writers besides those already referred to, among whom may be mentioned Sir William Davenant, who succeeded Benjamin Jonson, commonly called Ben Jonson, as poet laureate ;* Abraham Cowley, who at his death (1667) ranked as the first poet of England ; and Robert Herrick, one of the most exquisite of the early English lyric poets. Thomas Fuller, the quaint and witty historian, divine, and essayist, whose writings abound in amusement and instruction ; Jeremy Taylor, the eloquent and pious divine, noted especially as the author of the "Holy Living and Dying ;" and Lord Clarendon, the famous statesman and historian, are the most celebrated among the prose writers of the period. Beaumont and Fletcher, and Philip Massinger, with Shakspeare and Jonson, are particularly eminent for their achievements in the drama.

Books and Literature.

CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

1603. James I. Reigned 22 years.
" Conspiracy in favor of Arabella Stuart.
1605. The Gunpowder Plot. Execution of Guy Fawkes.
1607. Settlement of Jamestown, in Virginia.
1611. Translation of the Bible.
1618. Execution of Sir Walter Raleigh.
1625. Charles I. Reigned 24 years.
1627. Disastrous expedition of the duke of Buckingham.

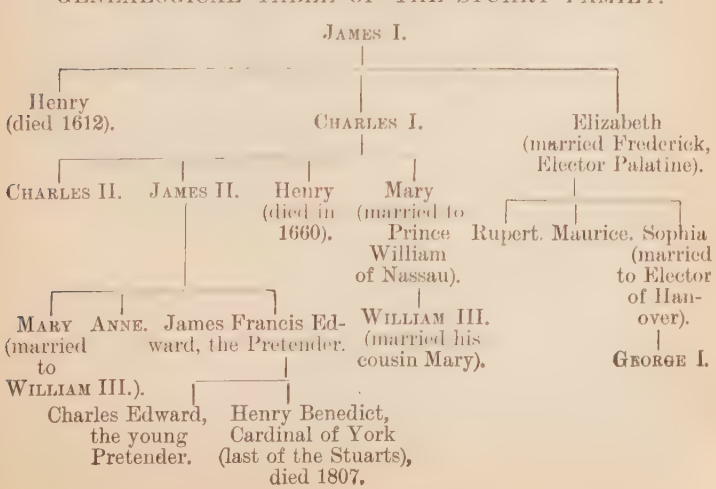
* That is, "crowned with laurel," so called in imitation of the ancient practice of thus rewarding and distinguishing eminent poets. Traces of this appointment are found as early as the reign of Henry III. The office was made a patent one in 1630 by Charles I., who fixed the salary at £100 a year and a tierce of wine. Alfred Austin, novelist, critic, and journalist, succeeded Tennyson (p. 385).

121. Printing-presses ? Books ? Popular taste ? Eminent poets ? Prose writers ? Dramatists ? What is meant by poet laureate ? (See note.)

1628. Petition of Right.
" Assassination of the duke of Buckingham.
1638. Establishment of the Covenant in Scotland.
1640. Parliament called after a cessation of 11 years, and again dissolved.
" Invasion of England by the Scots.
" Meeting of the "Long Parliament" (November 3).
1641. Execution of the earl of Strafford.
1642. Commencement of the Civil War. The king sets up his standard at Nottingham.
" Battle of Edgehill.
1643. Death of the patriot John Hampden.
1644. Battle of Marston Moor.
1645. Execution of Archbishop Laud.
" Battle of Naseby—signal defeat of the Royalists.
1647. The king given up by the Scots.
1648. Colonel Pride's Purge.
1649. Execution of Charles (January 30).
" England proclaimed a commonwealth.
1650. Defeat of the Scots by Cromwell at Dunbar.
1651. Battle of Worcester—Cromwell's "Crowning Mercy."
1652. War with the Dutch. Victories gained by Admiral Blake.
1653. Dissolution of the Long Parliament by Cromwell.
" Cromwell appointed "Lord Protector."
1658. Death of Cromwell (September 3). Richard Cromwell, Protector.
1659. Richard Cromwell resigns the Protectorate.
1660. CHARLES II. The Restoration. Reign of 25 years.
1665. Defeat of the Dutch fleet by James, duke of York.
" Great Plague at London.
1666. Great victory over the combined Dutch and French fleets.
" Great fire at London.
1667. Fall of Clarendon. "The Cabal."
" Publication of Milton's "Paradise Lost."
1668. Triple Alliance between England, Holland, and Sweden.
1673. The Test Act passed by Parliament.
1678. The so-called "Popish Plot."
1679. The Habeas Corpus Act passed.
1683. The Rye-house Plot. Trial and execution of Lord Russell and Algernon Sidney.
1685. JAMES II. Reigned nearly 4 years.
" Battle of Sedgemoor. Execution of the duke of Monmouth.

1688. Trial of the seven bishops.
" Invasion of William, Prince of Orange. Flight and Abdication of James II.
1689. WILLIAM and MARY proclaimed king and queen.
1690. Battle of the Boyne.
1692. Massacre of Glencoe.
" Battle of La Hogue.
1694. Death of Queen Mary.
" WILLIAM III. sole king.
1697. Treaty of Ryswick.
1701. The Grand Alliance formed.
1702. ANNE. Reign of 12 years.
" War of the Spanish Succession.
1704. Battle of Blenheim. Gibraltar taken.
1706. Battle of Ramillies.
1707. Union of England and Scotland.
1708. Battle of Oudenarde.
1709. Battle of Malplaquet.
1711. Marlborough dismissed.
1713. Treaty of Utrecht.
1714. Death of Queen Anne.

GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE STUART FAMILY.



TOPICAL REVIEW.

NARRATIVE.

When did the event occur?
What led to it?
What resulted therefrom?

	PAGE
Arabella Stuart plot	219
Gunpowder plot	220
Settlement of Virginia	221
Recharter of the East India Company	221
Execution of Sir Walter Raleigh	222
Impeachment of Lord Bacon	223
Visit of Prince Charles to Spain	224
Marriage of Charles and Henrietta Maria	224
Translation of the Bible	225
Emigration of Puritans	225
War with Spain	226
Forced loans	226
War with France	226, 227
Assassination of Buckingham	227
Government without parliament	228
Alteration of the liturgy	229
Scottish Covenant signed	229
Calling of the Long Parliament	230
Trial of the earl of Strafford	230
Insurrection of the Irish	232
Charles's attack on Parliament	233, 234
The Great Civil War	235, 236
Battle of Edgehill	236
Battles of Newbury	237, 238
Battle of Naseby	239
Trial and execution of Charles I	242
The Commonwealth established	243
Battle of Worcester	245
Cromwell made Protector	247
Wars with the Dutch	247, 254, 257
Restoration of the monarchy	251
Great Plague and Great Fire	254, 255
The Cabal	256
Popish plot	258
Habeas Corpus Act	259
Rye-House plot	259
Revolution of 1688	267
Massacre of Glencoe	270
Battle of the Boyne	272
Treaty of Ryswick	274
Union of England and Scotland	279

BIOGRAPHICAL.

Who were they?
With what events connected?

	PAGE
Guy Fawkes	220
Robert Carr	222
George Villiers	223, 224, 226, 227
Henrietta Maria	224, 226
Oliver Cromwell	228, 239, 241, 244, 247, 249
Sir Thomas Wentworth	226, 229, 230, 231
Archbishop Laud	229, 230
John Hampden	233
John Pym	233
Prince Rupert	236
Lord Falkland	237
Sir Henry Vane	237
Sir Thomas Fairfax	239, 240
Admiral Blake	245, 246, 248
Richard Cromwell	250
General Monk	245, 250, 251
Sir Edward Hyde	251
Sir William Temple	256 *n*
William of Orange	266
Titus Oates	258
Duke of Monmouth	262, 263
Lord William Russell	260
Algernon Sidney	260
John Milton	261
Judge Jeffreys	264
Duke of Marlborough	276 *n*, 277

GEOGRAPHICAL.

Where are they situated?
With what events connected?

Rochelle	227
Tyne River	230
Edgehill	236
Worcester	236, 245
Newbury	237, 238
Marston Moor	238
Naseby	239
Dunbar	240
Newark	240
Dunkirk	248, 253
Spanish Netherlands	256 *n*
Sedgemoor	263
Torbay	266

SECTION III.

THE HOUSE OF BRUNSWICK.

Extending from the Accession of George I. (1714) *to the Present Time.*

1. George I. was the son of the duke of Brunswick, elector of Hanover, and of Sophia, granddaughter of James I. To this king England seemed always a foreign country, for the people and institutions of which he had very little sympathy or regard. He was fifty-four years of age when he commenced to reign in England, which on his accession became united to Hanover.

George I., 1714–'27.

GEORGE I.
(*From a print after Sir G. Kneller.*)

The Jacobites excited an insurrection in Scotland in order to place on the English throne James, the Pretender, who had been promised important aid by Louis XIV. (1715). The death of that monarch, however, disappointed the hopes of James, and he landed in Scotland without men or money.

Jacobites.

2. The earl of Mar held the Highlands with 10,000 clansmen, and the earl of Derwentwater made an effort to arouse the people of Northumberland in favor of James; but at the very first approach of the royal army, under the duke of Argyle,

Pretender.

1. Who was George I.? What is said of him? What caused an insurrection in Scotland? Where is Hanover? (*See Progressive Map No.* 6.)

2. Who were the leaders? What was the result? What punishments were inflicted? What further is said of the Pretender?

the Pretender and Mar fled to France, leaving their adherents to their fate. Derwentwater and some others were taken and executed, the estates of many were confiscated, and more than a thousand were banished to North America. A short time afterward a treaty of alliance was entered into between England and France, and in consequence of it the Pretender was obliged to seek an asylum elsewhere. He subsequently resided principally at Rome, and soon afterward contracted a marriage with the daughter of John Sobies'ki, the late king of Poland.

3. England, through her connection with Hanover, became embroiled with Sweden and Spain. Certain Danish provinces had been ceded to George which Charles XII., king of Sweden, claimed as his own; and on his return to his country, after his long exile in Turkey, he threatened hostilities unless they were restored. Unable to cope with the English fleet in the Baltic, he entered into a scheme with Cardinal Albero'ni, prime-minister of Spain, to place the Pretender on the English throne; and accordingly the latter visited Madrid, and was publicly recognized as King James III. Charles was to furnish a large army in order to invade Scotland, and the Spanish fleets were to attack England. The defeat, however, of the Spanish fleet by Admiral Byng (1718), and the death of Charles XII., rendered the whole scheme abortive.

4. One of the most noted occurrences of this reign was the South Sea scheme. This was the project of a corporation, called the South Sea Company, to pay off the national debt, then about £53,000,000, by profitable mercantile enterprises with the Spaniards in South America. The government gave its consent

South Sea Scheme.

3. What caused the difficulty with Sweden? What plan did Charles XII. adopt? What caused its failure?

4. South Sea scheme? Effect of the rage for speculation? What caused the death of Lord Stanhope? By whom was he succeeded?

to the scheme, and allowed its stock to be exchanged for the company's stock, which, in consequence of the rage for speculation pervading all classes of the people, reached the extraordinary premium of nine hundred per cent. The bubble, however, soon burst, and occasioned for a time widespread embarrassment and ruin (1720). The king and his prime minister, Lord Stanhope, were charged with having connived at this fraud; and the latter, in the excitement of vindicating himself before the House of Lords, burst a blood-vessel, and died in a few hours (1721). He was succeeded by Sir Robert Walpole, who continued thereafter to direct the government for more than twenty years.

5. The king was much attached to Hanover, and made frequent visits thither. His death occurred in Germany in 1727. His queen, Sophia Dorothea, had died a few months before, after a captivity of more than thirty years, in a gloomy castle near Hanover, in which she had been imprisoned by her husband on a charge of infidelity.* George I. never gained the regard of his subjects. He was sullen and reserved; and, having but little knowledge of the English language, appeared to great disadvantage in contrast with those who had been trained in the elegant and literary society of the preceding reign. He was succeeded by his son, who was also named George. Sir Isaac Newton, the renowned mathematician, astronomer, and physicist, flourished during this and the three preceding reigns, dying in 1727 at the age of eighty-five. His discovery of the law of gravitation was made during the reign of Charles II.

King's Death.

Character.

Newton.

* The king was on his way to Hanover with his favorite, the duchess of Kendal, when a letter was thrown into his coach. It had been written by his wife in her last illness, and in it she protested her innocence, charged him with cruelty, and summoned him to meet her within a year before the divine tribunal. The alarm thus caused brought on a fit of apoplexy, of which he died.

5. Death of the king? Queen Sophia? Character of George I.? His successor? Sir Isaac Newton? During what reigns did he live?

6. George II. succeeded his father at the age of forty-six years.* Sir Robert Walpole continued to administer the government, having been retained in office through the friendship of Queen Caroline, whose influence over the king was so great that until her death, in 1737, she may be said to have ruled England. She was remarkable for the grace and dignity of her manners, and her conduct was characterized by kindness of heart, good sense, and propriety. Walpole's administration was one of peace, and of great service to the kingdom, but his parliamentary tactics depended for success upon bribery and corruption. By bestowing titles of honor, places of profit, or sums of money, he always succeeded in commanding a majority in Parliament.

George II., 1727–'60.

Queen Caroline.

GEORGE II.

7. A contest with Spain occurred during his administra-

* Walpole, on horseback and cased in jack-boots, hurried to inform the second George of his father's death. "The master was asleep after his dinner. He always slept after dinner, and woe to the person who interrupted him. Nevertheless, our stout friend of the jack-boots opened the forbidden door of the bedroom, wherein upon the bed lay a little gentleman, and here the eager messenger knelt down in his jack-boots. He on the bed started up, and with many oaths and a strong German accent asked who was there, and who dared to disturb him. 'I am Sir Robert Walpole,' said the messenger. The awakened sleeper hated Sir Robert. 'I have the honor to announce to your majesty that your royal father died on Saturday last.' '*Dat is one big lie*,' roared out his sacred majesty King George II.; but Sir Robert Walpole stated the fact, and from that day until three-and-thirty years after, George, the second of the name, ruled over England."—Thackeray's *Four Georges*.

6. George II.? Sir Robert Walpole? His administration? Queen Caroline?

7. War with Spain? Georgia? What did Admiral Vernon accomplish? Commodore Anson? (See note, page 297.)

tion, brought on by a dispute with respect to the boundary of the American colony Georgia, which had been settled by General Oglethorpe * in 1733, and named after the king; and by the efforts made by Spain to check the trade between England and the Spanish colonies in America, British ships being stopped on the ocean and searched by the Spaniards. Admiral Vernon, who was sent out with a fleet to attack the Spanish settlements, captured Porto Bello, on the Isthmus of Darien (now Panama) (1739). He afterward attacked Carthagena,† the strongest of these settlements; but, after destroying most of its forts, was compelled to retire (1741). Another squadron, under Commodore Anson,‡ took and destroyed one of the Spanish cities in Peru, and, together with other prizes, captured an East India galleon carrying a cargo valued at £300,000. Anson was engaged in this expedition nearly four years, returning by way of the Cape of Good Hope, thus completing the circumnavigation of the globe (1740–'44).

Spanish War.

8. Meanwhile England had become involved in a continental war. On the death of Charles VI., emperor of Germany (1740), Louis XV., king of France, setting aside the hereditary rights of Maria Theresa (*te-re'zah*), the emperor's daughter, to the Austrian states, supported the claims to them advanced by the elector of

War of the Austrian Succession.

* Oglethorpe was born in 1688, and served with Prince Eugene as aide-de-camp. He made a vigorous defense of Georgia against the Spaniards in Florida, and afterward served against the rebels in Scotland. He died in 1785, at the advanced age of ninety-seven.

† Carthagena, or Cartagena, is a considerable town on the northern coast of South America, now in the United States of Colombia.

‡ One of the most distinguished of England's naval officers. Besides the exploit referred to, he performed several others which reflected upon him great glory. His services were rewarded by a title by George II. Lord Anson died in 1762, immensely popular, not only on account of his great achievements, but by reason of his simple manners and artless character. It was jocosely said of him that he had been round the world, but never in it.

8. What led to the war of the Austrian Succession? Who resigned?

Bavaria, who was raised to the imperial throne.* The young and beautiful princess, taking refuge among the Hungarians, appeared in their assembly with her infant in her arms; and they answered her appeal by proclaiming her queen, and enthusiastically drew their swords to sustain her cause. England, also supporting the cause of the Austrian princess, was involved in a war with France. This war is called in history the "War of the Austrian Succession." Sir Robert Walpole, being opposed to the interference of England in this war, resigned his office (1742).

IN THE STOCKS.†

9. George II., who had served under Marlborough, joined the allied army of English and Germans, to aid in the defense of the Hungarian queen, and took part in the battle of Dettingen‡ (*det'ting-en*), which resulted in the defeat of the

* This elector of Bavaria was the son of him who had fought against Marlborough, and was thus viewed as an hereditary enemy of England; and, moreover, his success, it was thought by the English statesmen, would imperil the safety of the European states, inasmuch as it would increase the influence of France, and thus destroy the "balance of power."

† The stocks and the pillory were instruments for the punishment of criminals guilty of "forestalling, using deceitful weights, perjury, forgery," and other crimes. The pillory was in use in England before the Norman conquest, and till 1837. It was also used in France and Germany. "Being pilloried was a real punishment or not, according to the number of the criminal's personal friends or enemies. The former sometimes rallied in force, fed him, sheltered him from the weather, and turned the affair into a triumph; the latter often pelted him with rotten eggs and stones." (See cut, page 299.)

‡ Dettingen is a village of Bavaria, on the Main river, east of Frankfort.

9. Battle of Dettingen? What naval action occurred? What campaign followed? Battle of Fontenoy? What American fortress was taken?

French (1743). This was the last occasion on which a king of England took the command of an army in person. The next year an indecisive action was fought between the English fleet, under Admiral Matthews, and the combined French and Spanish fleets, off Toulon. This was followed by a campaign in Flanders, in which the allies (England, Holland, and Austria), under the duke of Cumberland, second son of George II., were defeated by the French under Marshal Saxe (*sax*), in the memorable battle of Fontenoy* (*fon-ta-nwah'*) (1745). The operations of this war also extended to the American colonies; and Louisburg, an important French fortress, in Nova Scotia, called from its strength the "Gibraltar of America," was captured (1745), but it was held only till the end of the war. (See ¶ 13, page 302.)

IN THE PILLORY.

10. After the battle of Fontenoy, the English troops were called from the continent to defend their own country against an invasion and rebellion on behalf of the exiled Stuarts. The year previous the French had collected a fleet which was to aid an army under Marshal Saxe in the invasion of England; but, the fleet having been dispersed in a storm, the attempt was abandoned. Charles Edward, son of the Pretender, however, determined to make an effort to recover the English throne for his father.

Charles, Pretender.

* Fontenoy is a village of Belgium, forty-three miles southwest from Brussels, about half way between Oudenarde and Malplaquet. (See map of France, page 73.)

10. Attempt of the Stuarts to regain the throne? Invasion by Charles Edward? What was done by him?

He sailed for Scotland with a few friends, and landed near Inverness, without money, arms, or supplies; but he was soon joined by several Highland chieftains with their clans, among whom was the celebrated Cameron of Lochiel (*lok-heel'*). Having entered Edinburgh and taken some other of the Scottish towns, he caused his father to be proclaimed king of Scotland under the title of James VIII. (1745).

11. Soon after this he met the royal forces, under Sir John Cope, at Preston Pans, and defeated them with great loss. This alarmed the English; and George II. having hurriedly returned from Hanover, a considerable force was collected, and placed under the duke of Cumberland, second son of the king. Meanwhile Charles, after some delay, crossed the border, and marched within one hundred and thirty miles of London, occasioning a very great panic in that city, the king himself preparing for flight. Charles's officers, however, refused to proceed; and he was compelled, though with great reluctance, to withdraw his forces to the northern part of Scotland. The royal army pursued, and an engagement took place at Culloden, in which the "Young Pretender" and his adherents were entirely defeated (1746).*

Culloden.

* "This never-to-be-forgotten battle, which struck the death-blow to the cause of the Stuarts, was fought on the 16th of April, 1746. After many gallant charges, the Highlanders were overpowered by the superior discipline of the king's troops, under the command of the duke of Cumberland, and totally defeated. Twelve hundred are said to have been slain or wounded on the field or in the pursuit. The road as far as Inverness was strewn with dead bodies, and a great number of people, who from motives of curiosity had come to see the battle, were sacrificed to the indiscriminating vengeance of the victors. Provoked by former disgraces, the soldiers were actuated by the most savage thirst for vengeance. Not contented with the blood which was profusely shed in the heat of action, they traversed the field after the battle, and massacred those miserable wretches who lay maimed and expiring. Detachments were sent off on all hands to hunt down the fugitives, and lay waste the country with fire and sword."—Hume's *History of England.*

11. What victory did he gain? The effect of it? What led to the battle of Culloden? Its result? Where is Culloden? (*See Progressive Map No.* 5.)

12. This was the last battle fought on the soil of Great Britain, and closed the long struggle made by the Stuarts to regain their lost throne. Charles wandered in disguise through the country for five months; but at last, though his secret was intrusted to several hundred persons, and a reward of £30,000 had been offered for his capture, he succeeded in effecting his escape to France.* Many of those engaged in this rebellion were condemned and either executed or transported. Among those who suffered death were Lord Lovat,† and some of the other Scottish nobles.

Escape of Charles.

13. A treaty of peace was made with France at Aix-la-Chapelle (1748), by which Maria Theresa's claim to the throne was confirmed; but the war was soon afterward renewed in consequence of disputes respecting the boundary of the French and English possessions in North America. In 1755, General Braddock was defeated by the French in an expedition against Fort du Quesne (*doo-kane'*), and the survivors owed their escape to the courage and skill of George Washington, then an officer in the Virginia militia. General Johnson gained a victory over the

War Renewed.

* Charles Edward spent the remainder of his life principally at Rome, bearing the title of duke of Albany. In his later years he gave himself up to intemperance, and died of apoplexy in 1788. Nineteen years afterward his brother Henry, cardinal of York, the last male heir of the Stuart line, expired. In St. Peter's, at Rome, a monument by Canova still bears the three empty titles, *James III.*, *Charles III.*, *Henry IX.*, of England.

† Simon Fraser, Lord Lovat, had been for some time a noted character. Selfish and treacherous, he appears to have been actuated only by the desire of aggrandizing himself. In Queen Anne's reign he had engaged in a scheme to gain money by revealing a pretended plot in favor of the exiled Stuarts. In 1715 he joined the government side, and in 1745 he endeavored to play a double game, sending out his clan under the command of his son, while he pretended to support the government.

12. What is said of the battle? Escape of Charles? What punishment was inflicted upon his adherents? Lord Lovat? (See note.)

13. What treaty was made with France? What led to a renewal of the war? What events occurred in North America?

French and Indians at the head of Lake George, Baron Dieskau (*de-es-ko'*), the French commander, being wounded and taken prisoner. An expedition under Colonel Monckton (*monk'tun*), the same year, drove the French from Nova Scotia (1755), and Louisburg was again taken after a siege of one month (1758). In 1759, General Wolfe succeeded in reaching the "Plains of Abraham" with his army, and defeated the French forces under the marquis of Montcalm (*mont-kam'*). Both the generals were mortally wounded. Quebec capitulated after this victory, which virtually gave the possession of Canada to the English.

SCALING THE HEIGHTS OF ABRAHAM.

14. Meanwhile England had taken part in the famous "Seven Years' War," brought on by a coalition of France and several of the other European states against Frederick the Great of Prussia. England, principally with the object of defending the electorate of Hanover, formed an alliance with the Prussian monarch, and, under the able administration of William

Seven Years' War.

14. What European war had broken out? Its cause? Connection of England with it? Administration of William Pitt? Ill success of the duke of Cumberland? Events of the next year?

Pitt, afterward earl of Chatham, the government displayed great vigor and enterprise. The want of success, however, of the duke of Cumberland enabled the French to overrun Hanover (1757), at which the king was so indignant that he treated his son with the greatest coldness. Offended at this treatment, the victor of Culloden resigned all his offices, and went into retirement. Hanover was recovered the next year, and important advantages were gained by Frederick.

15. The French having threatened to invade England, Pitt sent an expedition against Cherbourg (*sher'burg*), which was captured, and a large quantity of ammunition and other stores destroyed. Some of the other French ports were also attacked, but not with the same success (1758). The English fleets, under Admirals Rodney, Bos'ca-wen, and Hawke, gained some signal victories during the following year, and the army sent by Pitt into Germany to co-operate with the Prussians defeated the enemy with great loss in the battle of Minden,* where the victory would have been still more decided had Lord Sackville, who commanded the cavalry, obeyed the instructions given him to charge the routed army. For this failure he was dismissed by Pitt from all his employments (1759).

Naval Victories.

16. These events, combined with the glorious achievements of Wolfe in America, shed a peculiar luster over the close of this reign. George II. died suddenly the following year at the advanced age of seventy-seven (October 25, 1760). Although, during the whole of his reign, he remained thoroughly German in character, he was by no means as unpopular as his father had been;

Death of George II.

* Minden is a strongly fortified town of Prussia, on the Weser river, near the frontier of Hanover. (*See Progressive Map No. 6.*)

15. Expeditions against the French ports? What admirals gained victories? In what battle was a victory gained? What was the conduct of Lord Sackville? How was he punished?

16. What shed a luster on the close of George II.'s reign? His death? His character? Who was his successor?

for his subjects admired his courage, skill, and activity as a soldier, while his good nature was such as to excite their affection and esteem. Hence, with the exception of the partisans of the Stuarts, all were well inclined toward him; and the foreign wars in which he engaged, although not undertaken in the interest of England, were borne by the people with patience. His son, Frederick, having died some years before (1751), he was succeeded by his grandson George—the first of the Brunswick kings that was a native of England.*

Character.

17. The reign of George II. is particularly memorable for the conquests made by the English in India. Their first settlements had been compelled to struggle against the jealous opposition of the Portuguese and Dutch; but at this time they had to contend with a more powerful rival—the French. During the war of the Austrian Succession, Fort St. George, at Madras, was captured by the French, but was given back by the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle. The struggle soon recommenced, the French allying themselves with the native princes against the English. Previous to this time Au-rung-zēbe′, the Great Mogul, who gave himself the title of *Alum-Geer*, "Con-

Conquests in India.

* "It is related that, on the morning of the 25th of October, George, Prince of Wales, taking an early ride in the neighborhood of Kew, where he was residing, a messenger came to him bearing a note from a German valet-de-chambre who was about the person of George II., which note bore a private mark, as previously agreed, that declared the king was dead. The prince, suddenly becoming George III., showed no surprise or emotion; dropped no word to indicate what had happened; but, saying his horse was lame, turned back to Kew; and, dismounting, thus addressed his groom: 'I have said this horse is lame; I forbid you to say to the contrary.' This is Walpole's relation, and this his comment: 'The first moment of the new reign afforded a symptom of the prince's character; of that cool dissimulation in which he had been so well initiated by his mother, and which comprehended almost the whole of what she had taught him.'"—Knight's *History of England*.

17. For what is this reign distinguished? With whom had the English to contend? Fort St. George? Who was Aurungzebe? His assumed title? His empire?

queror of the World," and who had usurped the imperial power at Delhi (1658), had raised his empire to the highest pitch of splendor and greatness; but, under his feeble and dissolute successors, it fell rapidly to pieces, and the viceroys of the provinces usurped the power of independent rulers.

18. Of these the nabob of Arcot, a city of one hundred thousand inhabitants, the capital of the Carnatic,* alone

* The Carnatic was one of the old divisions of India, extending one hundred and ten miles along the east coast, and consisting of eight of the present districts of the Presidency of Madras. Its greatest breadth was about one hundred and ten miles.

18. What was accomplished by Robert Clive? Where is Arcot? Madras? Calcutta? (See map of British India.)

remained friendly to the English ; and he, being attacked by the French and their Indian allies, was on the point of surrendering, when Robert Clive,* by one of the most daring expeditions recorded in history, restored the influence of his countrymen. With a band of five hundred men, most of them Sepoys, or native soldiers, he attacked and took Arcot, and subsequently repulsed the French, who made a strong effort to regain its possession (1751). A few years later, when Calcutta had been taken by the nabob Su-ra'jah Dow'-lah, and the English prisoners confined and stifled in the garrison prison, called the "Black Hole" (1756),† Clive, with his accustomed energy and dispatch, fitted out an expedition at Madras, and, marching to Calcutta, regained possession of the town and the English fort (1757).

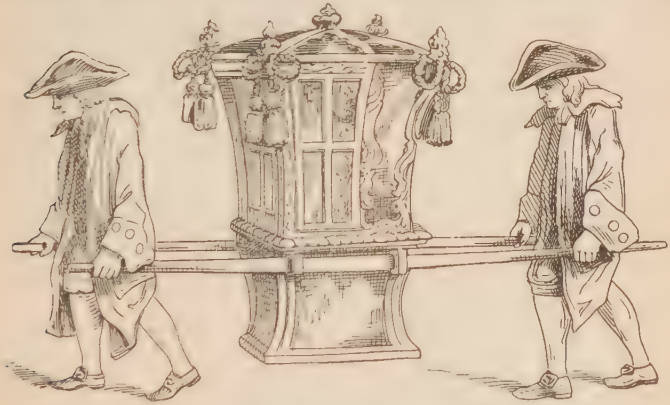
19. Assisted by Admiral Watson, he prosecuted the war in northern India with the utmost vigor and daring ; and in the memorable battle of Plassey completely defeated the native army, fifty thousand strong, under Surajah Dowlah,

* Clive was one of the greatest of the warriors and statesmen who took part in the conquest of India. He was at first employed as a clerk in the civil service at Madras, but joyfully abandoned the pen for the sword on the breaking out of the troubles with the French in 1751. On his return to England in 1760, he was made Baron of Plassey, and lived in great splendor on the immense wealth which he had acquired in the East. The East India Company's affairs having become deranged, from the dishonesty and inefficiency of its servants, he was chosen, in 1764, to set them right. This was accomplished within a very brief period, and he again returned to England in 1767. Soon afterward his conduct was brought under parliamentary censure, and Clive, smarting with the disgrace, committed suicide (November 22, 1774).

† The prisoners, one hundred and forty-six in number, including one woman, were thrust into this dreadful dungeon, only eighteen feet by fourteen, with two small windows, and shut up there during a night of intense heat. The sufferings of these wretched beings, from thirst and suffocation, were terrible ; and in the morning only twenty-three remained alive, among whom was the Englishwoman. This dreadful outrage excited universal indignation against the monster by whom it was perpetrated.

19. Other achievements of Clive ? Effect of the battle of Plassey ? How was the control of the Carnatic gained ? Sir Eyre Coote ? (See note, page 307.)

with a force of about three thousand (June 23, 1757). This splendid victory broke the power of the native princes in Bengal, and gave that province to the English. Three years afterward, another victory was gained by the English under Sir Eyre Coote;* and Pondicherry (*pon-de-sher'ry*), some months later, having been taken from the French, British supremacy was likewise established in the Carnatic (1760).



SEDAN CHAIR, OF THE DATE OF 1755.

(*From a print of Hanover Square, in the British Museum.*)

These great achievements were announced in England shortly after the death of George II.

20. During this and the preceding reign English literature was enriched by the publication of many works of genius. Daniel Defoe wrote his principal work, "Robinson Crusoe" (1719); Jonathan Swift, dean of St. Patrick's, Dublin, noted for his eccentricity and

Literature.

* Sir Eyre Coote had served with distinction against the rebels in Scotland in 1745. He was present at the battle of Plassey, and greatly distinguished himself. He afterward served as commander-in-chief in India, where he died in 1783. A monument was erected to him in Westminster Abbey.

20. English literature? What authors flourished during the reign of the first two Georges? Mention their principal works?

the bitterness of his satires, published "Gulliver's Travels" (1726) and many other works showing great power and fertility; James Thomson, the poet of nature, gave to the world the "Seasons" (1726–'30); Isaac Watts published "Divine Songs for Children"; Bishop Butler wrote the "Analogy of Religion to Nature," a work greatly celebrated for its justness of reasoning; and Richard Bentley, the profound classical scholar and critic, published many learned dissertations, with reference to one of which Swift wrote the famous "Battle of the Books." "The Grave," by Robert Blair, is also a noted work of this period, being greatly prized as one of the finest specimens of blank verse of the century.

21. George III. ascended the throne at a time of great rejoicing for the glorious victories gained in North America and India. Wolfe in one, and Clive in the other, had shed the most resplendent luster on the English arms; but their successes were in great part due to the able administration of the "Great Commoner," as the people were fond of styling the illustrious prime minister, William Pitt, afterward earl of Chatham. The French being now seriously embarrassed by their defeats entered into an alliance with Spain, called the Family Compact, since the kings were all of the Bourbon family (1761). Pitt on learning this urged an immediate declaration of war against Spain, but was overruled in the council. He therefore resigned, and was succeeded by the earl of Bute, the former tutor and now the especial favorite of the king.*

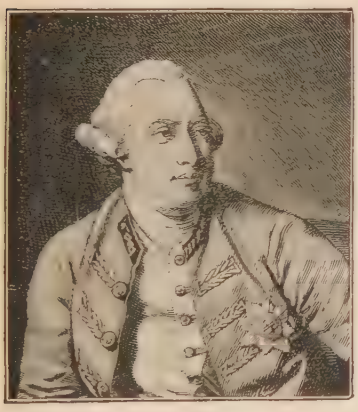
George III., 1760-1820.

* "On Monday, the fifth day of October (1761), William Pitt, now venerable from years and glory, the greatest minister of his century, one of the few very great men of his age, among orators the only peer of Demosthenes, the man without title or fortune, who, finding England in an abyss of weakness and disgrace, conquered Canada and the Ohio valley and Guadaloupe, and sustained Prussia from annihilation, humbled France, gained the dominion of the seas, won supremacy in Hindostan, and at home vanquished faction, stood

21. What is said of the time of George III.'s accession? The "Great Commoner"? What caused his resignation? Who was his successor?

22. In the same year the king married Charlotte, a German princess, of Mecklenburg-Strelitz, then only seventeen years of age, but intelligent and amiable. She had won, it is said, the affections of George while Prince of Wales, by a letter* which she wrote to Frederick the Great, and in which she besought him to stop the ravages of war then desolating her own and other German states, the people suffering inconceivable miseries from the cruelty of the merciless Prussian soldiery.

Queen Charlotte.



GEORGE III.

23. Notwithstanding the retirement of Pitt, the war with Spain could not be avoided, and was entered into with spirit. Several of the islands of the West Indies were captured, and the city of Havana taken, after a desperate siege. The Philippine

in the presence of George to resign his power. It was a moment to test the self-possession and manly vigor of the young and inexperienced king. He received the seals with ease and firmness, without requesting that Pitt should resume his office; yet he manifested concern for the loss of so valuable a minister, approved his past services, and made him an unlimited offer of rewards. . . . Thus he retired, having destroyed the balance of the European colonial system by the ascendency of England, confirmed the implacable hostility of France and Spain to his country, and impaired his own popularity by accepting a pension and surrendering his family as hostages to the aristocracy."—Bancroft's *History of the United States.*

* "A letter containing the most feeble commonplaces about the horrors of war, and the most trivial remarks on the blessings of peace—a beautiful letter without a single blot, for which the little princess was to be rewarded, like the heroine of the old spelling-book story."—Thackeray's *Four Georges.*

22. Marriage of the king? Princess Charlotte's letter to Frederick the Great?

23. War with Spain? What captures were made? Peace of Paris? What led to Bute's resignation? Who was his successor?

Islands were also captured, and many rich Spanish prizes made on the ocean. These successes, however, were of little avail; for Bute, alarmed at the vast increase of the national debt (now amounting to one hundred and forty millions sterling), consented to a treaty, which was made at Paris (February 10, 1763), thus terminating the "Seven Years' War." The restoration of Havana and some of the other conquests made this treaty very displeasing to the people; and Bute, frightened by the storm of execration which assailed him, resigned his office, and was succeeded as premier by George Grenville, whose impolitic measures brought great disasters upon the country (1763).

24. The statements made by the king in his speech from the throne having been violently attacked in a scurrilous journal styled the *North Briton*, and edited by John Wilkes, a member of Parliament, Wilkes was arrested and thrown into the Tower. He was, however, discharged on account of his privilege as a member of Parliament; but at the next session, the Commons decided that the publication was "a false, scandalous, and malicious libel," and ordered it to be burned by the hangman; and Wilkes himself was expelled from the House by a unanimous vote. Nevertheless, the prosecution was impolitic, Wilkes being supported by the people, on account of their intense dislike of the administration, and subsequently he was again returned to Parliament, and afterward elected Lord Mayor of London.

John Wilkes.

25. The most impolitic measure of the government was the passage of the celebrated "Stamp Act," for the purpose of raising a revenue by taxing the American colonies (1765). The people of the colonies resisted the measure on the ground that they were not represented in the English Parliament, and "that taxation and representa-

Stamp Act.

24. John Wilkes and the *North Briton?* Action of Parliament? Result of the prosecution of Wilkes? Cause of his popularity?

25. The Stamp Act? Why opposed by the colonists? Why repealed? What other law was passed? Its effect?

tion, by the British constitution, are inseparable." Pitt attacked the measure with great vigor and eloquence, and, Grenville having resigned, the act was repealed (1766). Pitt, now earl of Chatham, became premier, but, during his absence from illness, the ministry again attempted to compel the colonies to assist in raising supplies for the English government, imposing a tax upon tea, glass, paper, and painters' colors (1767). A storm of opposition was excited by this measure, and soon afterward, Chatham having resigned, the duties were withdrawn from all articles except tea, which was taxed at the rate of three pence per pound (1770).

26. This was not satisfactory to the people of the colonies, since they contended not against the amount of taxes imposed, but against the principle, which involved the right to tax them to an unlimited extent without their consent. By an arrangement made by the prime minister, Lord North, the East India Company, which had large stores of tea in its warehouses, sent several shiploads to America, to be sold to the colonists on easy terms, but to be still liable to the duty. This occasioned increased opposition. The tea for New York and Philadelphia was sent back to London without being landed; in Charleston it was stored in cellars, where it perished; and in Boston a party of men, disguised as Indians, boarded the ships, broke open the chests of tea, and emptied their contents into the water (December, 1773).

Tax on Tea.

27. In retaliation for this act of bold defiance, the English government passed the Boston Port Bill, by which that port was closed to all commerce, and the seat of the colonial government of Massachusetts was removed to Salem. The people of Salem, unwilling to thrive at the expense of their neighbors, offered

Boston Port Bill.

26. Why was the repeal unsatisfactory? Why were large quantities of tea sent to America? What was done with it?

27. The Boston Port Bill? Conduct of the people of Salem? Of Marblehead? What other act was passed by Parliament?

the free use of their wharves to the Boston merchants; and Marblehead, fifteen miles distant from the despoiled town, made a similar offer. Other acts, which were considered gross violations of the charters and rightful privileges of the colonies, were also passed by Parliament. Among these was one for quartering the king's troops on the colonists.

28. The resistance which the Americans made to these obnoxious measures was encouraged by many of the leading men in Parliament, among whom were the earl of Chatham, in the House of Lords, and Edmund Burke and Charles James Fox, in the House of Commons. The ministry, however, under Lord North, were determined to reduce the colonies to obedience, and thus was brought on the war of the American Revolution, which commenced at Lexington, Massachusetts (April 19, 1775). This was soon followed by the battle of Bunker Hill (more properly, Breed's Hill), in which the American militia, though with great difficulty, were driven from their position and compelled to retreat (June 17th). A few weeks later George Washington, by appointment from the Colonial Congress, assumed command of the army, and in the month of March following compelled the British army, under General Howe, to evacuate Boston (1776).

American Revolution.

29. The same year, the thirteen colonies, through their representatives in Congress, declared their independence (July 4th), a short time after which Lord Howe arrived with a fleet off the harbor of New York. He and his brother, General Howe, had been commissioned to grant pardons to all who would lay down their arms and return to their allegiance; and, accordingly, they issued a proclamation to the people to that effect, and sent letters to Washington. The latter, however, were not received, as they were addressed to "G. Wash-

28. By whom were the colonists supported? When and where did the war commence? Battle of Bunker Hill? Washington's first achievement?

29. When was the Declaration of Independence adopted? What followed? Letters of Howe? What foreign troops were employed?

ington, Esq.," thus avoiding any recognition of his position as general. Previously to this, the British government had sent over a large body of German troops, hired from the Landgrave of Hesse, the duke of Brunswick, and other petty German sovereigns, to aid in subduing the colonies.

30. A series of disastrous defeats to the Americans followed, and the cities of New York and Philadelphia fell successively into the hands of the British; but General Burgoyne, invading the States from Canada, was effectually checked at Saratoga by the Americans under General Gates, and compelled to surrender his entire army (October 17, 1777). This important victory secured for the States the alliance and aid of France, as well as the acknowledgment of their independence by that power (1778). The war, however, continued for several years, until the British army, under Cornwallis, having surrendered at Yorktown to the combined forces of the Americans and French (October 19, 1781), the English government could no longer withstand the demands of the people that no further attempt should be made to reduce the insurgent colonies.

Burgoyne

Cornwallis.

31. A preliminary treaty was shortly afterward made, acknowledging their independence (November 30, 1782), and a definitive treaty was signed at Paris (September 3, 1783). By the terms of this treaty, the northern boundary of the United States was fixed at the Great Lakes, and the western at the Mississippi river, and an unlimited right of fishing on the banks of Newfoundland was conceded. The first minister from the new republic, Mr. Adams, was received by the king with great affability and kindness (1785), the monarch remarking that, though

Colonies Independent.

30. What defeats were sustained by the Americans? What led to General Burgoyne's surrender? What did the victory secure? What closed the war?

31. What treaty was made? What was fixed as the boundary of the United States? Who was the first minister from the United States to England? How was he received by the king?

he had been the last to consent to the separation of the colonies, he would be the first to welcome the United States as an independent power.

32. The earl of Chatham did not live to see the independence of the colonies. He had protested against the course of the ministry in unjustly imposing taxes upon them, predicting that it would lead to their separation from the mother country. When, therefore, after the surrender of Burgoyne, a motion was made in the House of Lords to obtain peace at any price, though suffering from extreme illness, he rose from his bed, and, going to the House, protested, with his usual vehement eloquence, against the dismemberment of the empire. On rising to reply to some remarks in opposition to his views, he fell back in convulsions and was carried insensible from the House. Four days afterward he expired (1778).

Chatham.

CHATHAM.
(*From his monument in Westminster Abbey.*)

33. It was not with her colonies alone that England had carried on war. The acknowledgment of their independence by France led to a war with that country; and this was soon followed by hostilities with Spain (1779) and Holland (1780), which powers were joined, in what was called the "armed neutrality," by Russia, Sweden, and Denmark. Thus all the most powerful nations

Other Wars.

32. What was the course of the earl of Chatham? When and under what circumstances did his death occur?

33. With what other countries did England wage war during the same period? The "Armed Neutrality"? Achievements of the English fleet? Siege of Gibraltar? How did the Dutch suffer? The French fleet? What was done by Paul Jones?

of Europe arrayed themselves against Great Britain; but the latter, by means of her powerful fleets, succeeded in thwarting their hostile designs. The Spaniards made an attack on Gibraltar, but were repulsed, after a three years' siege, with severe loss; the Dutch suffered greatly by the destruction of their commerce: and the French fleet was totally defeated by Rodney, after it had aided in compelling the surrender of Cornwallis (April, 1782). A small squadron of French and American vessels, under the famous John Paul Jones,* had, however, gained a splendid victory over two British frigates near the coast of Scotland (1779).

34. During the American war important advantages had been gained by the British in India, under Warren Hastings, by whom, with the aid of the veteran warrior Sir Eyre Coote, Hyder Ali (*ah'le*), the most energetic of the native princes, had been repulsed in several attacks on the Carnatic. The measures, however, which Hastings adopted to obtain money, in order to make the large remittances expected by the East India Company, were characterized by great oppression and injustice toward the native princes and their subjects. Accordingly, after his return to England, articles of impeachment were presented against him in Parliament by the celebrated Edmund Burke, charging him with "high crimes and misdemeanors" (1787).

Warren Hastings.

35. His trial, in Westminster Hall, is one of the most memorable mentioned in history. It commenced February 13, 1788, and lasted till April 23, 1795, the one hundred and forty-eighth day, resulting in the acquittal of Hastings on

* John Paul Jones was born in Scotland in 1747. At the age of twelve, he was apprenticed to a shipmaster who was engaged in the American trade. When the American Revolution broke out he was in Virginia, and soon after entered the American service. His name was John Paul, to which for some reason he added Jones. After the Revolution he entered the Russian naval service, and took part in the Turkish war. He died in Paris in 1792.

34. What advantages were gained in India during the same period? Warren Hastings? Why was he impeached?

35. Trial of Hastings? For what was it remarkable?

every charge. He justly complained that his arraignment had occurred in one generation, and that the judgment was not pronounced till the next. This trial was not only remarkable for its length and the character of the illustrious defendant, but for the brilliant talents and eloquence displayed by the managers of the impeachment, among whom were Burke, Sheridan, Fox, and Windham—a galaxy of eminent men unsurpassed for splendor of genius in the annals of any country.*

William Pitt.

36. During this period, the premiership had been held by William Pitt, son of the earl of Chatham, to whom, although only twenty-four years of age, it was given in 1783, and who continued to govern the country during eighteen years, a much longer period than any minister since Walpole. When he commenced his administration, the people were discontented, and the treasury exhausted by the long and expensive wars just brought to a close; but, by his consummate ability, confidence was soon restored, and in a few years the finances of the country were so much improved that ten millions of the national debt had been paid off. An event, however, occurred that baffled his far-seeing calcula-

* Macaulay, in his great essay on Warren Hastings, thus speaks of this trial: "Hastings advanced to the bar and bent his knee. The culprit was, indeed, not unworthy of that great presence. He had ruled an extensive and populous country, had made laws and treaties, had sent forth armies, had set up and pulled down princes. And in his high place he had so borne himself that all had feared him, that most had loved him, and that hatred itself could deny him no title to glory, except virtue. He looked like a great man, and not like a bad man. A person small and emaciated, yet deriving a dignity from a carriage, which, while it indicated deference to the court, indicated, also, habitual self-possession and self-respect; a high and intellectual forehead; a brow pensive but not gloomy; a mouth of inflexible decision; a face pale and worn, but serene, on which was written, as legibly as under the great picture in the council-chamber at Calcutta, *Mens æqua in arduis*. [A mind serene in difficulties.] Such was the aspect with which the great proconsul presented himself to his judges. His counsel accompanied him; men, all of whom were afterward raised by their talents and learning to the highest posts in their profession."

36. What is said of William Pitt? What was the state of affairs when he commenced his administration? His success? What occurred to defeat his plans?

tions, and convulsed all Europe. This was the breaking out of the great French Revolution (1789).

37. At first, the revolutionists in France received considerable sympathy in their efforts to obtain for the people a proper share in the government, and to abolish the dreadful system of oppression and misrule under which France had for centuries groaned in misery; but their excesses soon disgusted and alarmed every civilized nation in Europe. After the execution of the French king, Louis XVI., in 1793, Great Britain, Holland, Russia, and Spain formed a coalition to restore the monarchy in France, and thus prevent the spread of republican principles into other countries, the members of the Convention, in Paris, having voted that they would give assistance to every nation that wished to "recover its liberty."

Coalition.

38. Against this formidable combination the revolutionary government displayed the most extraordinary vigor and activity. In a short time it sent eight armies into the field, and successfully baffled the most strenuous efforts of the enemy. The English fleets, under Lord Howe, Admiral Duncan, and Horatio Nelson, gained, however, several brilliant victories. During this struggle, Napoleon Bonaparte carved his way to fame and fortune. After defeating the Austrians in Italy in two brilliant campaigns, he induced the French government, then administered by the "Directory," to consent to an expedition designed to conquer Egypt, as a means of attacking the commerce and power of England in the East (1798).

Naval Victories.

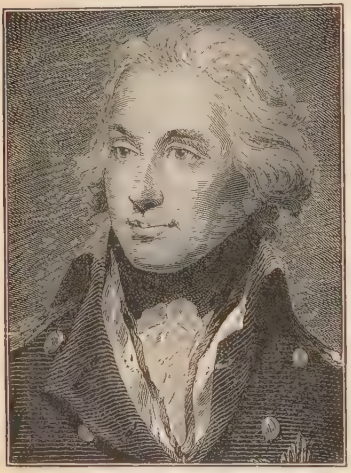
39. Landing there with an immense army, he captured Alexandria, and then marched toward Cairo (*kī'ro*), which, after defeating the Mamelukes in the noted "Battle of the

37. The French revolutionists? What coalition was formed against them? Why?

38. Conduct of the revolutionary government? Achievements of the English fleets? Napoleon Bonaparte? His mode of attacking England?

39. What did he accomplish in Egypt? The Battle of the Nile? What was Nelson's conduct? How was it rewarded?

Pyramids," he entered (1798). This gave him possession of the country; but a few days afterward Nelson destroyed the French fleet in the memorable "Battle of the Nile,"* and thus cut off the retreat of the invaders. Of all the ships that had carried Bonaparte's army to Egypt, only four escaped to carry the news of the disaster to France. Nelson displayed all his characteristic gallantry and skill, and was severely wounded in the action. He was rewarded with a liberal annuity and the title of Baron Nelson of the Nile.



LORD NELSON.

40. In consequence of the invasion of Egypt, the Turkish Sultan declared war against France, and Napoleon, therefore, leaving Egypt in charge of one of his generals, undertook an expedition into Syria. Several towns, one after another, yielded to his arms, among them Jaffa, where he caused a large number of the Turkish prisoners to be massacred. At Acre, he found the Sultan's fleet under the command of Sir Sydney Smith, an English officer, and after a siege of nearly two months was compelled to retreat (1799). Having returned to Egypt, he went on board of a French man-of-war in the night, and accompanied by some of his best generals, the others being left with the army, succeeded in escaping the English cruisers, and arrived safely in France. A change in the govern-

* This engagement took place in Aboukir Bay, in the northern part of Egypt. (*See Progressive Map No.* 6.)

40. Why did Napoleon invade Syria? What was done there? Siege of Acre? Napoleon's escape? What change occurred in the French government?

ment took place soon afterward, and Bonaparte assumed its control under the title of *First Consul.*

41. Meanwhile the revolutionary spirit had spread to Ireland, and excited a determination on the part of the people there to regain the independence of which they had so long been deprived by the English, whose yoke had been galling in the extreme, especially to the Irish peasantry. Left to the mercies of the agents appointed by their foreign lords, these wretched people suffered every species of insult and oppression, to which was also added the bitterness of religious persecution. The "Society of United Irishmen" was formed in 1791, and declared its objects to be a reform of the legislature according to the principles of civil, political, and religious liberty. It consisted of Protestants as well as Catholics, although the majority of Irish Protestants, called "Orangemen," opposed these views, and favored a continuance of the English rule.

Ireland.

42. Two expeditions sent by France to assist the Irish patriots were destroyed; but a formidable insurrection broke out soon afterward, the number in arms being estimated at two hundred and fifty thousand (1798). Numerous engagements occurred in various quarters, but generally to the disadvantage of the insurgents, who were finally compelled to submit to the government (1800). It was then proposed to unite the two countries under one parliament, and although the measure was violently opposed by many, among whom were Grattan and Curran, the most eloquent of the Irish orators, the bill for the union, which had passed the English legislature, was accepted by the Parliament of Ireland (1801).* Thereafter the title of the "United

Insurrection.

Irish Parliament.

* This, it was generally asserted and acknowledged, was accomplished by Pitt by means of bribing the members.

41. Affairs in Ireland? Oppression of the Irish peasantry? "Society of United Irishmen"? The Orangemen?

42. The Irish rebellion of 1798? Its result? Union of England and Ireland?

Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland" became the official designation of the kingdom.

43. Sir Ralph Abercrombie, who had been sent to Egypt, gained an important victory over the French forces which had been left by Napoleon in that country as a standing menace to the power of Great Britain (1801). Abercrombie was mortally wounded in the action; but his successor, General Hutchinson, having formed a union with the Turks, captured Cairo and Alexandria, the French surrendering with the agreement that they should be carried back to France at the expense of the allied powers. The French *savants* were permitted to retain only their own manuscripts and private papers, all the scientific collections which they had made for the French republic being surrendered to the victors. Among the latter was the famous Rosetta stone, so useful afterward in furnishing a basis for deciphering the hieroglyphics on the Egyptian monuments.

Abercrombie.

WILLIAM PITT.

44. Meanwhile the northern powers —Russia, Sweden, and Denmark—had formed a league to protect their commerce against the British, who claimed the right of searching the vessels of neutral nations; and, being soon joined by Prussia, they commenced acts of hostility against Great Britain. Accordingly a fleet under Sir Hyde Parker and Lord Nelson was sent to the Baltic, and in an action that ensued off Copen-

Northern Powers.

43. Sir Ralph Abercrombie's victory? Other victories of the English? Capitulation of the French? The Rosetta stone?

44. What league was formed? For what reason? Expedition to the Baltic? What led to an adjustment of difficulties? What treaty was made, and when? Where is Amiens? (*See Progressive Map No.* 6.)

hagen the Danish fleet was destroyed, principally through the desperate valor of Nelson.* This had the effect to detach Denmark from the league; and, the Russian Emperor Paul being assassinated about the same time, Alexander, his successor, resolved on a policy friendly to the British (1801). Shortly afterward a treaty was signed by Great Britain and the northern powers, by which the rights of neutral navigation were satisfactorily adjusted. These events were soon followed by the treaty of Amiens (*am'e-enz*), by which peace was concluded between France and England (1802).

45. For some time after the legislative union of Ireland and England, considerable discontent existed in the former country; and in 1803 an insurrection was attempted in Dublin, but was immediately suppressed. It was for his connection with this affair that the talented but ill-fated Robert Emmet suffered death. Pitt had before this desired that the Catholic disabilities should be abolished, in order to make the union more complete and satisfactory; and as the king refused to give his assent, Pitt resigned, and was succeeded by Henry Addington, who had long been speaker of the House of Commons (1802).

Emmet.

46. The peace of Amiens proved only a brief truce, for, the very next year after its conclusion, the First Consul assumed a threatening attitude toward England, and publicly insulted her ambassador. War was accordingly resumed, and immense preparations were made in France to invade England; but they were entirely frus-

War Resumed.

* In the thickest of the fight some of the largest of the English vessels got aground on the shoals, and the admiral, Sir Hyde Parker, gave the signal to withdraw; but Nelson, vice-admiral, pretending that he did not see it, continued the fight. "I have been in more than a hundred engagements," he afterward said, "but that of Copenhagen was the most terrific of them all."

45. What caused an insurrection in Ireland? Who was executed? What caused the resignation of Pitt? By whom was he succeeded?

46. What caused the renewal of the war with France? What events followed? Nelson's last victory and death?

trated by the British cruisers which swept the Channel, and bombarded some of the French ports. Pitt, yielding to the call of the public, now resumed the direction of affairs, and the war was carried on with great activity. Nelson gained his most brilliant victory, entirely defeating the combined French and Spanish fleets off Cape Trafalgar, but at a heavy cost to his country, for he fell mortally wounded in the action (1805). He was buried with more than kingly honors in St. Paul's Cathedral, London, and the whole nation mourned his loss.*

Death of Nelson.

NAPOLEON I.

47. Napoleon in 1804 became Emperor of France, and the next year caused himself to be crowned King of Italy, with the famous "iron crown" of the Lombards. These assumptions of power led to a coalition against him, consisting of England, Austria, Russia, Sweden, and Prussia; but, with his characteristic daring and promptitude, he marched against the Austrians, and succeeded in capturing a large army at Ulm (1805), and shortly afterward routed the combined army of

Napoleon.

* "Nelson's whole career, from his first entrance into the navy to the battle of Trafalgar, exhibited a pattern of every manly virtue. Bold in conception, cautious in construction, firm in execution, cool in danger, he was the most successful because the most profound and intrepid of leaders. The most triumphant death is that of the martyr; the most splendid, that of the hero in the hour of victory; and, if the chariot and horses of fire had been vouchsafed for Nelson's translation, he could scarcely have departed in a brighter blaze of glory."—Alison's *History of Europe.*

47. What coalition was formed against Napoleon? Why? What victories did he gain? What followed the battle of Jena?

Austria and Russia at Austerlitz with overwhelming loss. This was soon followed by the sanguinary battle of Jena, in which he gained so decisive a victory over the Prussians that he immediately entered Berlin in triumph, and dictated terms to the conquered monarch (1806).

CHARLES JAMES FOX.

Pitt and Fox.

48. The year 1806 became memorable by the death of the two eminent statesmen Pitt and Fox. The former was only forty-seven years of age, having been brought to a premature grave by the excessive toils and anxieties of his great office.* At Berlin Napoleon issued the famous decree declaring the British Isles in a state of blockade, and forbidding all commercial intercourse on the part of every nation with Great Britain or her colonies. After the severe battles of Eylau (*i'low*) and Fried'land, he was enabled to dictate terms to the Russian emperor at Tilsit, and was thus left free to prose-

* "'Austerlitz,' Wilberforce wrote in his diary, 'killed Pitt.' Though he was still but forty-seven, the hollow voice and wasted frame of the great minister had long told that death was near; and the blow to his hopes proved fatal. 'Roll up that map,' he said, pointing to a map of Europe which hung upon the wall; 'it will not be wanted these ten years.' Once only he rallied from stupor; and those who bent over him caught a faint murmur of 'My country! How I leave my country!' On the 23d of January, 1806, he breathed his last, and was laid in Westminster Abbey in the grave of Chatham. 'What grave,' exclaimed Lord Wellesley, 'contains such a father and such a son? What sepulcher embosoms the remains of so much human excellence and glory?'"—Green's *Short History of the English People.*

48. Why is the year 1806 memorable? What is said of Pitt? What decree did Napoleon issue? Treaty of Tilsit? Taking of Copenhagen and the Danish fleet?

cute more effectually hostilities against the British. The latter, fearing that he would take possession of the navy of Denmark, which was considerable, sent a powerful force under Sir Arthur Wellesley (*welz'le*) * and Admiral Gambier to Copenhagen to demand that it should be given up; and, this being refused, the city was bombarded and captured, and the whole Danish fleet, with an immense quantity of naval stores, was taken to England.

Wellesley.

49. Napoleon's commercial restrictions, as declared in the Berlin decree, were not obeyed by Portugal, into which country British merchandise was freely admitted, and thence transported into Spain. A French army was therefore ordered to invade the country, and, Lisbon having been captured, the prince regent took refuge in the British fleet, then in the Tagus river, and, sailing to Brazil, fixed the seat of his government in that country (1807). Portugal was then declared by Napoleon a province of the French empire. Not content with this usurpation, he next seized the throne of Spain, and arbitrarily placed upon it his brother, Joseph Bonaparte (1808).

Portugal.

50. These events led to the "Peninsular War," the British government being determined to prevent the consummation of Napoleon's ambitious schemes, which, by disturbing the "balance of power" in Europe, threatened the safety and independence of every one of its nations. Accordingly Sir Arthur Wellesley was sent to Portugal with an army to assist the people, who had risen in insurrection against the French invaders. At Vimeira (*ve-ma'e-rah*) he gained a decided victory, but it

Peninsular War.

* Sir Arthur Wellesley, afterward the duke of Wellington, had previous to this acquired very great distinction by his skill and bravery in India.

49. Why was Portugal invaded by the French? The result? What course did Napoleon pursue toward Spain?

50. What war did this lead to? With what object was it waged? Who was sent to Portugal? What victory did he gain? Sir John Moore? Battle of Corunna? What followed? (For places, *see Progressive Map No.* 6.)

was not improved, in consequence of a change of commanders, the English, by the convention of Cintra, agreeing to retire from the country. Sir John Moore, who was ordered to co-operate with the Spaniards against the French, was driven into retreat by Napoleon, receiving no support from the inhabitants. He afterward fell in the battle of Corun'na,* where the French, under Marshal Soult (*soolt*), were repulsed; and the English troops, after having suffered inconceivable hardships, made their escape from the country with the assistance of the fleet (1809).

51. Notwithstanding these reverses, the British government, now under the administration of the celebrated George Canning, determined to prosecute the war in the Peninsula with vigor. The chief command was given to Sir Arthur Wellesley, who, after entering Portugal and driving the French into Spain, passed into the latter country and formed a junction with the general of the Spanish army, then about 30,000 strong, but in bad condition. An attack of the French at Talave'ra brought on a terrific battle, in which the British fought with desperate valor, and compelled the French to retreat. Wellesley received the title of Viscount Wellington as a reward for this splendid victory. He was, however, compelled to retire into Portugal before the immense armies which Napoleon poured into Spain, and by which, before the end of the year, he made himself master of the whole country (1809).

War in Portugal.

Wellington.

* It was with reference to the burial of Moore, and the hasty retreat which followed, that Wolfe's well known poem was written, commencing with the lines,

"Not a drum was heard, not a funeral note,
As his corse to the rampart we hurried:
Not a soldier discharged his farewell shot
O'er the grave where our hero was buried."

51. Policy of the British government? Who received the chief command? What led to the battle of Talavera? Its result? What title was given to the British general? Why did he retreat?

52. Meanwhile hostilities were resumed on the part of Austria, with armies which amounted in the aggregate to about 500,000 men. Napoleon, however, notwithstanding his inferior forces, and the numerous operations which he was obliged simultaneously to carry on, was almost everywhere victorious. At Eck'muhl, he defeated the Archduke Charles, but was compelled to fall back from his position at Aspern. A few weeks afterward he gained a decisive victory at Wagram (*vah'gram*), after which the Austrian emperor was obliged to submit to such terms of peace as the victor chose to dictate (1809).

Napoleon's Victories.

53. Austria being thus helpless at his feet, Napoleon sent additional forces into Spain and Portugal, determined to drive the British out of the latter country, and to crush the Spaniards, who still kept up a vigorous opposition to the invaders, but chiefly by irregular troops called guerrillas. In the battle of Busa'co, Wellington repulsed the French general Masse'na with heavy loss; then, retreating to the heights of Tor'res Ve'dras, some distance north of Lisbon, he took up a position which Massena did not dare to attack but retired into winter quarters (1810). In this year, George III. having become insane,* the Prince of Wales was made regent.

Operations in the Peninsula.

54. During the next year, warlike operations went on in Spain and Portugal under Wellington, opposed by Massena; but the latter was so unsuccessful that Napoleon superseded him, and appointed General Marmont in his place. In 1812

* "He was not only sightless; he became utterly deaf. All light, all reason, all sound of human voices, all the pleasures of this world of God, were taken from him. Some slight lucid moments he had, in one of which the queen, desiring to see him, entered the room, and found him singing a hymn."—Thackeray's *Four Georges.*

52. War with Austria? What victories did Napoleon gain? Their result?

53. Napoleon's next object? What battle was fought by Wellington? His position at Torres Vedras? How did the campaign close? Insanity of George III.?

54. Ill success of Massena? Battle of Salamanca? What other war was commenced in 1812? Its cause? Results of the first operations?

Wellington defeated that officer with immense loss at Salamanca, and marching on Madrid captured the city, together with a vast quantity of military stores. In this year commenced the war with the United States, brought on by the unjust claims of Great Britain to the right of searching American vessels for deserters and other British seamen, in order that she might seize and impress them into her service. The war commenced with great disasters to the Americans on land; but on the ocean the brilliant victories achieved by Captain Hull, Commodore Decatur, and others, retrieved the honor of their country.

American War.

55. In 1813, Wellington, now commander-in-chief of the Spanish as well as the British forces, attacked the French at Vittoria, and drove them from the town, capturing the whole of their artillery and ammunition, together with other property valued at a million sterling (June 21). They continued their retreat, followed by the allies, as far as the passes of the Pyrenees, where Marshal Soult, sent by Napoleon to defend the French frontier, was repulsed in a series of engagements called the "Battles of the Pyrenees." Wellington crossed into France, forcing every position assumed by Soult; and the next year reached Toulouse, where he again attacked the French and compelled them to retreat (April, 1814).

French Retreat.

56. Meanwhile Napoleon, defeated in the Russian expedition (1812), and subsequently at the great battle of Leipsic (1813), had been driven into disastrous retreat before the vast army of the allied powers; and finally, finding himself unable to make further resistance, had consented to abdicate the French throne and retire to the little island of Elba (1814). The forces of the

Fall of Napoleon.

55. Battle of Vittoria? What were its results? Retreat of the French? "Battles of the Pyrenees"? What course did Wellington take? Battle of Toulouse? (For places, *see Progressive Map No.* 6.)

56. What led to Napoleon's abdication? On whom was the French crown conferred? The American war? Its end? Battle of New Orleans?

allies entered Paris, and the crown of France was conferred upon Louis XVIII., brother of the unfortunate Louis XVI., who was beheaded in 1793. The American war was continued during 1813 and 1814, but the British gained no permanent advantage, and in the latter year peace was made by the treaty of Ghent (December 24). Before, however, this was known in America, a fine army under General Pakenham (*pak'n-am*) made an attack upon New Orleans, but was repulsed by a force under General Jackson, the British general and two thousand of his soldiers being slain (January 8, 1815).

New Orleans.

57. As a reward for his brilliant conduct in the Peninsular War, Wellington was made a duke, and publicly thanked by both houses of Parliament. He also received a grant of £400,000. Toward the close of 1814, a congress of representatives of the European powers met at Vienna, to arrange and settle the affairs of Europe, which had become greatly confused by the many revolutions caused by these long wars. While in session, they were suddenly surprised by the departure of Napoleon from Elba. Landing at Cannes (*kahn*), on the southern shore of France, he was enthusiastically welcomed by the troops; and soon entering Paris, was greeted with the joyful acclamations of all classes (March 20, 1815). Louis XVIII. having fled, Napoleon found himself once more on the throne, and in less than two months was enabled to organize an army of 200,000 men.

Congress of Vienna.

58. This daring disregard of the treaty which had been made the previous year alarmed all Europe, and a combination of the principal powers was immediately formed once more to destroy the power of the French emperor. Great Britain entered into it with spirit and vigor, Parliament voting nearly one hundred millions sterling to carry on the war.

57. How was Wellington rewarded? The Congress of Vienna? What sudden revolution occurred?

58. What followed this event? What preparations were made for the war? The respective armies?

The duke of Wellington, at the head of an immense army, proceeded to Belgium, whither also the Prussians, under Blucher (*bloo'ker*), were marching to oppose Napoleon, who had crossed the frontier with 100,000 infantry and 25,000 cavalry. At the same time Austria and Russia were preparing to invade France with overwhelming armies.

59. The plan of Wellington was to form a junction with Blucher and march on Paris; but Napoleon, in order to prevent this, at once attacked the Prussians at Ligny (*leen'ye*),* drove them from their position, and sent Grouchy (*groo'she*) in pursuit with 35,000 men, to cut off their union with the British, who then lay at Brussels. Wellington at once advanced and took up his position at Waterloo, where he was attacked with the most desperate impetuosity by the French forces (June 18). Charge after charge was made, and at last even by the Old Guard—the unconquered veterans of Austerlitz and Jena—but without effect. Meanwhile Blucher had outmarched Grouchy, and, just as Napoleon's last great charge was being made, appeared on the field. The French columns, panic-stricken by this unexpected reinforcement of the enemy, broke and fled, and the great battle of Waterloo was ended.

Waterloo.

60. A second abdication of Napoleon followed; and, finding no means of escape from France, he surrendered himself to the commander of a British vessel of war at Rochefort, and was carried to England. By agreement of the allied sovereigns, he was sent to the little island of St. Helena, where, after an imprisonment of six years, he died. This final overthrow of Napo

Napoleon in Exile.

* A village of Belgium, situated about twenty-five miles southeast from Brussels. The battle of Waterloo was fought about two miles south of the village of that name, and nearly twelve miles from Brussels. (*See Progressive Map No. 6.*)

59. What was Wellington's plan? Napoleon's attack? Its result? The battle of Waterloo and its consequences?

60. What course did Napoleon then take? His fate? What is said of the war and its effects on England?

leon ended the great struggle which for nearly twenty-five years had been made by Great Britain to check the conquests of the French, and preserve the "balance of power" in Europe. To accomplish this end, immense sacrifices of men and money had been made, the national debt having been increased to nearly nine hundred millions of pounds.

61. The sudden change to peace, after this long war, produced great distress among the people. Trade languished, a multitude of persons were thrown out of employment, and the vast number of soldiers and sailors who had been discharged greatly augmented the difficulty. To add to the people's distress bread became very dear, in consequence of the scarcity of wheat caused by unfavorable seasons and the corn laws, which prevented its importation. Riots ensued, particularly in the manufacturing districts, where, by the improvement of labor-saving machinery, very many persons were deprived of their ordinary employments; and these wreaked their vengeance by the destruction of the newly-invented machines for spinning and weaving.

Disturbances.

62. To these causes of tumult was added the agitation of the question of parliamentary reform, and large meetings of the people were held to demand annual parliaments and universal suffrage. One of these, at Manchester, called by Henry Hunt, a celebrated popular orator, was dispersed by the authorities, several persons being killed (1819). Prominent among those who advocated the introduction of liberal reforms in the government was the celebrated William Cobbett,* who, in a peri-

Parliamentary Reform.

* William Cobbett, one of the most extraordinary men of his age, was born in very humble life in 1762. In his earlier years he served as a soldier in Nova Scotia; but afterward settled in Philadelphia, where he wrote the celebrated papers which appeared under the name of "Peter Porcupine." The first number of the *Political Register* appeared in England in 1802, he having

61. What resulted from the change to peace? What caused distress among the people? Where did riots break out?

62. Parliamentary reform? Meeting at Manchester? William Cobbett?

odical entitled the *Political Register*, boldly and ably advocated the cause of the laboring classes. For this he was repeatedly prosecuted by the government on a charge of libel, and was fined and imprisoned.

63. George III. died in 1820, after a reign of sixty years —the longest in English history. During the latter part of it he had lived in entire seclusion. His private character, in every relation of life, was worthy of esteem; and his kindliness of disposition and homely familiarity endeared him to the great body of the English people, by whom he was regarded with sincere affection, being in his latter years generally spoken of as "the good old king."* As a monarch, his moderate abilities, narrow views, and obstinate adherence to obsolete principles and time-honored abuses, have subjected his name to considerable obloquy, if not contempt. He had

Death of George III.

Character.

removed to that country. Toward the close of his life he was a member of Parliament. He died in 1835. Few writers have excelled him in vigor of thought and homely clearness of style, and very few have rendered a more lasting service to the cause of liberal government and freedom of discussion.

* "He was tall, well-formed, his features were bold, and his presence commanding. His first entrance into public life, being then but in his twenty-third year, made a great impression; he had a great advantage over his predecessors in greater affability of manner, and in being acquainted with the language, habits, and institutions of the English. 'Born and educated in this country,' said his Majesty in his opening speech to the Parliament, 'I glory in the name of Briton, and I hold the civil and religious rights of my people equally dear with the most valuable prerogatives of my crown.' And never, throughout the course of a long and arduous reign of nearly sixty years, did his actions as a man or a prince contradict the boast. Profoundly yet unaffectedly religious, pure in his own morals, and careful to set an example to those around him, George III. was the best husband and father in his own dominions; while as a king, no man knew better than he the principles of the British constitution; and whether he be regarded in his public or in his private capacity, whether he be tried as a prince or as a man, a more upright character never moved in any circle of society."—Gleig's *Memoirs of Warren Hastings.*

63. Death of George III.? His private and kingly character? His children? Death of Queen Charlotte?

twelve children, of whom the oldest was George, the prince-regent, who now succeeded him. His faithful and excellent queen, Charlotte, had died a short time previously.

STATE OF SOCIETY UNDER THE FIRST THREE BRUNSWICK KINGS.

64. During this period, extending from 1714 to 1820, and therefore nearly coincident with the eighteenth century, the British government assumed a more settled character; and, as the people advanced in intelligence, became more and more dependent upon their wishes. Hence the king ruled through his ministers, who were able to continue in office only as long as they succeeded in retaining the support of Parliament. The power exercised by the sovereign has ever since been very limited, solely depending upon his intelligence, force of character, and moral worth; and all the agencies of government have become more and more under the control of public opinion—the great ruling power of every truly civilized nation. The popular agitations, riots, etc., to secure parliamentary reform, and a more general and equitable representation in the House of Commons, indicate the efforts which this power was exerting toward the close of this period in order to assert its supremacy.

Popular Control.

65. This ardent desire for freedom, which so strikingly characterized the public mind in England, was, in the first place, the result of the American war for independence, with its successful issue. The great questions which sprung up during this struggle, and which gave occasion to the magnificent displays of parliamentary eloquence of Burke, Fox, Sheridan, and others, shattered to pieces the old theories of arbitrary government,

Radical Reformers.

64. Change in the government? Power of the sovereign? Influence of public opinion?

65. Effects of the American Revolution? Of the French Revolution? The "Radicals"? By whom were their principles advocated?

and imbued the popular mind with democratic notions and principles. The French Revolution — the mightiest political and social tornado the world has ever seen — shook every institution that had hitherto been held sacred, and threatened at one time to resolve human society into its original elements. Hence arose in England a new party called "Radical Reformers," or "Radicals," whose principles were ably advocated by Thomas Paine,* William Cobbett, and others; and hence also the spread of infidelity among the middle classes, fostered by such writings as Paine's "Age of Reason."

EDMUND BURKE.

66. During the first part of this period, religion was at a very low ebb among all classes. The clergy, often ordained without any regard to their intellectual and spiritual attainments, but simply as a

* Thomas Paine, famous for his connection with the American and French revolutions and for his advocacy of infidel opinions, was born in 1737, and was by trade a stay-maker. In 1774 he emigrated to America, and advocated the cause of the colonies in a series of papers entitled "Common Sense," the publication of which gained him the friendship of Washington, Franklin, and other distinguished American patriots. This was soon followed by the "American Crisis," in eighteen numbers, published at different times (1776 '83) — a work that exercised a powerful effect upon the public mind, in keeping up the spirit of patriotism and freedom. Subsequently he published in England his most famous work, the "Rights of Man," for which he was prosecuted by the government, and found guilty of "a false, scandalous, and malicious libel." Escaping to France, he became a member of the revolutionary convention, and during the "Reign of Terror" under Robespierre was thrown into prison. His theological writings, which made him very unpopular, were published afterward. He settled at New Rochelle, N. Y., on the farm donated to him by Congress. There he died in 1809, and thirty years later a monument was erected to his memory.

66. State of religion? The clergy? Effect of the preaching of George Whitefield and John Wesley? What is said of the Methodists? Watts, Doddridge, etc.? Sunday-schools?

provision for the younger sons of aristocratic families, neglected the duties of their sacred calling to indulge in fox-hunting, gaming, and the pleasures of the table. The preaching of George Whitefield * and John Wesley † did much to infuse into the public mind a higher regard for spiritual matters. The religious society which they founded received—at first as a nickname—the appellation of "Methodists," from the strictness of their religious principles and observances. It rapidly gathered within its ranks vast multitudes, particularly of the middle and lower orders of the people. The writings of Watts, Doddridge, and others also contributed to raise the religious tone of society. Sunday-schools were founded about the close of 1781 by Robert Raikes.

Clergy.

Methodists.

67. It was, however, some time before there was infused into the public mind a spirit of religious toleration. In 1778 was passed the "Catholic Relief Bill," freeing Catholics from the severe disabilities to which they had long been subjected. This measure had the

Catholic Relief.

* George Whitefield was particularly celebrated for the fervid eloquence with which he preached to the people. He was ordained a minister of the Church of England, but subsequently joined Wesley and the Methodists. He spent part of his life in America, where he died while on a visit to the churches in New England (1770).

† John Wesley, the celebrated founder of Methodism, was an ordained minister of the Church of England, who became dissatisfied with the coldness and want of spirituality which prevailed among both clergy and laity. Like Whitefield, he was a powerful popular preacher, and like him, also, he preached to the people of both hemispheres, residing some years in the colonies. For more than half a century he exercised the most complete authority over his numerous followers both in England and America. He died in 1791 at the age of eighty eight. It is estimated that at his death there were 71,000 Methodists in England, and 48,000 in America. His influence was exerted chiefly among the lower orders, while the efforts of Whitefield, aided by the countess of Huntingdon, awakened a religious interest among the higher classes of society.

67. Religious toleration? The Catholic Relief Bill? Effect of its passage? The Gordon riots?

effect to excite the animosities of the ignorant and bigoted part of the population: and a movement was undertaken in opposition to it, led by Lord George Gordon, a foolish Scotch nobleman, who made many silly and violent speeches in the House of Commons on the subject. By means of the inflammatory addresses made by him and

Gordon Riots.

AN OLD-FASHIONED ENGLISH FARM-HOUSE.

others, with the outcry which was raised of "No Popery," dreadful riots were excited, in which many Catholic churches and other buildings were destroyed. Lord Mansfield's fine mansion, containing his valuable law library, fell a sacrifice to the senseless fury of the mob, which for several days had entire possession of London. The tumult was finally repressed by means of the military, after nearly five hundred persons had been killed or wounded. Gordon was tried for treason, but was not convicted.

68. In commerce and navigation vast and rapid strides were taken. The trade with the American colonies had be-

68. Commerce and navigation? Trade with the American colonies and the United States? Importation of cotton? Steam navigation? What line of packets was established in 1820?

come considerable previous to their independence; but with the United States it was much more extensive, the principal imports from them being tobacco, rice, and cotton. The importation of the last-mentioned article from America commenced in 1770, the first shipment being about two thousand pounds. At the close of the period, the annual import amounted to one hundred and twenty million pounds. The same product was also imported from Brazil and the East Indies. The English West Indies exported large quantities of sugar, together with mahogany and logwood. The gradual introduction of steam navigation was a marked feature of the period. Experiments with the view to this application of the steam-engine had been early made, but it was not until nearly the end of the period that serviceable steam-vessels were constructed. In 1820 a line of steam-packets was established to ply between Holyhead and Dublin.*

Commerce and Navigation.

Steam-Vessels.

HEAD-DRESSES AND FASHION OF PATCHES.

69. The improvements in the methods and implements

* Robert Fulton, an American, in 1807, made the first successful voyage by steam, from New York to Albany, in a steamboat called the *Clermont*. Five years later a steamboat was started on the Clyde, in Scotland, by Henry Bell, a former associate of Fulton; and thus was commenced steam navigation in Great Britain.

69. What improvements in agriculture took place? Cultivation of the potato? Why encouraged? Greenhouses?

of agriculture were also very great, with, of course, a large increase in the quantity and variety of the vegetable products. The cultivation of the potato, introduced during the seventeenth century, did not become general until about the middle of the eighteenth. Philanthropists encouraged it with the view to prevent famine among the lower classes, by affording a substitute for grain during seasons of bad harvests. Greenhouses for the cultivation of tropical plants also began to be constructed, and soon came into general use.

Agriculture.

70. In the industrial arts, the improvements introduced during this period were very numerous and valuable. Previous to 1718 England was entirely dependent upon foreigners for silk thread; but in that year a large mill was erected at Derby for its manufacture, by Mr. Lombe, who had gone to Italy in the disguise of a common workman, and taken drawings of the silk-throwing machinery in use in that country. Immense quantities of organzine* thread were thereafter produced. The cotton manufacture now took precedence of that of wool, which previously had been the chief material of English fabrics. This change was largely due to the carding-machine and the spinning-jenny invented by James Hargreaves,† but principally to the invention of the spin-

Industrial Arts.

SIR RICHARD ARKWRIGHT.

* Organzine thread is thread made like rope, by twisting several strands into one thread.

† James Hargreaves was an illiterate artisan, supporting himself and family by spinning. In 1760 he invented the carding-machine as a substitute for carding by hand. The spinning-jenny, by which he was enabled to spin a large number of threads at the same time, was invented by accident in 1764. He died in 1768, having received but little benefit from his invention.

70. Improvements in the industrial arts? Manufacture of silk thread? Cotton manufacture? What invention facilitated it?

ning-frame by Sir Richard Arkwright.* In 1771 Arkwright erected a large factory, which was worked by water power.

Iron Manufacture.

71. The iron manufacture became very extensive during this period, especially at Birmingham, and large quantities of cutlery were manufactured at Sheffield. The number of workmen employed in the former city alone, in 1770, was estimated at fifty thousand. To all these branches of manufacturing industry a wonderful impulse had been given by the application of steam. James Watt† made his celebrated invention of the condensing steam-engine in 1769, and introduced during the next sixteen years improvements in it of great practical value. The working of the coal mines was greatly facilitated by the application of Watt's invention. The inven-

JAMES WATT.

Watt's Invention.

*Richard Arkwright, born in 1732, was originally a barber. In 1767 he devoted himself to making improvements in cotton spinning, and the next year produced the spinning-frame, which consisted chiefly of two pairs of rollers, the first pair moving slowly in contact, and passing the cotton to the other pair, which revolved with such increased velocity as to draw out the thread to the required degree of fineness. He was at first very poor, and incurred the displeasure of the artisans by his labor-saving machines. He, however, rapidly rose to opulence and fame, and received in 1786 the honor of knighthood from George III. At his death, in 1792, his property amounted to more than half a million sterling.

†James Watt was born in Scotland in 1736. He was first a mathematical instrument maker, and subsequently a surveyor. He began his experiments on the steam-engine about 1763, and soon discovered the cause of the inefficiency of that in general use at the time. This was worked by atmospheric pressure, steam being used only to produce a vacuum. In 1765 he hit upon the idea of a separate condenser, and of using steam as the motive power, and in 1769 his model was completed. Other improvements followed. He made numerous inventions unconnected with the steam-engine. He died in 1819.

71. Iron manufacture? What gave impulse to these manufactures? Watt's invention? Mining? Inventions in pottery?

tions of Wedgwood* made so many improvements in pottery, that he may be considered the founder of this branch of manufacture in Great Britain. His first success was the production of a beautiful cream-colored porcelain, called, in honor of Queen Charlotte, who greatly admired it, "Queen's Ware" (1763).

Wedgwood.

72. Through the sagacity, energy, and liberality of the duke of Bridgewater, and his celebrated engineer, James Brindley,† canal navigation assumed considerable importance in England. An act of parliament for the construction of his first canal was obtained in 1758. The roads, too, gradually improved, and during the greater part of the period travelers were conveyed by means of rapid stage-coaches to the various parts of the kingdom. The construction of the first locomotive, or steam-carriage, in 1804, commenced a wonderful revolution in this respect; though railways had been used to a limited extent some time previously. Locomotive power was employed on a railway by George

Brindley.

Roads.

Locomotive.

*Josiah Wedgwood, born in 1730, was early engaged in the business of pottery. His many improvements in the manufacture of all kinds of porcelain realized him a vast fortune. He was a man of benevolence and culture, and, besides his own special kind of knowledge, studied natural philosophy with much success. He died in 1795.

† "A Derbyshire millwright, named James Brindley, born in 1716, having distinguished himself greatly in the improvement of mill machinery, received an introduction to that shy savant known as Francis, third duke of Bridgewater. His grace was very anxious to supply Manchester with coal from his pits at Worsley. Would Brindley construct a road of water for the purpose? Purse and brain thus uniting, achieved that great canal of twenty-seven miles, which bears the name of the nobleman whose munificence called it into being. Leaping other streams by means of a far-stretching aqueduct, flowing in tunneled caverns deep under ground, the watery road—the first of its kind in Britain since Roman days—remains a remarkable memorial of genius and scientific skill. Begun in 1758, the work occupied about five years, during which Brindley directed nearly all the operations."—Collier's *History of England.*

72. Canal navigation? By whom encouraged? Traveling? The introduction of the locomotive? Railways?

Stephenson* in 1814, but it was not until 1821 that passengers were transported in this way.

ST. PAUL'S CHURCH.
(*See note, page* 255.)

73. The fine arts were also cultivated with great success. Among painters the most prominent were William Hogarth † and Sir Joshua Reynolds.‡ The latter was the first president of the Royal Academy of Arts, founded in 1768, and remained in office till his death. George III. was a generous patron of the fine arts, and conferred on Reynolds

Fine Arts.

* George Stephenson, at first a workman in a colliery, rose to great distinction by his singular genius as a machinist and engineer. Through his efforts the locomotive became a success, the first railroads being constructed under his supervision. He died in 1848, at the age of sixty-seven.

† William Hogarth was born in London in 1697. His first employment as an artist was in engraving. His moral paintings attracted considerable attention from their humor as well as artistic excellence. The most celebrated of his paintings is, perhaps, the "Enraged Musician," which was finished in 1741. He died in 1764. The name is sometimes written *Hogart*.

‡ Sir Joshua Reynolds, generally placed at the head of the English school of painting, was born in England in 1723. His portraits were of unsurpassed merit, eclipsing everything that had been executed since the time of the celebrated Flemish artist Van Dyke (died in 1641). He was the companion and friend of Johnson, Burke, Goldsmith, Garrick, the famous actor, and other literary men of the time. He died in 1792.

73. Cultivation of the fine arts? Eminent painters? Of what was Reynolds the founder? Handel's achievements in music? The "Beggars' Opera"? Other musical composers?

the honor of knighthood. In music, Handel,* by birth a German, achieved an enduring renown. The first oratorio was produced by him in 1733; but it was not until 1749 that his sublimest composition, "The Messiah," appeared. Very many operas were also composed and brought out by him. One of the most successful works of this kind was the "Beggars' Opera," the libretto of which was composed by the poet Gay,† to whom it was suggested by Swift in 1726. Among other musical composers of this period were the celebrated Dr. Arne,‡ and Dr. Charles Burney,§ the latter distinguished particularly as the author of the "General History of Music."

Music.

74. The progress in scientific discovery was also quite remarkable. Sir Humphry Davy,‖ the great chemist, invented the safety-lamp (1816), one of the most valuable presents ever made by science to humanity. The researches of Dr. Franklin in America gave an impulse to electrical discovery, and led the way to the inven-

Science.

* George Frederick Handel was born in Saxony in 1685. At the age of fourteen he produced his first opera at Hamburgh. He went to England in 1710, and soon became exceedingly popular. A liberal pension was settled on him by George I., and his oratorios were frequently attended by the king and the royal family. He died in 1759, and was buried in Westminster Abbey, where a handsome monument was erected to his memory.

† John Gay, the friend of Swift and Pope, and the author of several interesting works, among which the "Fables" are particularly admired. He died in 1732.

‡ Thomas Augustine Arne was one of the best of English composers. He was born at London in 1710, and died in 1778. The celebrated national air, "Rule Britannia," was composed by him.

§ Charles Burney, noted for his literary and musical talents, was the father of the celebrated Frances Burney, who wrote "Evelina" and some other popular works of fiction. Dr. Burney died in 1814, at the age of eighty-eight.

‖ Sir Humphry Davy was born in Cornwall in 1778. He devoted himself to the study of chemistry during the greater part of his life. His lectures in the Royal Institute of London attracted crowded and brilliant audiences. He was also very fond of fishing, and wrote "Salmonia, or Days of Fly-fishing." His death occurred in Geneva, Switzerland, in 1829.

74. Scientific discovery? Sir Humphry Davy? Sir William Herschel? Medical science?

tion of the electric telegraph by Morse and others. Sir William Herschel* discovered in 1781 a new planet, to which he gave the name *Georgium Sidus*, in honor of George III., now generally called *Uranus*. He also made many other valuable discoveries in astronomy. His monster telescope, forty feet in length, completed in 1787, was the wonder of his age. Medical science was greatly enriched by the labors and publications of the celebrated John Hunter, the greatest physiologist and surgeon of his time. In 1785 he formed a museum, which at his death contained more than ten thousand specimens and preparations illustrative of human and comparative anatomy and its kindred branches. Edward Jenner, who had studied under him, gave to the world the discovery of vaccination in 1796. Geology commenced to be studied, a geological map of England being published in 1815.

FRANKLIN.

75. The history of English literature during this long period is enriched with distinguished names in all its departments. Among the poets may be mentioned :

Literature.

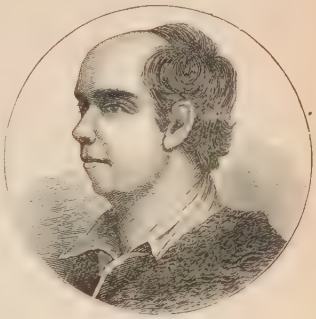
Edward Young (1684–1765), by profession a clergyman, the author of *Night Thoughts* and some other poems.

John Gay (1688–1732), who wrote the *Beggars' Opera* and the *Fables*, the latter considered the finest composition of the kind in the English language. He was the friend of Pope and Swift.

* Sir William Herschel, the world-renowned astronomer, was born at Hanover in 1738, and was by profession a musician. He went to England in 1757, and at first devoted himself to music. His astronomical discoveries were very numerous and valuable. He died in 1822. His sister, Caroline L. Herschel, also attained great distinction as an astronomer, as likewise did his son, Sir John F. W. Herschel, who died in 1871.

75. English literature? What poets are mentioned? What is said of each? What prose writers are referred to? What is said of each?

James Thomson (1700–1748), author of *The Seasons*, the best known of his works; also, of the *Castle of Indolence*, in the style of Spenser's *Faerie Queene*. The latter is considered the most finished of his poems.



GOLDSMITH.

William Collins (1720–1756), author of the *Ode to the Passions*, and other lyrical poems, remarkable for their beautiful imagery and exquisite purity of style. He died insane.

Oliver Goldsmith (1728–1774), one of the renowned galaxy of genius, of which Johnson was the central luminary. Goldsmith was a poet, a dramatist, an essayist, a humorist, and a general literary compiler. His chief writings are poems entitled *The Traveler* and *The Deserted Village;* a novel called *The Vicar of Wakefield;* two comedies, *She Stoops to Conquer* and *The Good-Natured Man;* and a charming collection of essays, under the general title of *Letters from a Citizen of the World.*

Thomas Gray (1716–1771), a man of learning and genius, author of the well-known *Elegy written in a Country Churchyard*, and other poems.

BURNS.

Mark Akenside (1721–1770), author of a beautiful poem entitled *The Pleasures of the Imagination.*

Thomas Chatterton (1752–1770), noted for his imitations of old English poetry, which he published as genuine specimens under the name of Rowley; and for his mournful end in his eighteenth year. Campbell said of him: "No English poet ever equaled him at the same age."

Robert Burns (1759–1796), the illustrious Scottish poet, unsurpassed as a song writer. Some of his longer pieces are: *The Cotter's Saturday Night* and *Tam o' Shanter.*

William Cowper (1731–1800), noted for his morbid sensitiveness and melancholy, verging on insanity, as well as his poetical genius. His

Table Talk and *The Task* contain many powerful and brilliant passages. He also wrote the humorous poem *John Gilpin*. He was, moreover, an inimitable letter-writer.

James Beattie (1735–1803), author of *The Minstrel*, and a celebrated prose work against the skeptical philosophy, entitled an *Essay on Truth*.

The chief prose writers of this period are :

Philip Doddridge (1702–1751), a clergyman, who wrote the well-known devotional work, *The Rise and Progress of Religion in the Soul*.

Samuel Johnson (1709–1784), renowned especially as an essayist and poet. His chief works are : A collection of essays called *The Rambler*, a moral romance styled *Rasselas*, several poems, the *Lives of the Poets*, besides his great work, the *English Dictionary*.

Edmund Burke (1730–1797), a noted orator as well as writer. His best known works are : *An Essay on the Sublime and Beautiful*, and *Reflections on the French Revolution*.

David Hume (1711–1776), author of the *History of England*, and several philosophical works.

William Robertson (1721–1793), a native of Scotland, noted for his histories of *Charles V. of Germany*, of *Scotland*, and of *America*.

Edward Gibbon (1737–1794), author of the *Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*.

Laurence Sterne (1713–1768), a clergyman by profession, the author of *Tristram Shandy* and the *Sentimental Journey*, noted for their humor, satire, and original style.

Richardson, Fielding, and **Smollett** were the most noted novelists of the period. **Horace Walpole** (1717–1797), the author of *The Castle of Otranto*, may also be mentioned here.

76. George IV. succeeded his father at the age of fifty-eight. He had the reputation of possessing considerable talent. His manners were polished, but he was perfectly heartless and unprincipled. During the previous part of his life he had been noted for his profligacy and extravagance. As prince regent he had virtually been king for ten years before his accession, in consequence of the insanity of George III.; and, consequently, his accession occasioned no change in the administration of

George IV., 1820–'30.

76. What is said of George IV.? The Cato Street Conspiracy? How did it end?

the government. Considerable excitement was caused by the "Cato Street Conspiracy," the design of which was to assassinate the cabinet ministers, against whom, as representing the aristocracy, the extreme radicals felt intense hatred. The plot was discovered, and its leader, one Thistlewood, with four of his associates, was executed.

Conspiracy.

GEORGE IV. (*From portrait by Sir T. Lawrence.*)

77. Nothing excited more popular indignation and disgust against the king than his treatment of his unfortunate wife, Caroline of Brunswick, whom he had married in 1795.* They separated soon after the marriage, and the queen for some years afterward resided on the continent. Rumors having been circulated against her character, she determined to return to England and confront her accusers, and arrived the very day a proceeding was commenced in the House of Lords to deprive her of her rights and privileges as queen, and to dissolve her marriage with the king. She was ably defended by

Queen Caroline.

* "This George, what was he? I look through all his life, and recognize but a bow and a grin. I try and take him to pieces, and find silk stockings, padding stays, a coat with frogs and a fur collar, a star and blue ribbon, a pocket-handkerchief prodigiously scented, a nutty brown wig reeking with oil, a set of teeth, and a huge black stock, under-waistcoats, more under waistcoats, and then nothing. I know of no sentiment that he ever distinctly uttered. Documents are published under his name, but people wrote them — private letters, but people spelt them. Will men of the future have nothing better to do than to unswathe and interpret that royal old mummy?"—Thackeray's *Four Georges.*

The duke of Wellington said of him: "He was the most extraordinary compound of talent, wit, buffoonery, obstinacy, and good feeling — in short, a medley of the most opposite qualities, with a great preponderance of good —that I ever saw in any character."

77. Queen Caroline? What proceedings were instituted against her? By whom was she defended? Result of the trial? Her death?

Henry Brougham (*broo'am*), afterward Lord Brougham, and so strongly was public opinion in her favor that the ministers abandoned the bill before it had passed the House of Lords. A public illumination showed the joy of the people at this result, and at the next session the Commons voted the queen an annuity of £50,000. The next year she was repelled with insult from the door of Westminster Abbey, whither she had gone to see the coronation of the king, and shortly afterward expired (1821).*

HENRY BROUGHAM.

78. The same year the king visited Ireland, where he was welcomed as the first British king who had paid a visit of peace to that afflicted isle. Shortly after his return to England he made an excursion to

* "The coronation day killed the queen. The agitations and sufferings of that eventful day called into deadly action the germs of the disease under which she ultimately succumbed. . . . After five days of great suffering she sank into a stupor from which she never awoke. At half past ten o'clock in the morning of the 7th of August, 1821, Caroline of Brunswick, queen-consort of George IV., expired almost without a struggle. She had completed fifty-three years and three months; of these she passed by far the happier and more innocent half in Brunswick. Of the following nineteen years spent in England, eighteen were passed in separation from, and most of them in quarreling with, her husband. For the first ten years of that period she lived without offense and free from suspicion; during the remainder she was struggling to re-establish a fame which had been wrongfully assailed; but this was accompanied by such eccentricity and indiscretion that she almost seemed to justify the suspicion under which she labored. Justice was not rendered her, for she was condemned before she was tried."—Agnes Strickland's *Lives of the Queens of England.*

78. Visit of the king to Ireland? To Hanover? To Scotland? What led to the appointment of George Canning as foreign secretary?

Hanover, the country of his forefathers, and the next year spent a short time in Scotland. During his visit to the latter country, one of his chief ministers, the Marquis of Londonderry (more famous as Lord Castlereagh), committed suicide. He was succeeded as foreign secretary by George Canning, one of the most distinguished parliamentary orators and statesmen of the time (1822).

Castlereagh.

79. Two years later the government declared war against Burmah, being provoked by the outrages committed by that power on the British colonies beyond the Ganges (1824). During the first campaign, Rangoon and the forts at the mouth of the Irrawaddy river were captured by Sir Archibald Campbell; and, in the next, the province of Ar'acan was seized by a force under General Morrison. The war was closed by a treaty, by which Aracan and the coasts of Tenas'serim were given up to the British (1826). Previous to this, much attention was given to Spain, where a struggle between the people and the king aroused the sympathies of the people in favor of the former. The government, however, preserved a strict neutrality, but the Spanish colonies in South America having revolted, their independence was acknowledged by Great Britain.

Burmese War.

80. About the same time Greece revolted (1824), and after having struggled for several years to throw off the Turkish yoke, finally secured the aid of England, France, and Russia, whose combined fleets defeated and destroyed the Turkish and Egyptian fleet in the battle of Navarino (*nah-vah-re'no*) (1827). By this event the independence of Greece was achieved, after which it was erected into a separate kingdom, and the crown was conferred upon Prince Otho, of Bavaria. During this contest Lord Byron went to Greece to render

Greece.

Byron.

79. War against Burmah? What places were taken? What treaty terminated it? Affairs in Spain? The Spanish colonies?

80. Revolt of Greece? Battle of Navarino? Result? What followed? Lord Byron? When and where did Byron die? (*See Progressive Map No.* 6.)

aid to the oppressed inhabitants, but he did not live to see the triumph of the cause, dying at Missolon'ghi of a fever brought on by constant toil and exposure (1824).

81. The question of Catholic emancipation, so frequently agitated, was a subject of exciting discussion during most of this reign. In 1822, Canning proposed that Catholic peers should sit in parliament, and carried a bill to that effect through the House of Commons; but it was rejected by the Lords. The next year the Catholic Association, under the guidance of Daniel O'Connell, began to exercise a powerful influence. This association included among its members not only O'Connell, so celebrated for his eloquence and patriotism, but many other eminent men, among them Richard Lalor Sheil, a distinguished orator and lawyer. Subsequently, O'Connell, through the influence of the association, was elected a member of parliament (1828), and the next year took his seat, a bill for the emancipation of Catholics* having triumphantly passed both houses (1829). The subject of parliamentary reform also excited much attention at this time. George IV. died a short time afterward (June 26, 1830).

Catholic Emancipation.

DANIEL O'CONNELL.

82. The late king, not having left any heir, was succeeded by his brother, the duke of Clarence, under the title of

* By this bill the oath of supremacy was changed, and Catholics were no longer to be excluded from the right to hold any offices except those of regent, lord-chancellor of England and of Ireland, and viceroy of Ireland.

81. Catholic emancipation? Proposition of Canning? The Catholic Association and its leaders? Result of the agitation? Death of George IV.?

82. Successor of George IV.? What is said of William IV.? Parliamentary reform? How and when carried?

William IV. He was often styled the "Sailor king," having served previously in the navy. The agitation of the question of parliamentary reform was continued, and the duke of Wellington became very unpopular in consequence of his decided opposition to the measure. A change in the ministry soon took place; and a new cabinet being formed under the premiership of Earl Grey, a bill was introduced by Lord John Russell, proposing very extensive reforms. It was finally passed by the Commons, but rejected by the Lords; whereupon fearful riots occurred in many parts of the kingdom, and at last the government was compelled to yield to the demands of the people, and to accept the bill (1832).*

William IV., 1830–'37.

LORD JOHN RUSSELL

Reforms.

83. Three important changes were effected by this measure: 1. The right of sending members to parliament was withdrawn from the small districts, called "rotten boroughs," in which the representation had become obsolete; 2. Several cities, which during the previous century had grown into wealth and importance, received for the first time the right of representation in parliament; 3. The franchise, or right to vote, was extended more widely among the middle classes, being given, in towns, to the owners or tenants of houses paying a rent of £10 or upward. For county members, all were entitled to vote who owned land worth £10 a year in rent, or who paid a yearly rent of at least £50.

* Parliament had been dissolved, and an election had taken place amid great excitement. In the new house, the bill was carried by a large majority, but the Lords rejected it (October, 1831). Then it was that the terrible riots broke out; and when (March, 1832) the bill was once more sent from the Commons to the Lords, the latter at last gave their assent.

83. What three important changes were effected by this measure? What did these three changes constitute?

This constituted, without doubt, the greatest revolution which the government had experienced since 1689.*

84. The same year (1832) was marked by great disturbances in Ireland, occasioned by the opposition of the people to the Protestant Church establishment in that country, and to the payment of tithes in support of it, which were often wrung from the poor peasants, although on the verge of ruin and starvation. Daniel O'Connell also agitated the question of repealing the Union of 1801, and organized political associations to carry the measure (1833). The "Irish Coercion Bill," authorizing the lord-lieutenant to place disturbed districts under martial law, was passed, but after the expiration of a year was considerably modified by another enactment, that was carried by a ministry of which Lord Melbourne was the head (1834).

Ireland.

WILLIAM IV.

85. The year 1834 is particularly memorable for the abolition of slavery throughout all the British colonies.† The sum of £20,000,000 was awarded by Parliament to the planters as a

* In all, nearly fifty new boroughs, or parliamentary districts, were created. The large cities, such as Manchester and Birmingham, received two members each, and London four. Scotland's representation was increased from forty-five to fifty-three. By this the House of Commons became the real source of power.

† The first bill to abolish the slave trade was introduced by Wilberforce in 1791, but he was not able to secure its enactment until 1807. He then commenced an agitation of the question of negro emancipation. He died July 29, 1833, at the age of seventy-four.

84. Disturbances in Ireland? Daniel O'Connell? The Irish Coercion Bill?

85. For what is the year 1834 memorable? How were the planters compensated? How many slaves were set free? What is said of William Wilberforce? Close of this reign? For what was it marked?

compensation for the loss of the slaves emancipated, and thus nearly three-fourths of a million of human beings were set free. This measure had been advocated since 1807 by William Wilberforce, who lived just long enough to see the triumph of his life's work, dying in 1833, the year in which the bill passed, though it was not to take effect till the 1st of August of the following year. William IV.'s reign was terminated by his death in 1837; but, brief as it was, it was replete with beneficent measures, which have made it dear to the memory of the English people.

Death of William IV.

QUEEN VICTORIA. (*When she was crowned.*)

86. Victoria, daughter of the duke of Kent, and niece of William IV., succeeded the latter on the throne, being then a little over the legal age of eighteen years.* The connection between Great Britain and Hanover, which had lasted a hundred and twenty-three years, was dissolved on her accession, since the laws of the latter country excluded females from the throne. Her uncle, the duke of Cumberland, eldest surviving son of George III., accordingly succeeded William IV. as king of Hanover. Queen Victoria was a young lady of pleasing, simple manners, and possessed a character formed to habits of truthful-

Victoria, 1837.

* Victoria Alexandrina, queen of Great Britain and Ireland, and empress of India, was the only child of Edward, duke of Kent, who was the fourth son of George III. She was born at Kensington Palace, May 24, 1819.

86. Who succeeded William IV.? What union was dissolved, and why? Who became king of Hanover? Age and character of Victoria?

ness and a strict adherence to principle. No sovereign ever ascended the throne with a more solemn sense of the responsibility attending so lofty a position, or impressed with a more earnest devotion to the interests of her subjects.

87. In the first year of this reign an insurrection broke out in Lower Canada, on account of the discontent of the people toward the government, but it was soon put down and tranquillity restored. Upper and Lower Canada were afterward united into one province in order to give greater strength to the government (1840). At home everything was in a disturbed state in consequence of the discontent of the working-classes, whose sufferings from the scarcity of work, the high price of food, and the lowness of wages were extreme. Riots and insurrections against the government were the consequence, the people showing a determination to redress their grievances by resorting to physical force. A repeal of the corn laws was most vehemently demanded.

Canada.

Disturbances.

88. In connection with this agitation, a political association, called "Chartists," was formed, their object being to obtain a new charter of government, embodying universal suffrage, vote by ballot, the abolition of the property qualification for members of parliament, equal electoral districts, and the annual assembling of parliament. Great mass-meetings were held, at one of which as many as two hundred thousand persons were computed to have been present. This charter, signed by more than a million of citizens, was presented to Parliament in 1839. The demands

Chartists.

QUEEN'S CROWN.

87. Insurrection in Canada? What was the result? What caused disturbances at home? What was demanded?

88. The Chartists? Their demands? Mass-meetings? Presentation of the charter? What was the result?

of the Chartists being refused riots ensued, which were soon put down, many prominent Chartists being transported.

89. In 1840 Queen Victoria was married to Prince Albert, of Saxe-Co'burg-Go'tha (one of the German states). He was a man of refined tastes and most benevolent and enlightened views, and subsequently, through his efforts, many essential benefits were conferred upon the country. Parliament voted the "Prince-Consort" an annuity of thirty thousand pounds for life, and by a bill of naturalization conferred upon him the rights and privileges of a British citizen. A short time previous to this, the Anti-corn-law League was formed at Manchester, through the influence of Richard Cobden,* John Bright, and others, the design being to procure the abolition not only of these obnoxious and oppressive laws, but of all others that were in conflict with the principles of free trade. It was not, however, until 1846 that the corn laws were repealed by Parliament.

Corn Laws.

90. An insurrection in Cabul (*kah-bool'*) expelled the English from Af-ghan-is-tan'; and the retreating army, consisting of four thousand five hundred men, with twelve thousand camp-followers, and many women and children, perished among the mountain passes, from cold, famine, and the attacks of their enemies (1842). Later in the same year, under Lord Ellenborough,† Cabul was retaken and its forti-

* Richard Cobden, one of the most eminent of the English liberal politicians, was born in 1804. He spent the first part of his life in mercantile pursuits, and subsequently represented various constituencies in the House of Commons, where he distinguished himself by his eloquence and clearness of thought. He twice visited the United States. He has been very aptly styled the "Apostle of Free Trade." He died in 1865.

† Then governor-general of India. He had previously held prominent positions in the cabinet under the Wellington and Peel administrations. After his return from India he continued to occupy a distinguished place in

89. Marriage of Queen Victoria? Prince Albert? What did Parliament vote him? Anti-corn-law League? Its design? Repeal of the corn laws?

90. The Afghan war? What was done by Lord Ellenborough? By Sir Charles Napier? Where is Scinde? (See map of British India, page 305.) War with the Sikhs? Result of these wars?

fications destroyed; but Afghanistan was abandoned. The reduction of Scinde (*sind*), a district on the lower Indus, by Sir Charles James Napier (*nā′pe-er*),* was the next event of importance (1843), which was soon followed by a war with the Sikhs (*sĭks*) of the Pun-jab′, who, after several severe conflicts, were obliged to yield to the skill and valor of the British. The conquest of these districts gave the British government control of the entire peninsula of Hindostan (1849).

Sikh War.

91. During the same period, a war was waged with China, being brought on by the unjustifiable conduct of the British traders in opium, who insisted upon importing that drug into the empire in violation of her laws. The Chinese authorities having seized and destroyed the opium, and imprisoned the British traders who persistently defied the Chinese edicts, the English shipping retaliated, and war ensued (1840). The island of Hong Kong was captured, and an army sent from India advanced to Canton.† Further north, Amoy was taken by Sir Henry Pottinger; and, the British forces having marched to the walls of Nankin, the Chinese accepted the offered terms of peace. In accordance with the treaty, Hong Kong was ceded to the British, and five ports, including Canton, were opened to

Opium War.

the government, and attained a very high distinction for his force and eloquence as a debater.

* Sir Charles James Napier was previously distinguished for his exploits in the Peninsular war. His subsequent career in India was marked by great ability both in the civil and military service. He returned to England in 1850, and died two years afterward. The history of the conquest of Scinde was written by his brother Sir William F. P. Napier, the author of the "History of the Peninsular War," considered the greatest military history in the English language.

† All the heights behind Canton were occupied by British troops, when the Chinese authorities agreed to pay six million dollars for the ransom of the city, and hostilities then ceased for a time.

91. What was the cause of the Chinese war? What was done by the English? What were the terms of the treaty which was made?

foreign trade. The Chinese government also paid twenty-one million dollars as an indemnity for the destruction of the opium and for the expenses of the war (1842).

92. War was carried on at the same time in the Levant, the object being to preserve the empire of Turkey from the hostile encroachments of Mehemet Ali (*ma'he-met ah'le*), the pasha of Egypt, who, it was thought, was secretly abetted by Russia and France. He had taken possession of Syria, and refusing to withdraw on the demand of Turkey, supported by Austria and Great Britain, a fleet was sent to enforce obedience, and the inhabitants of Syria were encouraged in an insurrection against him (1840). After Acre and some of the other Syrian ports had been taken by Commodore Napier,* and Alexandria threatened, the pasha agreed to withdraw his troops; and a treaty was shortly concluded with him by which Egypt was virtually yielded to him as an independent monarch, he being made hereditary viceroy (1841).

Eastern War.

93. At this time the influence wielded by O'Connell in Ireland was enormous, the object of his efforts being to obtain a repeal of the union. Monster meetings were held at Tara and other places, and immense sums of money were collected from the people to aid the cause. In consequence of some seditious expressions alleged to have been used at one of these meetings, O'Connell was arrested, and condemned on a charge of conspiracy and sedition by the Court of Queen's Bench in Dublin. The judgment was afterward reversed by the House of Lords, but the agitation was crushed for the time. O'Connell, the "Liberator," as he was called, died in 1847 at Genoa, while on a pilgrimage to Rome, which he hoped to reach before his death.

O'Connell.

* Sir Charles Napier, cousin to Sir Charles James Napier, the hero of Scinde, was born in 1786, and died in 1860, after a long life of active service.

92. War in the Levant? How was it terminated? What did Egypt become?
93. Agitation in Ireland by O'Connell? Prosecution of O'Connell? His death?

94. The failure of the potato crop in Ireland led to increased distress in that unhappy country, vast numbers of the people dying of famine, notwithstanding the aid which was generously sent by England and the United States (1847). This was followed by a brief and abortive insurrection excited by the more violent members of the Repeal Association, who had styled themselves the "Young Ireland Party." Among them were William Smith O'Brien, Thomas Francis Meagher, and John Mitchell, the editor of the *United Irishmen.* The leaders were transported, but some of them subsequently succeeded in making their escape to the United States.

SIR ROBERT PEEL.

95. During the same year the Chartists, encouraged by the successful revolution in France, by which Louis Philippe had been driven from the throne (1848), renewed their agitation, and under the pretext of presenting a petition to Parliament assembled in London to the number of twenty thousand. Great alarm and excitement prevailed; but, under the skillful dispositions of the duke of Wellington, the rioters were promptly dispersed. The repeal of the Navigation Laws, which in various forms had existed for two centuries, indicated a still further advance in the principles of free trade (1849). Sir Robert Peel,* under whose energetic and enlightened administration

* Sir Robert Peel, one of the most eminent of British statesmen, was born in England in 1788. He was offered a peerage, but declined it.

94. Famine in Ireland? Insurrection under O'Brien and others?

95. Renewal of the Chartists' agitation? How terminated? What repeal took place? Death of Sir Robert Peel?

these beneficent measures had been adopted, died shortly afterward from a fall from his horse (1850).

96. The Great Exhibition, or World's Fair, for displaying the products of the manufacturing industry of all nations, was designed to encourage the same principles of free trade. It was held in London, in the Crystal Palace, at Hyde Park, a building designed by Sir Joseph Paxton, for which he was knighted. It was of immense extent and great architectural beauty (1851). The first idea of this enterprise was conceived by Prince Albert, who took a leading part in its consummation, and it had also received considerable support from Sir Robert Peel.

World's Fair.

97. A war of two years with the Caffres of south Africa (1851–'53), and a second Burmese war (1852), were the means of extending the conquests of Great Britain in those regions. By the war with the Burmese the British gained the province of Pegu. This was soon followed by a war of much greater magnitude and importance, brought on by the ambitious designs of the Czar Nicholas upon the Ottoman empire. On the ground that all members of the Greek Church should be under his government, he invaded the Danubian principalities of Wallachia and Moldavia, with the design of annexing them to his own dominions (1853).

Caffre and Burmese Wars.

98. Great Britain having protested in vain against these encroachments on the part of Russia, entered into an alliance with France, and declared war against the czar (1854). A fleet under Admiral Sir Charles Napier was sent to the Baltic, and destroyed the batteries of Bomarsund,* but failed to

* Bomarsund is on the island of Aland, in the Baltic sea.

96. The World's Fair? What was its object? Where was it held? Who was the designer of the Crystal Palace? By whom was it conceived and encouraged?

97. What wars followed? What was gained by Great Britain? Where is Pegu? (See map of British India, page 305.) What caused another war? Encroachments of the Czar Nicholas?

98. What alliance was formed? What expedition was sent to the Baltic sea? To the Black sea? Battle of Alma?

attack the great fortress of Cronstadt, at the entrance to the Russian capital. French and English fleets proceeded to the Black sea and blockaded the harbor of Sebasto'pol ;* and a French army under Marshal St. Arnaud (*ar'no*), † joined with an English force under Lord Raglan, ‡ entered the Crimea. The allied armies were opposed at the Alma § river by a Russian force under Prince Menshikoff, which they routed with considerable loss (September 20, 1854).

MAP OF THE CRIMEA.

99. Unable directly to march on Sebastopol, the allies next proceeded to the harbor of Balaklava, situated a little to the south of it, in order that they might obtain supplies from their ships. In a few weeks they advanced and opened fire upon the place, which in the mean time had been strengthened by almost impregnable fortifications. An attack by the Russians on the British lines at Balaklava was repulsed after a severe battle (October 25), chiefly memorable for the brilliant but useless charge made by the light cavalry brigade under the earl of Cardigan. Mistaking the order of Lord Raglan, this body, consisting of six hundred men, made an attack upon the Russian

* Sebastopol, a strongly fortified seaport in the Crimea –a peninsula in the southern part of Russia. The name is sometimes spelled *Sevastopol*.

† St. Arnaud had been previously distinguished in the war in Algiers. He was born at Paris in 1801. He died in 1854.

‡ Served with distinction in the Peninsular war under Wellington, also in the battle of Waterloo, where he lost his sword-arm. He was born in 1788, and was descended from one of the noblest families in England.

§ The Alma is a small river in the Crimea ; Balaklava, a town on the Black sea, southwest from Sebastopol ; Inkerman, a seaport near Balaklava.

99. Commencement of the siege of Sebastopol ? Battle of Balaklava ? Charge of the Light Brigade ?

artillery over a plain a mile and a half in length, and returned leaving more than two-thirds of their number dead on the field.

100. Another attack by the Russians at Inkerman was repulsed with terrific loss (November 5), after which the Russians kept themselves, with occasional sorties, within the defenses of the city. The sufferings of the English troops during the ensuing winter were of the most heartrending character. They were ill supplied with food and with the means of shelter from the inclemency of the weather, although several ships laden with stores were lying in the harbor of Balaklava. This neglect caused a vote of censure on the government by the House of Commons, and led to a change of administration, Lord Palmerston becoming premier.

101. Effectual means of relieving the army were at once taken. A railway was constructed from Balaklava to the camp; and, although constantly exposed to the fire of the enemy's batteries, supplies were successfully transported to the army. A submarine telegraph having been laid under the Black sea to Varna, telegrams from the seat of war communicated to the government at London the intelligence of events an hour or two after their occurrence. Notwithstanding the death of the czar and the accession of his son Alexander (March 2, 1855), the war was continued. Twice were the English and French generals changed. Canrobert (*can-ro-bare'*) assumed the command on the death of St. Arnaud, but was superseded by General Pelissier (*pa-lis'se-a*) (May, 1855). On the death of Raglan, the command of the British troops devolved upon General Simpson, who was soon succeeded by Sir William Codrington.

100. Battle of Inkerman? What was its result? Sufferings of the British troops? Change in the administration?

101. How was the army relieved? What submarine telegraph was constructed? When did the death of the czar take place? Who succeeded Nicholas? Who were the successive English and French generals?

102. The French having succeeded in storming an important outwork, called the Mamelon, a terrific bombardment was kept up for several days, after which an assault was made, resulting in the capture of the fort called the Malakoff (September 8). The English also succeeded in storming a powerful fortress called the Redan, but were unable to hold it under the dreadful fire of the Russian guns. Sebastopol was, however, no longer tenable, and was therefore abandoned by the Russians during the night. The allies immediately took possession, and caused all the fortresses and dockyards to be destroyed. Thus terminated, after a duration of eleven months, one of the most extraordinary sieges described in history.

103. The fall of Sebastopol was soon followed by negotiations for peace, which was concluded by a treaty at the commencement of the next year (1856). Russia resigned her claims to the Danubian principalities, the freedom of the Danube and the Black sea was guaranteed, and the Christian subjects of Turkey were placed under the protection of the contracting powers. It was during this war that Florence Nightingale, so illustrious for her self-sacrificing deeds of humanity, took charge of the hospital at Scutari, and devoted herself, with her band of nurses, to the relief of the sick and wounded.* Her minis-

Terms of Peace.

* Florence Nightingale was born of English parents at Florence in 1820. Although highly educated and brilliantly accomplished, she early exhibited an intense devotion to the alleviation of suffering. In 1844 she commenced to give her attention to the condition of hospitals, which she visited and inspected in various parts of Europe, and studied under the Sisters of Charity in Paris. In 1851 she took charge of a sanitarium for infirm and invalid persons in London. All this specially fitted her for the great work which she performed in the Crimea, and by means of which she sacrificed her own health. Her "Notes on Nursing" was published in 1858.

102. What is said of the storming of the Mamelon? Of the Malakoff and Redan? What followed these events? Destruction of Sebastopol? What is said of the siege and its duration?

103. When was peace concluded? The terms of the treaty? Florence Nightingale?

trations were like those of an angel to the suffering soldiers, all of whom were comforted by her presence and cheered by her gentle words of sympathy or her smiles of encouragement. Her services won for her the thanks of the nation.

104. The next year (1857) is remarkable for the Indian mutiny, occasioned by the introduction of Enfield rifles, for which it was necessary to use greased cartridges. The native soldiers, being forbidden by their religion to taste animal food, revolted, because in loading the rifles they were compelled to bite off the ends of the cartridges. A strong feeling of alarm and discontent had also been excited in the minds of the native chiefs by the dethronement of the king of Oude * (*owd*) by Lord Dalhousie, the governor-general (1856), to which was added a feeling of independence on the part of the sepoys, the result of the injudicious and inefficient management of the East India Company.

Indian Mutiny.

105. The first outbreak occurred at Mee'rut, where, a number of the sepoys having been imprisoned for refusing to use the cartridges, their comrades broke open the jail and released them, together with a large number of other prisoners. A massacre of the Europeans was immediately commenced (March 10, 1857), and the insurgents then marched on Delhi (*del'le*) and captured it, with all its immense stores of fire-arms and ammunition. This city was retaken by the British troops after a siege of two months, by means of the most desperate fighting, and with great loss of life (September). Cawnpore and Lucknow were the scenes of other insurrections. At the former place the English were massacred with frightful atrocity by the sepoys under

* Oude is in the northern part of Hindostan. Its capital is Lucknow.

104. What caused the Indian mutiny? Discontent among the native chiefs?

105. Where did the revolt commence? What followed? Recapture of Delhi? What occurred at Cawnpore and Lucknow? What is said of Havelock and Sir Colin Campbell? Of the atrocities committed? Of the punishments inflicted?

Nena Sahib (*sah'eeb*), who was afterward defeated by General Havelock* and Sir Colin Campbell.† The latter officer, acting as commander-in-chief, displayed the greatest skill and courage in his operations against the rebellion, which was finally crushed after a two years' struggle (1859). The dreadful outrages on men, women, and children perpetrated during this war by the native soldiers, and the horrible punishments afterward inflicted upon the latter by the British, scarcely find a parallel in history.

106. This insurrection having demonstrated the inability of the East India Company to govern so large a population, its possessions were transferred to the crown, and the queen was formally proclaimed sovereign of India, its affairs being managed by a special member of the cabinet (the Indian Secretary), assisted by a council, and the immediate government vested in a viceroy, with the powers formerly possessed by the governor-general (1858). Thus, after an existence of more than two hundred and fifty years, the East India Company, which had founded and governed this mighty empire, ceased to exist. Subsequently (January 1, 1877), Queen Victoria was formally invested with the title of "Empress of India," at a magnificent convention of Indian princes and state officials, held near Delhi; and was so proclaimed at Calcutta, Bombay, and Madras.

East India Company.

107. During the Indian war hostilities were resumed

* Havelock had been previously distinguished in the Afghan and Sikh wars. He died of dysentery before the Indian war ended (November, 1857).

† Sir Colin Campbell, afterward Lord Clyde, one of the most distinguished British generals of modern times, was born at Glasgow in 1792. He served in the Peninsular war, and took part in the expedition to the United States in 1814. He also served in the Chinese, Afghan, and Crimean wars, taking a prominent part in the battles of Alma and Balaklava. He received his title in 1858 as a reward for his exploits in India. He died in 1863.

106. The dissolution of the East India Company? Subsequent government of India?

107. What caused a renewal of the war with China? What was done by the English and French forces? Treaty of peace? Difficulties with Persia?

against the Chinese in consequence of their seizure of a British smuggling vessel. The English governor of Hong Kong, regarding this as a national affront, ordered the bombardment of Canton, and thus brought on another Chinese war. The French took part in it with the English; and their combined forces took Canton, stormed the defenses of Pekin, and, having reached that city, took and pillaged the emperor's summer palace. The Chinese then submitted to the terms of peace dictated by these European conquerors, throwing open the country to the merchants and missionaries of Europe (1860). Difficulties with Persia about the same time were settled in a similar manner, the British ships capturing its chief port, Bushire (*boo-sheer*),* and other towns, thus compelling the shah to sue for peace.

Chinese War.

STAR OF INDIA.

Persia.

108. By the sagacity and skill of Lord Elgin, the British minister in China, communications were opened with Japan, affording to British enterprise opportunities for a very valuable commerce with that country. The attempt to establish friendly relations with Abyssinia was not so successful. One of the native chiefs having made quite extensive conquests, assumed the title of King Theodore; and, taking offense at the English, imprisoned the consul and several other persons, subjecting them to very

Japan.

* Bushire is an important seaport, situated on the Persian gulf.

108. Commercial intercourse with Japan? Difficulties with Abyssinia? War with Theodore? Its result?

great indignities and sufferings. Every attempt to procure their release by negotiation having failed, an expedition under Sir Robert Napier, afterward Lord Napier, was sent to accomplish their rescue by force. After a difficult march of four hundred miles from the sea-coast, Magdala, the stronghold of Theodore, was reached and soon stormed. Theodore having perished by his own hand, and

Abyssinia.

REGALIA.

the captives having been released, the British retired from the country (1868).

109. Another measure of parliamentary reform was carried in 1867, the effect of which was to extend the elective franchise, and to increase the number of representatives for Scotland and Ireland by equalizing the election districts. The most important measure which has been adopted since then is the abolition of the established church in Ireland, a very tardy act of justice to that long-suffering and much-oppressed country. It was carried after

Reform.

109. Parliamentary reform ? Disestablishment of the Irish Church ?

a very violent struggle in both houses. Its effect was to free the Irish people from the support of a church to which they do not belong, and which they consider to be opposed to their own religious faith.

110. The greatest domestic affliction which the queen has suffered was the loss of Prince Albert, who died in 1861. His public spirit, beneficent character, and ardent zeal in all enterprises for the benefit of the country, and the enthusiastic interest which he took in both science and art, made him the idol of the people, and his death was deplored as a national loss.* He left four sons and five daughters. The eldest of the latter was married in 1858 to Frederic William, crown prince of Prussia; and Albert Edward, prince of Wales, was married in 1863 to Princess Alexandra, of Denmark. Several other foreign alliances by marriage have also been made.

Prince Albert's Death.

111. In 1870 an improved system of popular education was established, to which since then various amendatory measures have been added. The general result of these has been to increase very greatly the number and efficiency of the schools for the people. In 1872 the Ballot Act was passed, prescribing the use of a closed ballot in all elections for members of parliament. Dr. Livingstone, the celebrated African explorer, died the same year in central Africa, and his remains were

Education.

Dr. Livingstone.

* "With a delicacy and tact which it is difficult to describe, the prince became the judicious patron of arts and learning and national commerce; yet this was not merely courtly favor, for to his working hand and far seeing eye we owe the great exhibition of 1851, and the international of 1862; the foundation of schools of science and art throughout the country; and the advancement of Great Britain in the industrial arts, as well as in the arts of design, within a few years, with a success exceeding half a century of former growth." —Selby's *Events to be Remembered.*

110. Death of Prince Albert? His character? His children?

111. Improvements in education in 1870, and subsequently? The Ballot Act? Death and burial of Dr. Livingstone?

taken to England and buried with great ceremony in Westminster Abbey.

112. In the same year (1872) a war broke out with the Ashantees, in western Africa, caused by their attacks upon a tribe under the protection of the English. Under Sir Garnet Wolseley (*woolz'le*), the English army defeated the savages, and burned their chief town, Coomas'sie. This compelled the barbarous king to assent to a treaty of peace (1873). In order to secure control of the route to India, Great Britain purchased from the khedive of Egypt, for four millions of pounds sterling, all his shares in the Suez canal stock, amounting nearly to a one-half interest in that great work (1875).

Ashantee War.

Suez Canal.

113. In 1877 a British force entered and took possession of the Transvaal Republic, in south Africa. This incited the Boers (*boors*) living in the Transvaal to hostilities, and in 1880 a British force was disastrously defeated by them. The matter was, however, settled without further war, by a treaty (1881), the British withdrawing from the Transvaal.* The British interests were involved in the war between Russia and Turkey (1877–'78); and, during the negotiations at its close, conducted on the part of England by the prime minister, the earl of Beaconsfield (*bek'unz-feeld*), Turkey ceded the government of Cyprus to Great Britain, which cession was afterward confirmed by the treaty of Berlin (1878).

Transvaal.

Cyprus.

114. In 1878 the Afghan war broke out, caused by the intrigues of Russia to increase its Asiatic possessions, and the refusal of the ameer of Afghanistan to receive an English embassy at his court, while he

Afghan War.

112. Cause of the Ashantee war? What was done by General Wolseley? When was peace made? What purchase was made by Great Britain, and why?

113. Cause of war in the Transvaal? Who were defeated? How was it terminated? How was Cyprus acquired? *(See Appendix, p. 11.)

114. What caused the Afghan war? How did the British invade the country? The result? When and how was peace declared?

had already received one from Russia. Three British army corps invaded the country and gained important positions, after driving back or signally defeating the Afghan forces. The ameer fled from Cabul, and soon after died in the Russian territory, the war being continued by his son. The victorious English pressed on toward Cabul, and when near that city concluded a treaty of peace with the new ameer, in pursuance of which a British ambassador and suite entered the city. The British army then began to retire from the country (1879).

115. Very soon after, however, an uprising of the Afghans in Cabul, and the murder of the British ambassador and his suite, led to another advance; and General Roberts, having entered the city with his forces, hung five Afghan nobles for complicity in the massacre, and made the ameer a prisoner. Here the British were attacked by the Afghans in force; but, after a severe battle, General Roberts dispersed them, and held possession of Cabul until quiet was restored. Subsequently a British force was defeated near Candahar'; but the insurgent Afghans were totally routed by General Roberts, and Candahar was secured to the British. The country being pacified, a new ameer (Abdurrah'man Khan) having been placed on the throne, and the wishes of Great Britain complied with, the British armies were withdrawn from the country (1881).

116. Hostilities also broke out with the Zulus (or Zoo'loos), a fierce and barbarous tribe of south Africa; and, in January, 1879, a British force was attacked by the savages and almost destroyed. This led to decided measures, and under Sir Garnet Wolseley the war was brought to a speedy termination, many of the towns of the Zulus being burned and their king captured (August,

Zulu War.

115. What uprising and massacre occurred? What followed? What city was captured? Where were the British defeated? What victory followed? What was the result? How was peace made?

116. Cause of the Zulu war? Chief events? How terminated? Prince Imperial?

1879). It was during this war that the French "Prince Imperial," son of Napoleon III., who had gone to Africa to study the operations of the war, was killed while engaged with a small party in making a reconnoissance (June 1, 1879).

117. The elections for members of parliament in the spring of 1880 resulted in the defeat of the Conservative party (Tories), which caused a change in the administration, William E. Gladstone* becoming prime minister (first lord of the treasury) in place of Earl Beaconsfield.† One of the first measures of the new administration was the Irish Land Bill of 1881, rendered necessary by disturbances in Ireland, growing out of the oppressive relations existing between the landlords and the peasant tenantry. This bill was carried only after a great struggle; but, though it made important concessions to the Irish leaders, it failed to give them satisfaction.‡

Gladstone.

GLADSTONE.

Irish Land Bill.

* William E. Gladstone, celebrated not only as a statesman and orator, but as a scholar and author, was born in Liverpool in 1809. He was graduated at Oxford University in 1831, and entered the House of Commons in 1832, since which time he has been almost uninterruptedly connected with the government, having served as prime minister (from 1868 to 1874), previous to his accession in 1880. He is now a distinguished member of Parliament (1889). (See pp. 339, 374, 375, 376, 388.)

† The earl of Beaconsfield, better known as Benjamin Disraeli (*diz-ra'lee*), son of the celebrated writer, Isaac Disraeli, was born in 1805, of Jewish parents. His career in Parliament was a very distinguished one, both as a Tory leader and minister. In 1877 he became a member of the House of Lords with the title of earl. He died in 1881.

‡ This act created a special Land Commission, or court, to which the

117. Result of elections of 1880? Who became prime minister? What measure was adopted? Its effect?

118. Prominent among these agitators was Charles Stewart Parnell, who, in the preceding year (1880), had formed the Land League, of which he was chosen president. Monster meetings had been held in Dublin, Liverpool, and Hyde Park (London), at the last-named place as many as one hundred thousand persons being present. The passage of the Land Bill did not allay the excitement, but was followed by a convention of the Land League in Dublin, in which "alien rule" was denounced and "home rule"* demanded, as well as the total abolition of "landlordism," the tiller to be made the owner of the soil. Shortly after this, Parnell and other members of the League were arrested, and its offices were closed by the government (October, 1881).

Parnell.

Land League.

119. Considerable excitement followed; several dynamite explosions occurred in various parts of England, attributed to the Irish partisans, assisted by the Fenians, an organization of Irish agitators in part residing in the United States. In the mean time, the Land Law went into operation, and the court was occupied in settling difficulties and adjusting claims. The premier, Gladstone, after conference with some of the Irish leaders, released Parnell and his associates, and entered upon a changed policy in the treatment of Irish questions, appointing a new lord-lieutenant and other officers for Ireland. This measure was, however, shortly after followed by the assassina

Phœnix Park Murder.

tenants could refer all questions, such as the occupation of the land, the rent to be paid, the value of their improvements, the sale of their interests, and the cause of eviction. The bill as passed gave both landlords and tenants access to this court.

* By "home rule" is meant the re-establishment of the Irish parliament, giving to the country its own legislative government, while remaining under the general legislation of Parliament.

118. Land League? Monster meetings? Land Bill? What followed its passage? Who were arrested? What was closed?

119. What events followed? Operations of the Land Law? Gladstone's new policy? What murder was committed?

tion of the new secretary and under-secretary in Phœnix Park, Dublin (May, 1882), a diabolical crime that caused great excitement.*

120. The coercion laws that followed served to repress in great measure the operations of the friends of the Land League, though another organization was formed by patriotic Irish ladies to further the same objects. Disturbances did not, however, cease for some time, and violence and crime widely prevailed in Ireland till the next year (1883), when the government felt itself justified in proclaiming that order and obedience to law were again established in Ireland. The agitation for home rule was not terminated by this, and numerous dynamite plots were formed and executed by Irish revolutionists in various places, some with deadly effect.

121. The Phœnix Park assassins and their accomplices were discovered in 1883, and, upon the testimony of one of their number, were condemned. Five of them were executed, and others sentenced to long terms of imprisonment. Carey, the informer, emigrating to south Africa, was assassinated on shipboard near Cape Town by an Irish revolutionist, who was brought back to England and executed for the murder.

122. Owing to failures in the crops, a few years previous to this, great distress had prevailed, and the landholders had been unable to pay their rents, and thus were considerably in arrears.† To afford the tenants relief, the Arrears Act

* Lord Frederick Cavendish, the secretary, and Mr. Burke, the under-secretary, were walking in the park the day after their arrival in Ireland, when four men drove up rapidly, leaped from their carriage, and stabbed their victims several times. They then drove away. This led to a severe coercion law for the prevention of crime.

† During the wide-spread distress of that period (1879 '80), large funds were raised in the United States, as well as in Great Britain, for the relief of the starving Irish people, the whole amounting to no less than one million and a half pounds sterling.

120. What coercion laws were passed? What other disturbances occurred? Government proclamation? Dynamite plots?

121. How were the Phœnix Park assassins punished? Murder of Carey?

122. What was the Arrears Act? Its effect?

was passed (1882), by the operation of which the arrears of rent cleared off amounted, in 1883, to about two and a half millions sterling. A considerable portion of this amount was assumed by the government.

123. The immense debts owed by Egypt to foreign nations, for internal improvements and other expenditures, led to an interference in its financial administration, especially by Great Britain and France. Not only did these powers, with Austria and Italy, appoint comptrollers of finance and commissioners of the public debt, but even the principal executive offices of the Egyptian government, under the khedive, were controlled by persons of those nationalities. This state of things gave great dissatisfaction to the Egyptians, and, in 1881, led to a military insurrection under an Egyptian officer, named Arabi (*ah'rah-be*), which the khedive found himself entirely unable to subdue.

Egypt.

Arabi.

124. In June, 1882, the Arab population of Alexandria, instigated by the revolutionists, rose against the Europeans, and massacred several hundred persons, severely wounding the British, Italian, and Greek consuls. British and French fleets were in the harbor; and Admiral Seymour, of the former, perceiving that Arabi was strengthening the fortifications of the city, demanded their surrender. This being refused, he bombarded the place and silenced the forts (July 11). After an attempt to burn the town Arabi and his soldiers fled, and a force of British marines landed and took possession of it.

Alexandria.

125. The British government then resolved to send an expedition to Egypt; and, in the latter part of August, a force of 25,000 men was concentrated at Alexandria, under Sir Garnet Wolseley. Arabi's intrenched position was sud-

123. Effect of the Egyptian debt? What did this lead to?
124. Massacre at Alexandria? Bombardment of the city? What was the result?
125. What force was sent to Egypt? Under whom? What battle was fought? The result? Fate of Arabi? Honor to General Wolseley?

denly attacked, September 13, and, after a short conflict, was taken, the Egyptian army being totally routed. Cairo was entered a few days afterward, when Arabi and his principal officers were made prisoners. Arabi was tried for rebellion and sentenced to death, but the sentence was commuted to perpetual banishment. Wolseley was raised to the peerage as a reward for his signal victory.

126. The foreign administration of Egyptian finances came to an end soon afterward, while the British occupation of the country was continued. This, it was announced, was to terminate as soon as the khedive's government should be fully reorganized, and a large part of the army was withdrawn. Lord Duf'fer-in acted as British plenipotentiary in the arrangement of the new Egyptian government.

127. In the mean time, the people of the Soudan had rebelled against the Egyptian government; and this rebellion in 1883 had assumed serious proportions, under the influence of a Mohammedan zealot who assumed the character and title of the Mahdi, or expected redeemer of Islam.* His forces had become large and threatening, and he was at this time proceeding northward, making conquests as he advanced. General Hicks, an English officer in the service of the khedive, was sent against him, but was met by an immense force of Soudanese and Arabs under the Mahdi and utterly defeated, he and his whole army being slain (1883).

Soudan.

* The coming of such a redeemer was, it is said, predicted by Mohammed, and several persons in recent times have assumed the character. Mohammed Achmed, the present Mahdi, was born in 1842, in Nubia, of humble parentage. He studied and became a teacher of the Koran; then a dervis, living as a hermit for six years, and acquiring a wide reputation for sanctity. He then came forth in the character of el Mahdi (1881). An unsuccessful attempt was made at that time, by the governor-general of the Soudan, to arrest him; but Mohammed escaped, it is claimed, by divine interposition.

126. What changes occurred in Egypt? Who acted as British plenipotentiary?
127. What rebellion broke out? The Mahdi? General Hicks's defeat?

128. The British government having resolved to abandon the Soudan, General Gordon was sent to conclude the transfer of the Soudan government to the native rulers and make peace with the Mahdi.* In the beginning of 1884 he crossed the Nubian desert without escort, and reached Khartoum (*kar-toom'*), where he issued a proclamation announcing terms of peace. This did not have the effect anticipated, and, not being sustained by the British government with a sufficient military force, Gordon was compelled to shut himself up at Khartoum. Here, after active operations, he was besieged by the Mahdi, but held out for some months, while a British force under Lord Wolseley was dispatched to rescue him. Before its arrival, however, the place was taken through the treachery of some of the native troops, and Gordon was assassinated (January, 1885). Lord Wolseley afterward declared that the delay of the government in sending this force was the cause of Gordon's death.

Gordon.

129. The proclamation of Gordon in 1884, instead of serving to pacificate the country, seemed rather to encourage active hostility on the part of the rebels. The British garrisons at various points were seriously attacked, and General Graham, having been dispatched with a considerable force to

* Major general Charles George Gordon had been a prominent character in recent history. He was born in 1830, and entered the military service in 1852, during the Crimean war. He served in the expedition to China, and afterward entered the Chinese service, being appointed commander-in-chief of the army sent to put down the Taiping rebellion. This was accomplished in about two years. He was appointed in 1874, by the viceroy of Egypt, military governor of the equatorial provinces, and in 1875 annexed Darfoor to the dominions of the khedive. He did much toward destroying the slave trade in central Africa, before his retirement from the government of the Soudan in 1880. He filled several other positions previous to his last fatal mission.

128. What was Gordon's mission? What proclamation did he issue? What was the result? What was the cause of his death?

129. Effect of Gordon's proclamation? General Graham's operations? Wolseley's expedition? General Stewart's operations? What followed?

relieve them, defeated the enemy in several severe battles. When the perilous condition of Gordon at Khartoum became known in England, there was considerable excitement, and the Gladstone administration was compelled to send a relief expedition under Wolseley. The latter reached the seat of war toward the end of the year; and General Stuart, leading the advance, had a number of fierce conflicts with the enemy, in the last of which he was mortally wounded. This, and the death of Gordon, checked the advance, though hostilities continued. The British operations in the Soudan thus proved a failure (1885).

VICTORIA.

130. New and threatening complications with Russia in the spring of 1885 had the effect to withdraw the attention of the British government from the Soudan. The general commanding the Russian forces on the northern boundary of Afghanistan suddenly advanced and made an attack upon the Afghans, though British and Russian commissioners were already engaged in the settlement of the frontier dispute. The relations between Russia and Great Britain at once assumed a warlike aspect, but, after negotiations, presented a more peaceful character (1885). A short time afterward, in the same year, the Gladstone ministry experienced a defeat in Parliament, and their resignations were presented to the queen and accepted, Lord Salisbury being directed to form a new ministry.

Russian Hostilities.

131. The Salisbury ministry was, however, of short dura-

130. Complications with Russia? How caused? Change in the ministry?

131. The Salisbury ministry? Its successors? What caused their defeat? What followed? What is meant by home rule?

tion. Another election took place, and in the new parliament Gladstone again came into office at the head of a Liberal ministry. A few months later, he introduced a bill for home rule in Ireland—that is, for establishing a subordinate Irish parliament to legislate upon Irish interests. On this question, though having the full support of the Irish members, the Gladstone government was defeated, and an election for a new parliament was ordered (1886).

Gladstone, Premier.

132. This election resulted in the defeat of the Gladstone party, and the return of a large Tory, or Conservative, majority. A new cabinet was therefore formed under Lord Salisbury, and the Coercion Act was soon afterward passed, with other measures designed to crush out the Irish movement for a redress of wrongs, and especially the demands for home rule. The Queen's Jubilee, in commemoration of the fiftieth anniversary of the commencement of her reign, was celebrated in the summer of 1887, with great pomp, splendor, and enthusiasm.

Salisbury, Premier.

133. The Tory government in Ireland was very determined and severe in its efforts to enforce the Coercion Act (1888). Many of the Irish patriots, persons distinguished for their talents and high position, were thrown into prison, and there treated with peculiar harshness, on account of their determined resistance to the governmental measures, designed to destroy the National League. Mr. Gladstone persevered in his support of home rule and other measures for the relief of the Irish people, particularly in regard to the arrears of rent. An attack was made on Mr. Parnell by the London *Times* newspaper, charging him with complicity in the Phœnix Park murders (¶ 119) and other

132. Result of the election? New cabinet? Coercion Act? The Queen's Jubilee?
133. Measures of the government in Ireland? Arrests? Object of the course pursued? Mr. Gladstone? Charges against Mr. Parnell? How disproved?

crimes. This led to the appointment of a judicial commission by Parliament, and on the trial it was proved that the *Times's* charges were based on forged letters (1889).

134. In 1888 some additions were made to the British empire in Asia and Africa. A protectorate was proclaimed over northern Borneo, and military operations were successfully conducted in Sikkim, on the northern slope of the Himmaleh mountains, in the southern part of Thibet. New territory was acquired in eastern and southern Africa, and an uprising in Zululand was suppressed. The aggressive followers of the Mahdi (¶ 127, page 372, note) in the Soudan were met by a British force and defeated. Again, for the fourth time, Gladstone attained the premiership (1892), which, in consequence of his failing eyesight, he resigned in 1894, when he was succeeded by Lord Rosebery. A change in the ministry in 1895, followed by a new Parliament, brought Lord Salisbury again into power as Premier.

STATE OF SOCIETY SINCE THE ACCESSION OF GEORGE IV.

1. During this period, extending from 1820 to 1891, the political changes which have occurred indicate a marked progress in liberal government, and the spread of enlightened views as to the rights and privileges of the middle and lower orders of the people. Sounder and more judicious principles of government have prevailed, as are indicated by the repeal of the corn and navigation laws, the measures of parliamentary reform adopted, and the establishment of a free-trade policy. The emancipation of the Catholics from the political disabilities under which they suffered so long, and the admission of Jews to parliament (1858), are additional indications of the progress of enlightened sentiments, and the extinction of those prejudices which are the offspring of ignorance and bigotry.

2. The severity of criminal law has been greatly mitigated, in pursuance of a policy advocated during the first part of the century by Sir Samuel Romilly, Sir James Mackintosh, and others. Petty theft, until 1808, was punished by death, and the execution of scores of criminals together was a frequent spectacle in London. In 1837 a bill was passed abolishing the death penalty for at least two-thirds of the crimes to which it had been assigned; and since that time it has been further restricted, and the whole character of criminal legislation has been greatly ameliorated.

3. The progress of pure religious sentiment has been strikingly manifested by the establishment of very many societies for the propagation of Christianity, the diffusion of religious knowledge, and the philanthropic aid as well as the instruction of the ignorant, the destitute, and the suffering

1. Political changes during the last half-century? What indications of a sounder and more enlightened policy? Catholic emancipation?

2. Changes in criminal law? The death penalty?

3. How has the progress of religious sentiment been indicated? The cause of education? What societies have been founded with this aim?

in all parts of the kingdom, while the foreign missionary enterprises have been very numerous and active. Much has also been done to promote the cause of general education, by the successful establishment of a well-organized system of national schools, and by the institution of societies for the spread of knowledge among the people. Of the latter, the London Mechanics' Institute, founded in 1823; the Society for the Diffusion of Useful Knowledge, instituted in 1826; and the University of London, founded in 1828, are examples.

4. The material progress made by the nation during this period has been truly wonderful. The achievements in science and art perhaps surpass those of all the preceding centuries combined, and bring to the poorest classes comforts and conveniences which could not previously have been enjoyed by kings and nobles. The country has been crossed in every direction by railroads of the very best construction; ocean steam-vessels have revolutionized commerce and navigation; the electric telegraph, invented in the United States, and the telephone have brought every part of the kingdom into instant communication with all other parts of the civilized world; while the building of iron-clad war-steamers and the construction of improved ordnance have changed entirely the character of maritime warfare. The improvements in printing, including the general use of stereotype and electrotype plates, and the steam printing-press, have greatly facilitated the diffusion of knowledge, and augmented the number of journals, periodicals, and books of all kinds circulated among the people.

MORSE.

4. Material progress of the country? Progress of science and art? What other improvements have been effected?

5. The literature of this period is resplendent with works of genius in every department of composition. This will be obvious from the following brief descriptive sketch, in which are mentioned the most prominent authors with their most celebrated productions.

I. During the time preceding the accession of Queen Victoria may be distinguished, among the poets, the following :

John Keats (1796-1821), author of *Endymion* and *Hyperion*, with several minor poems. *Hyperion* was left unfinished. These works are characterized by a vivid fancy and singular power of expression, and, had the author lived, it is generally believed he would have attained a very high rank in the annals of poetic literature.

Lord Byron (George Gordon Noel) (1788–1824) was perhaps the most brilliant genius of this period. His chief poems are *Childe Harold*, *The Corsair*, *Don Juan*, and the dramas *Cain* and *Manfred*. His poems contain lofty flights of imagination, with splendid diction and imagery ; but are greatly disfigured by his moody, misanthropic turn of mind.

LORD BYRON.

Percy Bysshe Shelley (1792–1822), author of many splendid poems and dramas. His genius was of the highest order, but he was very eccentric both as a writer and a man.

Thomas Moore (1779–1852), noted particularly for his Irish Melodies. His largest piece is *Lalla Rookh*, an Oriental romantic poem, abounding in beautiful passages. He also wrote

5. Improvements in printing ? Their effect ? The literature of the period ? Some of the most prominent poets during the first part of the period ? Prose writers ?

several prose works, of which his *Life of Lord Byron* is, perhaps, the most popular. Moore had superior talents as a vocalist, and sang his own Melodies with great effect.

Thomas Campbell (1777–1844), author of *Pleasures of Hope, Gertrude of Wyoming, Hohenlinden,* and several smaller pieces. His odes are especially admired.

SCOTT.

Robert Southey (1774–1843), the writer of many poems and prose works.

Samuel T. Coleridge (1772–1834), a writer of genius both in prose and poetry. Coleridge, Southey, and Wordsworth were called the "Lake Poets," because they resided for a time in the picturesque region of northwestern England, which abounds in lakes.

Sir Walter Scott (1771–1832), more noted as a novelist than a poet, was the author of many poems of great merit, as *The Lay of the Last Minstrel, The Lady of the Lake,* and *Marmion.*

Samuel Rogers (1763–1855), author of *Pleasures of Memory,* also *Italy* and other much-admired poems, more distinguished for their polished diction than for fervid fancy or bold originality.

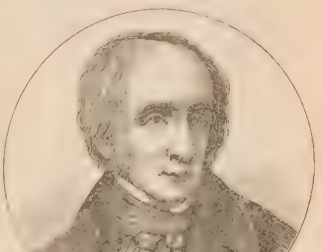
James Montgomery (1771–1854), author of many beautiful poems, including hymns.

Robert Pollok (1799–1827), author of *The Course of Time.*

Felicia D. Hemans (Mrs.) (1794–1835), authoress of many popular poems.

Letitia E. Landon (1802–1838), a poetess and novelist of remarkable genius.

Thomas Hood (1798–1845), the far-famed humorist, author of many pathetic pieces, *The Bridge of Sighs, Song of the Shirt,* etc.



WORDSWORTH.

William Wordsworth (1770–1850), poet laureate of England, author of *The Excursion, Ode on the Intimations of Immortality,* and many other poems.

James Sheridan Knowles (1784–1862), a distinguished dramatist, who wrote *William Tell*, *The Hunchback*, etc. He also wrote several novels.

Sir Thomas Noon Talfourd (1795–1854), a dramatic poet of great celebrity. He wrote the tragedy *Ion*, the *Athenian Captive*, and several other dramas.

II. Among the eminent prose writers of this period may be mentioned especially:

Frances Burney (Countess D'Arblay) (1752–1840), daughter of Dr. Charles Burney, belongs to several periods, as her first work was published in the reign of George III., and her last in that of Victoria. She was noted for her novels, particularly *Evelina*, which Edmund Burke and Samuel Johnson very highly commended. The *Diary of Madame D'Arblay* was published in 1840, and reviewed by Macaulay, by whom it was commended as one of the most charming books of the kind ever written. It is a journal of the life of the authoress, extending over about three-quarters of a century.

MACAULAY.

Anna Letitia Barbauld (Mrs.) (1743–1825), celebrated for her books for children—*Early Lessons*, *Hymns in Prose*, etc.

Maria Edgeworth (1767–1849), a writer of moral fiction, and many interesting works for children.

Dugald Stewart (1753–1828), author of several works on moral and intellectual philosophy.

Sir James Mackintosh (1765–1832), brilliant as a statesman, a jurist, and a writer.

Henry Hallam (1777–1859), author of the *History of the Middle Ages*, *Literature of Europe*, etc.

John Lingard (1771–1851), author of the *History of England*, his best-known work.

Thomas Arnold (1795–1842), head-master of the noted Rugby school, author of the *History of Rome* and *Lectures on Modern History*.

Lord Jeffrey (1773–1850), editor of the *Edinburgh Review*, and distinguished as an essayist and critic.

Lord Brougham (1779–1868), brilliant as a statesman and an orator, and a very versatile writer.

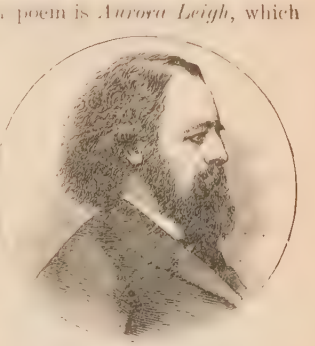
Charles Lamb (1775–1834), a humorist and original writer, best known for his *Essays of Elia*.

Thomas de Quincey (1786–1859), known as the *English Opium Eater*, one of the most brilliant and versatile writers of his age—a great master of the English language. His writings chiefly consist of essays and sketches written for the magazines.

6. The *Victorian Age*, including more than half of the century, from 1837 to 1889, is especially noted for the splendor, variety, and copiousness of the works of genius which have been produced. In the field of poetry should be particularly mentioned the following:

Alfred Tennyson (1809–1892), author of *In Memoriam*, *Locksley Hall*, *Idyls of the King*, *Enoch Arden*, etc. During his life Tennyson by some was pronounced the greatest living poet. From 1850 he was the poet laureate, having been the successor of Wordsworth in that dignity. The well-known *Charge of the Light Brigade* and other poems were written by him in that capacity. (See note, p. 289.)

Elizabeth B. Browning (1809–1861), a poetess of great power and originality. Her longest and best-known poem is *Aurora Leigh*, which was published in 1856. Her works are characterized by fervor of feeling, purity of sentiment, and delicacy and beauty of expression.



TENNYSON.

Robert Browning (1812–1889), husband of E. B. Browning, whose dramas and dramatic lyrics have been greatly admired. According to some critics, he ranks with the most distinguished poets of his age, particularly for his keen analysis and deep insight into human character, and his remarkable vigor of expression.

Jean Ingelow (Miss) (born in 1830), a lyric poet of considerable merit. Many of her poems have attained a very wide popularity, both in

6. What is said of the literature of the Victorian age? What poets are referred to and what is said of each?

England and in the United States. Among these may be especially mentioned *Songs of Seven*, *Divided*, *The High Tide on the Coast of Lincolnshire*, and *The Monitions of the Unseen*.

Matthew Arnold (1822–1888), son of Thomas Arnold, of Rugby, author of several volumes of poetry generally admired, and commended highly by the critics. His prose writings, *Essays on Criticism*, *Literature and Dogma*, with many other works, gave him a high rank in the literary world.

DICKENS.

Algernon C. Swinburne (born in 1837), a poet of peculiar merit, whose works evince a fertility of fancy, a singular power of expression, and much lyrical fervor. He has written many fine poems.

7. The prose writers of this period are very numerous in every department of composition. Only a few can here be mentioned:

Thomas B. Macaulay (1800–1859), a brilliant essayist, critic, and historian; his *Miscellaneous Essays* and the *History of England* are the best known of his works.

THACKERAY.

Lord Lytton (Bulwer) (1805–1873), especially noted as a novelist; author of *Rienzi*, *Last Days of Pompeii*, *The Last of the Barons*, etc., besides many poems. His translation of the poems of Schiller is much admired.

George Eliot (Mrs. Lewes) (1820–1880), among the most gifted writers of her time; her chief works are novels, among which *Adam Bede*, *Romola*, and *Middlemarch* are perhaps the most celebrated. Her critical and literary essays written for the British reviews display great ability.

7. What prose writers are mentioned? What is said of each?

Charles Dickens (1812–1870), one of the greatest of novelists; his works are numerous and exceedingly popular. His last work, *The Mystery of Edwin Drood*, was left unfinished.

Charles Kingsley (Rev.) (1819–1875), author of *Alton Locke, Tailor and Poet: Hypatia: Hereward, the Last of the English: Westward Ho!* and other novels of great merit. He took great interest in the elevation and Christianization of the working-classes, and many of his writings are devoted to that cause.

Charlotte Brontë (1816–1855), a novelist of great fame, author of *Jane Eyre* and other works of merit. Her two sisters, Anne and Emily Brontë, also wrote novels that display unusual vigor and originality in the description of natural scenery and the delineation of character, but with wild and eccentric conception. They died in 1848 and 1849 respectively.

GEORGE ELIOT.

William M. Thackeray (1811–1863), an eminent novelist; author of *Vanity Fair, Henry Esmond, The Virginians*, etc. As a satirist of the follies and vices of fashionable society he is wholly unsurpassed.

Archibald Alison (Sir) (1792–1867), author of *History of Europe, Life of Marlborough*, and numerous essays.

George Grote (1794–1871), author of *History of Greece* and other historical works, showing profound scholarship and research.

Charles Merivale (Rev.) (1808–1874), author of the *History of the Romans* and other historical works.

James A. Froude (1818–1894), author of the *History of England from the Fall of Wolsey to the Defeat of the Spanish Armada, Short Studies on Great Subjects*, a volume of miscellaneous essays, and the *Life of Carlyle*. He also published Carlyle's *Reminiscences*.

John Stuart Mill (1806–1873), one of the profoundest thinkers of his time, author of *System of Logic, Principles of Political Economy*, etc.

Henry T. Buckle (1821–1862), author of *History of Civilization in England*, a very great work, which he did not live to complete.

Benjamin Disraeli (earl of Beaconsfield) (1805–1881), a writer of great eminence, particularly in the field of fictitious literature. His best-known novels are *Vivian Grey, Venetia*, and *Lothair*.

John Ruskin (born in 1818), the noted writer on art. His great works are the *Seven Lamps of Architecture*, the *Stones of Venice*, *Elements of Drawing*, and numerous other works, both on art and political economy.

William E. Gladstone (born in 1809), considered by some the greatest English statesman and orator of the nineteenth century, and a writer of great scholarship and culture, author of *Juventus Mundi*, *Studies on Homer and the Homeric Age*, and *Gleanings of Past Years*. (See note, page 368.)

Thomas Carlyle (1795–1881), a very powerful and original writer, author of *The French Revolution*, *Life of Frederick the Great*, and many other works.

CARLYLE.

Among writers distinguished in various departments of science may be enumerated the following:

Sir David Brewster (1781–1868), author of *Natural Magic*, etc.

Sir John F. W. Herschel (1792–1871), son of Sir William Herschel, and one of the most illustrious astronomers of the world. His greatest work is an account of his observations made at the Cape of Good Hope; but his most popular publications are the *Outlines of Astronomy* and *Familiar Lectures on Scientific Subjects*.

Sir Charles Lyell (1797–1875), among the most eminent of the geological thinkers and writers of the century. His chief work is *The Principles of Geology*, to which were added *The Elements of Geology*, and the *Antiquity of Man*.

Hugh Miller (1802–1856), also noted for his works on geological subjects.

William Whewell, D.D. (1794–1866), author of the *History of the Inductive Sciences*.

John Tyndall (1820–1893), author of many works on physical science, prominent among which are *Heat considered as a Mode of Motion*, *Lectures on Sound*, *Lectures on Light*, and *The Forms of Water*.

Herbert Spencer (born in 1820), one of the most distinguished scientists and philosophers of his time. His chief works are *Social Statics*, *Illustrations of Universal Progress*, *Principles of Biology*, *Principles of Psychology*, *The Study of Sociology*, and *Essays on Education*.

Charles Darwin (1809–1882), an eminent naturalist; author of *The Origin of Species*, and other works presenting various original scientific theories, constituting what has been called the "Darwinian Philosophy."

Thomas H. Huxley (1825–1895), noted for his researches in zoölogy, and his lectures and writings on different branches of physical science. To a profound knowledge of his special departments of science, he adds a remarkable power of illustration, and a charming simplicity, force, and clearness of style.

Richard A. Proctor (1837–1888), noted for his popular writings on astronomy. His principal works are *Saturn and its System*, *Other Worlds than Ours*, *The Sun*, and *The Moon*.

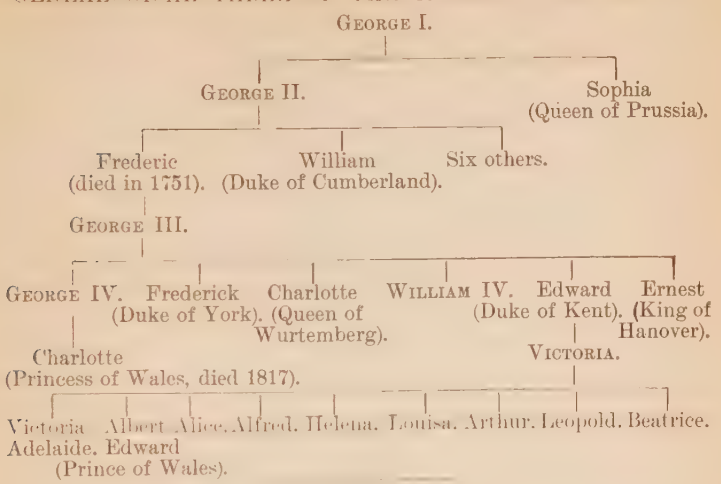
CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

A.D.

1714. George I. Reigned 13 years.
1715. Invasion of Scotland by James, the Pretender.
1720. The South Sea bubble.
1721. Commencement of Sir Robert Walpole's administration.
1727. George II. Reigned 33 years.
1743. Battle of Dettingen.
1745. Battle of Fontenoy.
" Invasion of Scotland by Charles Edward, the Pretender.
1746. Battle of Culloden.
1748. Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle.
1759. Capture of Quebec, and death of General Wolfe.
1760. George III. Reigned 60 years.
1775. War of the American Revolution.
1783. The American colonies acknowledged free and independent
1788. Trial of Warren Hastings commenced.
1798. Battle of the Nile.
1801. Legislative Union of Great Britain and Ireland.
1802. Peace of Amiens.
1805. Battle of Trafalgar. Death of Lord Nelson.
1809. Battle of Corunna. Death of Sir John Moore.
1814. Treaty of Ghent. Peace declared with the United States.
1815. Battle of Waterloo.
1820. George IV. Reigned 10 years.
1827. Battle of Navarino. Greece made an independent kingdom.

1830. William IV. Reigned 7 years.
1834. Slavery abolished in all the British colonies.
1837. Victoria.
1841. Afghan war. Cabul taken. Chinese war.
1846. Conquest of Scinde by Sir Charles Napier.
" Corn laws repealed.
1849. Repeal of the navigation laws.
1854. Battles of the Alma, Balaklava, and Inkerman.
1855. Capture of Sebastopol. End of the Crimean war.
1857. Indian mutiny. Delhi taken. Chinese war.
1858. Abolition of the East India Company.
1861. Death of Prince Albert.
1868. Expedition to Abyssinia.
1869. Disestablishment of the Irish Church.
1870. New system of popular education.
1872. Ashantee war.
1877. Occupation of the Transvaal.
1878. Cession of Cyprus to England.
" Afghan war commenced.
1879. War with the Zulus.
1880. War with the Boers.
1881. Close of the Afghan war.
" Irish Land Bill passed.
1882. Phœnix Park murder.
" Arrears Act passed.
" Revolt in Alexandria.
" Defeat of Arabi Pasha.
1883. Rebellion in the Soudan.
" Defeat and death of General Hicks.
1884. Mission of General Gordon.
" Wolseley's expedition to the Soudan.
1885. Assassination of General Gordon.
" Boundary dispute with Russia.
1886. Defeat of Home Rule Bill.
1888. Passage of the Coercion Act.

GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE HOUSE OF BRUNSWICK.



TOPICAL REVIEW.

NARRATIVE.

When did the event occur?
What led to it?
What resulted therefrom?

PAGE

Insurrection in Scotland..... 293
Defeat of James the Pretender.....293, 294
Difficulties with Sweden..... 294
Trouble with Spain..... 294
The South Sea scheme..... 294
Death of George I.....295 *n*
Hostilities with Spain..... 296
War of the Austrian Succession....297, 298
Battle of Dettingen 298
Battle of Fontenoy..... 299
Expedition of Charles Edward.....299, 300
Battle of Culloden..... 300
War with France..... 301
Taking of Quebec..... 302
Seven Years' War.....302, 303
Battle of Minden..... 303
Conquest of India..... 304
Battle of Plassey..... 306
The Family Compact..... 308
Passage of the Stamp Act..... 310
War with the American colonies...312, 313

PAGE

Death of Chatham..... 314
The armed neutrality 314
Naval victory by John Paul Jones..... 315
Trial of Warren Hastings.....315, 316
French Revolution..... 317
War against Napoleon...317, 318, 320, 322, 323, 328, 329
Insurrection in Ireland 319, 321
Legislative union of England and Ireland.....319, 320
Battle of Trafalgar..... 322
The Peninsular War..... 324
War in Portugal.....324, 325
Battle of Waterloo..... 329
War with the United States.....327, 328
Parliamentary reform.....330, 349, 364
Catholic Relief Bill 334
Gordon riots 335
Trial of Queen Caroline.....345, 346
Burmese War..... 347
Battle of Navarino..... 347
Catholic emancipation..... 348
Abolition of slave trade..... 350
Abolition of slavery in the colonies.350, 351
Agitation by the Chartists 352, 356

PAGE

Repeal of the corn laws..... 353
Sikh War..... 353
Opium War..... 354
Eastern War..... 355
Famine in Ireland..... 356
The World's Fair..... 357
Caffre War..... 357
Crimean War.....357, 358, 359, 360
Indian Mutiny.....361, 362
Dissolution of the East India Company..... 362
Chinese War..... 363
Abyssinian War.....363, 364
Ashantee War..... 366
Hostilities on the Transvaal..... 366
Afghan War..... 366
Zulu War..... 367
Irish Land Bill..... 368
Phœnix Park murder.....369, 370
Arrears Act.....370, 371
Arabi's insurrection.....371, 372
War in the Soudan..... 372
Gladstone administration of 1885-'86.....374, 375
Salisbury administration..... 375
Queen's Jubilee..... 375
Coercion Act of 1888..... 375

DISTINGUISHED PERSONAGES.

Who were they?
With what events connected?
Other incidents of their lives, or of what were they the inventors or authors?

James the Pretender.....293, 294
Lord Stanhope..... 295
Sir Isaac Newton..... 295
Queen Sophia Dorothea..... 295
Queen Caroline..... 296
Sir Robert Walpole.....296 *n*, 298
General Oglethorpe.....297 *n*
Commodore Anson.....297 *n*
Charles Edward, Pretender..299, 300, 301 *n*
Duke of Cumberland.....300, 303, 351
Lord Loval.....301 *n*
General Wolfe..... 302
Aurungzebe..... 304
Robert Clive.....306 *n*

PAGE

Daniel Defoe.....307
Jonathan Swift..... 307
Sir Eyre Coote.....307 *n*, 315
James Thomson..... 308, 343
Isaac Watts..... 308
Richard Bentley..... 308
Robert Blair..... 308
William Pitt, Elder.....308, 309, 311, 314
John Wilkes..... 310
Lord North..... 311
Edmund Burke..... 312, 315, 344
Charles James Fox..... 312, 323
George Washington..... 312
General Burgoyne..... 313
General Cornwallis..... 313, 315
John Paul Jones..... 315 *n*
Warren Hastings.....315, 316 *n*
Napoleon Bonaparte..... 317, 329
William Pitt, Younger..... 316, 323 *n*
Horatio Nelson..... 317, 318, 320, 321 *n*
Sir Ralph Abercrombie..... 320
Robert Emmet..... 321
Sir Arthur Wellesley, duke of Wellington..... 324, 325, 326, 327, 328, 329
Sir John Moore..... 325
George Canning..... 325, 348
William Cobbett..... 330 *n* 333
Thomas Paine..... 333 *n*
George Whitefield..... 334 *n*
Robert Raikes..... 334
John Wesley..... 334 *n*
Lord George Gordon..... 335
Robert Fulton..... 336 *n*
James Hargreaves..... 337 *n*
Sir Richard Arkwright..... 338 *n*
James Watt..... 338 *n*
Josiah Wedgwood..... 339 *n*
James Brindley..... 339 *n*
George Stephenson..... 340 *n*
William Hogarth..... 340 *n*
Sir Joshua Reynolds..... 340 *n*
George Frederick Handel..... 341 *n*
John Gay.....341 *n*, 342
Thomas Augustine Arne..... 341 *n*
Charles Burney..... 341 *n*
Sir Humphry Davy..... 341 *n*
Sir William Herschel..... 342
John Hunter..... 342
Edward Young..... 342
William Collins..... 343

	PAGE
Oliver Goldsmith	343
Thomas Gray	343
Mark Akenside	343
Thomas Chatterton	343
Robert Burns	343
William Cowper	343
James Beattie	344
Philip Doddridge	344
Samuel Johnson	344
David Hume	344
William Robertson	344
Edward Gibbon	344
Laurence Sterne	344
Horace Walpole	344
Caroline of Brunswick	345, 346 *n*
Henry Brougham	346, 385
Lord Castlereagh	347
Lord Byron	347, 382
Daniel O'Connell	348, 350, 355
Lord John Russell	349
Lord Melbourne	350
William Wilberforce	350 *n*, 351
Queen Victoria	351 *n*
Prince Albert	353, 357, 365
Richard Cobden	353 *n*
John Bright	353
Lord Ellenborough	353 *n*
Sir Charles James Napier	354 *n*
Sir Charles Napier	355 *n*, 357
Sir Robert Peel	356 *n*
Sir Joseph Paxton	357
Lord Raglan	358 *n*, 359
Florence Nightingale	360 *n*
General Havelock	362 *n*
Sir Colin Campbell	362 *n*
Sir Garnet Wolseley	366, 367, 371, 373, 374
General Roberts	367
William E. Gladstone	368 *n*, 369, 374, 375
Earl of Beaconsfield	368 *n*, 387
Charles Stewart Parnell	369
Lord Dufferin	372
General Gordon	373 *n*
John Keats	382
Percy Bysshe Shelley	382
Thomas Moore	382
Thomas Campbell	383
Robert Southey	383
Samuel T. Coleridge	383
Sir Walter Scott	383
Samuel Rogers	383

	PAGE
James Montgomery	383
Robert Pollok	383
Felicia D. Hemans	383
Letitia E. Landon	383
Thomas Hood	383
William Wordsworth	383
James Sheridan Knowles	384
Sir Thomas N. Talfourd	384
Frances Burney	384
Ann Letitia Barbauld	384
Maria Edgeworth	384
Dugald Stewart	384
Sir James Mackintosh	384
Henry Hallam	384
John Lingard	384
Thomas Arnold	384
Lord Jeffrey	384
Charles Lamb	385
Thomas de Quincey	385
Alfred Tennyson	385
Elizabeth B. Browning	385
Robert Browning	385
Jean Ingelow	385
Matthew Arnold	386
Algernon C. Swinburne	386
Thomas B. Macaulay	386
Lord Lytton (Bulwer)	386
George Eliot (Mrs. Lewes)	386
Charles Dickens	387
Charlotte Brontë	387
William M. Thackeray	387
Archibald Alison (Sir)	387
George Grote	387
Charles Merivale	387
James A. Froude	387
John Stuart Mill	387
Henry T. Buckle	387
John Ruskin	388
William E. Gladstone	388
Thomas Carlyle	388
David Brewster	388
Sir John F. W. Herschel	388
Sir Charles Lyell	388
Hugh Miller	388
William Whewell	388
John Tyndall	388
Herbert Spencer	388
Charles Darwin	389
Thomas H. Huxley	389
Richard A. Proctor	389

THE SOVEREIGNS OF ENGLAND.

DYNASTY.	NAME.	DESCENT.	DATE OF ACCESS'N.	DATE OF DEATH.	AGE.	LENGTH OF REIGN.
Saxons.	Egbert	First King	827	837	—	10
	Ethelwolf	Son of Egbert	837	858	—	21
	Ethelbald	Son of Ethelwolf	858	860	—	2
	Ethelbert	" "	858	866	—	8
	Etheldred I.	" "	866	871	—	5
	Alfred	" "	871	901	—	30
	Edward the Elder	Son of Alfred	901	925	—	24
	Athelstan	Son of Edward	925	940	—	15
	Edmund	" "	940	946	—	6
	Edred	" "	946	955	—	9
	Edwy	Son of Edmund	955	958	—	3
	Edgar	" "	958	975	—	17
	Edward the Martyr	Son of Edgar	975	979	—	4
	Ethelred II.	Half Brother of Edgar	979	1016	—	37
	Edmund Ironside	Son of Ethelred	1016	1016	—	1
Danes.	Canute	Conquest and Election	1017	1035	—	18
	Harold I.	Son of Canute	1035	1040	—	5
	Hardicanute	" "	1040	1042	—	2
Saxons.	Edward the Confessor	Son of Ethelred II.	1042	1066	—	24
	Harold II.	Brother-in-law of Edward	1066	1066	—	0
Normans.	William I.	Conquest	1066	1087	60	21
	William II.	Son of William I.	1087	1100	43	13
	Henry I	" "	1100	1135	67	35
	Stephen	Grandson of William I.	1135	1154	49	19

Plantagenets. York. Lancaster.	Henry II	Grandson of Henry I.	1154	1189	56	35
	Richard I.	Son of Henry II.	1189	1199	42	10
	John	" "	1199	1216	51	17
	Henry III.	Son of John.	1216	1272	65	56
	Edward I.	Son of Henry III.	1272	1307	67	35
	Edward II.	Son of Edward I.	1307	1327	43	20
	Edward III	Son of Edward II.	1327	1377	65	50
	Richard II.	Grandson of Edward III	1377	——	33	22
	Henry IV	" "	1399	1413	46	14
	Henry V.	Son of Henry IV.	1413	1422	34	9
	Henry VI	Son of Henry V.	1422	1471	49	39
	Edward IV	Great-grandson of Edward III.	1461	1483	41	22
	Edward V	Son of Edward IV.	1483	1483	12	0
	Richard III	Brother of Edward IV.	1483	1485	33	2
Tudors.	Henry VII.	Descendant (5th degree) of Edward III.	1485	1509	52	24
	Henry VIII.	Son of Henry VII.	1509	1547	55	38
	Edward VI	Son of Henry VIII	1547	1553	16	6
	Mary	Daughter of Henry VIII.	1553	1558	42	5
	Elizabeth	" "	1558	1603	69	45
Stuarts.	James I.	Descendant of Henry VII.	1603	1625	58	22
	Charles I	Son of James I.	1625	1649	48	24
Commonwealth.	Oliver Cromwell	Lord Protector	1653	1658	—	—
	Richard Cromwell	" "	1658	R. 1659	—	—
Stuarts Restored.	Charles II	Son of Charles I.	1660	1685	54	25
	James II.	" "	1685	D. 1689	68	3
	William and Mary	(Mary) Daughter of James II	1689	1694	32	6
	William III.	Grandson of Charles I	1694	1702	51	13
	Anne	Daughter of James II.	1702	1714	49	12
Hanover, or Brunswick. (Guelphs.)	George I.	Great-grandson of James I.	1714	1727	67	13
	George II.	Son of George I	1727	1760	77	33
	George III	Grandson of George II.	1760	1820	82	60
	George IV	Son of George III	1820	1830	68	10
	William IV	" "	1830	1837	72	7
	Victoria	Granddaughter of George III	1837	——	—	—

APPENDIX.

I. THE BRITISH CONSTITUTION.

1. The Constitution of Great Britain, unlike our Federal and State constitutions, is composed of the whole body of public law, including all the various political principles established at different times by legislative enactment, and expressing the general will of the nation. No part of English history is more interesting or instructive than that which exhibits the development of this political system, as the great mass of the people gradually emerged from a condition of ignorance and servitude to one of enlightenment and freedom. By revolution after revolution, each branch of government received its proper limitation, and the sovereign power virtually passed from the hands of the sceptered monarch to the voice of the people, as expressed by their representatives in Parliament.

PARLIAMENT HOUSE. (*London.*)

2. Parliament consists of two branches—the House of Lords and the House of Commons. In the former are represented the interests of the nobility, or aristocracy, and those of the Church, which is established by law. Hence there are lords spiritual and lords temporal in this, called the "Upper House"; the former consisting of twenty-six prelates of the Church of England and four of the Irish Church. The number of lords temporal is not permanently fixed, the sovereign having the power to increase it by conferring new titles. Of these there are five ranks: dukes, marquises, earls, viscounts, and barons, all of whom, collectively, are styled lords, or peers of the realm.

3. The House of Lords is an hereditary body, as far as regards the English peers : the Irish peers serve for life, and the Scottish peers sit only during one parliament. The latter are sixteen in number ; of the Irish peers there are twenty-eight. Both of these are respectively elected by the peerage of the country which they represent. The House of Lords can alone originate any bills that affect the rights or privileges of the nobility, and no amendments or alterations can be made in them by the Commons. This House is also the highest judicial tribunal in the kingdom. Peers can be tried only therein, as well as officers of State when impeached by the Lower House. It is also the last court of appeal from all other tribunals of inferior jurisdiction. The number of members of this House generally exceeds, in the aggregate, four hundred.

4. The House of Commons includes the representatives of counties, cities, boroughs, and some of the universities, the whole number amounting to six hundred and fifty-eight, nearly five-eighths of whom are returned by England and Wales. The principal element of power possessed by the Commons is the exclusive right to vote supplies for the carrying on of the government. All money-bills must, therefore, originate in this House, and may be rejected, but cannot be altered, by the Lords. No parliament can sit longer than seven years ; and a new parliament must be summoned by the sovereign within six months after his accession, and within three years from the dissolution of any parliament.

5. The executive power is exercised by the sovereign, but only through ministers, who are responsible to the people for every act performed by royal authority. Hence arises the maxim, "The king can do no wrong," his ministers alone being answerable. The chief of these constitute the Cabinet, which is composed of the following officers : the First Lord of the Treasury, usually Premier ; the Lord Chancellor ; the Lord Privy Seal ; the President of the Council ; the Home Secretary ; the Foreign Secretary ; the Colonial Secretary ; the Indian Secretary ; the War Secretary ; the Chancellor of the Exchequer ; the First Lord of the Admiralty ; the President of the Board of Trade ; the President of the Poor Law Board ; the Postmaster-General ; the Chancellor of the Duchy of Lancaster ; the Chief Secretary for Ireland.

6. When the ministry fail to carry any important measure through Parliament, they usually resign ; but the sovereign may dissolve the parliament and cause writs to be issued for the calling of a new one, and, if this refuse to sanction the measures of the government, a new ministry must be formed. Thus the executive is entirely dependent upon the will of the nation as declared by its representatives. Parliament may also

be prorogued by the authority of the sovereign to any appointed time ; and the effect of such prorogation is to quash all proceedings pending at the time, except impeachments in the Commons and judicial appeals in the Lords. Either House may adjourn separately by its own authority, but during such adjournment it may be called together by the sovereign.

7. The Privy Council is another very important body in connection with the executive. It consists of a large number of dignitaries, both civil and ecclesiastical, appointed by the sovereign, all of whom must be natural-born subjects of Great Britain. The cabinet ministers form, as it were, a committee of the Privy Council, the president of which is the fourth great officer of state. Meetings are held once in two or three weeks, but none of the members attend except such as are specially summoned by the sovereign, the meetings usually consisting of the cabinet ministers, the great officers of the queen's household, and the archbishop of Canterbury. On extraordinary occasions, however, all the members are summoned.

8. No act of parliament can become a law without the formal assent of the sovereign ; but the refusal to give such assent has become obsolete, not having been exercised since 1707—during the reign of Queen Anne. Indeed, the necessity for it does not now exist, being removed by the fact that the sovereign rules through his ministers, and that these only continue in office as long as they can command the support of Parliament.

9. The duties of the sovereign, as prescribed in the coronation oath, are, first, to rule according to law ; secondly, to execute judgment in mercy ; and thirdly, to maintain the established religion. The royal prerogatives are, the power of making war and peace (the former restrained by the necessity of obtaining supplies from Parliament), the right to send and receive ambassadors, the power of conferring honors and titles, of appointing judges and subordinate magistrates, of giving and revoking commissions in the army and navy, of pardoning offenses, of giving or withholding his assent to acts of parliament, and, as head of the national church, the right to nominate to vacant bishoprics and other ecclesiastical preferments.

10. The laws of Great Britain consist of the common law and the statute law. The former is based upon custom and precedent, as established by previous decisions of the courts ; the latter consists of the various acts of parliament passed from time to time. In addition to this, there is a law of equity, which is applied by the sovereign, through the Lord Chancellor, in all cases where injustice would follow the operation of the common law. The Courts of Chancery, or Equity, of Queen's (or King's) Bench, of Common Pleas, and of Exchequer, are the

principal law courts in England and Ireland; in Scotland they are the Court of Session and the High Court of Justiciary.

II. GENERAL VIEW OF THE BRITISH EMPIRE.

[See Map of England and her Dependencies—*Frontispiece.*]

The term *British Empire* is applied to the kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland, with all its colonies and dependencies. These embrace the following:

EUROPEAN.

1. The Channel Islands, a group lying off the northwest coast of France, and formerly belonging to the duchy of Normandy, and therefore attached to the English throne since the Conquest. King John lost all Normandy except these islands. The population in 1881 was 87,702.

2. Gibraltar, a rocky promontory, 1,500 feet high, forming the southern extremity of Spain, about three miles in length, with an average breadth of three-quarters of a mile. Its classical name was *Calpe;* its present name is derived from the Arabic word *Gibel*, a mountain, and *Tarik*, the Saracen general by whom Spain was invaded in the eighth century. It was taken by the British, under Sir George Rooke, in 1704, and ceded to England by the treaty of Utrecht. It is one of the most valuable military and naval stations possessed by Great Britain, being the *Key of the Mediterranean Sea.* The population in 1881 was 18,381.

3. Man, generally known as the Isle of Man, an island in the Irish sea, originally peopled by the Manx, a Celtic tribe, the language of whom is still in common use on the island. It was held as a feudal sovereignty by the earls of Derby, and subsequently by the duke of Athol, from whom it was purchased by the British crown in 1765; but the interests of the Athol family in it were not entirely extinguished by the crown before 1829. Its governor is appointed by the crown, but it has its own separate constitution and legislature, the latter a self-perpetuating body known as the "House of Keys." This body, consisting of twenty-four landed proprietors, is regarded by the inhabitants as rightfully representing them. The island possesses a native breed of small sturdy horses, also a breed of cats having no tails. The greatest length of the island is about thirty-three miles, and its greatest breadth about twelve miles. Its area is about two hundred and twenty-seven square miles. Its population in 1871 was 54,042, but, owing to emigration, the census of 1881 showed a decrease, the population then reaching only 53,558.

4. Malta, an island about seventeen miles in length and nine in breadth, situated in the Mediterranean sea, nearly sixty miles south of

Sicily. On account of its position and the enormous strength of its fortifications, it is of immense value as a naval station, and is consequently one of the most important of the British dependencies. Near the northwest coast is a small island called *Gozo*, which also belongs to Great Britain. In 1530 these islands were given by the Emperor Charles V. to the knights of St. John, whose stronghold at Rhodes had been captured by the Turks a short time previously. Malta sustained several tremendous assaults from the Turks while in the possession of the knights, from whom it was taken by Napoleon in 1798. The Maltese, with the aid of the British, retook it soon afterward; and, by the Congress of Vienna (in 1815), it was confirmed as a British dependency. The population of these islands is about 160,000.

ASIATIC.

1. Cyprus, a large island in the Levant, south of Asia Minor, having an area of 3,708 square miles, and a population of 186,173. This island was taken from the Venetians by the Turks in 1571, and held by the latter until 1878, when it was ceded to the British.

2. India, including Hindostan and several provinces on the eastern shore of the Bay of Bengal. Its extent from the great mountain barrier on the north to Cape Comorin, its southern extremity, is about 1,800 miles; and from the western boundary of Scinde to Pegu, about 1,900 miles. Its area is about 911,000 square miles, with a coast line of nearly 4,500 miles; and it contains a population of nearly 202,000,000. The various countries and provinces are placed under local governors, lieutenant-governors, and commissioners, all of whom are subject to the viceroy, appointed by and responsible to the crown. The administration is under the direction of the Indian secretary. The queen bears the title of Empress of India, conferred for the first time January 1, 1877. The history of this, the most splendid of the British dependencies, has been given in connection with the text (see pages 304-307). Besides the actual dependencies under direct British administration, there are the "Native States," under the protection of the British government, and acknowledging the paramount sovereignty of the crown. These include about one hundred and fifty feudatory states and principalities, containing nearly half a million (471,549) square miles, and about 52,000,000 inhabitants.

Sikim, in Thibet, on the northern slope of the Himmaleh mountains, was conquered by the British in 1888.

3. Ceylon, a considerable island to the south of Hindostan, including an area of about 25,000 square miles, also belongs to Great Britain, by whom it was taken from the Dutch in 1796. It was formally ceded to

the British by the treaty of Amiens (1802). The native kingdom of Kandy did not, however, submit to their sway until 1815. The population of Ceylon is 2,862,990 (1887).

4. Straits Settlements is the name given to the British possessions in the Malay peninsula, derived from the Strait of Malacca, which separate the peninsula from Sumatra, and form the great sea-gate between India and China. These settlements, according to letters-patent issued June 17, 1885, consist of the following :

1. *Singapore*, an island twenty-five miles by fourteen, with a city of the same name on its southern shore. It contains 206 square miles, and the total population, consisting of Chinese, Malays, various Indian races, and Europeans, is about 140,000. In 1818, as found by Sir Stamford Raffles, it was covered with primeval forests, uninhabited except by a few fishermen and pirates who found shelter in its secluded rivers and bays. It was then claimed by the sultan of Lahore, from whom it was purchased by the British in 1824. Its commanding position, in the center of the highway leading from British India to China, makes it an exceedingly valuable possession, being the entrepôt of the vast trade with those countries.

2. *Penang*, or *Pulo Penang*, sometimes called the *Prince of Wales Island*, situated at the mouth of the Strait of Malacca, near the west coast of the Malay peninsula. It has an area of 107 square miles, and a population of about 90,000. Toward the end of the last century, Captain Light married the king of Queda's daughter, and received this island as a wedding-present, which he afterward transferred to the East India Company. Georgetown, the capital of the Straits Settlements, is situated on this island.

3. *Province of Wellesley*, a strip of country thirty-five miles in length by four to eleven miles in width, situated on the western shore of the peninsula of Malacca, directly opposite Prince of Wales Island, ceded to the East India Company in 1802. It contains 270 square miles, and a population of about 95,000, in large part Malays.

4. *Malacca*, a territory on the southwest coast of the Malay peninsula, extending forty-two miles along the coast, with a varying breadth of fourteen to twenty-four miles, and having an area of 609 square miles. Its population is about 93,000. It was taken from the Portuguese by the Dutch in 1642, but in 1795 it fell into the hands of the British, to whom it was formally ceded in 1824. The city of Malacca is the capital.

5. *The Dindings*, with the residences in the extensive native states of Perak, Selangor, and Sungei Ujong, are also included in the Straits

Settlements. The settlements proper contain an area of 1,445 square miles, and a population of 536,000 (1887).

5. **Labuan,** an island situated six miles off the northwest coast of Borneo, has an area of thirty square miles, and a population, according to the census of 1881, of 6,298. It became the property of the British in 1846, by grant of the sultan of Borneo, through the influence of Sir James Brooke, who had obtained control of the kingdom of Sarawak, on the neighboring coast of Borneo. The government establishment on Labuan is at Port Victoria, a town at the southeast end of the island. This island has an extensive coal deposit, but the working of the mines has proved commercially a failure, and ceased in 1880. Its general trade consists in the importation of the products of Borneo and their exportation, chiefly to Singapore. It is also important as a naval station between the East Indies and China.

6. **Hong Kong,** a small island at the mouth of Canton river, about one hundred miles from the city of Canton. It is nine miles long and from two to six broad, containing an area of thirty-two square miles, and a population (1886) of 200,990. Its capital, *Victoria*, is situated on the northwestern shore, and in a short time has become one of the most thriving and beautiful of the British dependencies in Asia. The island was occupied by the British in 1841, and ceded to them by the treaty with China made at the close of the war in 1842. The opposite peninsula, Kowloon, was ceded to the British in 1861, and forms a part of the colony.

7. **Aden,** a town in the southwestern part of Arabia, held by means of a strong garrison and powerful fortifications by the British, to whom it was ceded by the sultan in 1838, and taken possession of by force of arms in 1839, the sultan desiring to withdraw from his contract. In a commercial point of view it is a very important possession, having a position between Asia and Africa like that of Gibraltar between Europe and Africa. The old commercial route, by way of the Red sea, having within the last few years been resumed, Aden has become still more valuable as a stopping-place for steam-vessels between Bombay and Suez. Its population in 1881 was 34,711.

8. **Perim,** a small island at the entrance to the Red sea, having a population of about two hundred. It was captured by the English in 1799, but in a short time afterward abandoned. It was reoccupied in 1857. It is under the government of Aden.

9. The **Andaman** and **Nicobar** groups of islands are situated in the eastern part of the Bay of Bengal. The former contain an area of 2,508 square miles, and a population of 14,628 (1881); the latter, 608 square

miles and a population of 5,500. The former are about one hundred miles north of the latter. The British took possession of these islands in order to establish penal settlements upon them, and to repress the outrages of Malay pirates. The chief commissioner for both groups resides at Port Blair, on Great Andaman island.

There are other minor dependencies in Asia, including the *Laccadive Islands,* the *Keeling Islands,* and a few other small groups.

AUSTRALIAN AND POLYNESIAN.

1. **Australia,** called by the Dutch settlers *New Holland*, contains the colonies of *New South Wales*, founded in 1788; *West Australia*, in 1829; *South Australia*, in 1834; *Victoria*, in 1851; and *Queensland*, in 1859. To these have been added *Western Australia* and the *Northern Territory*. In 1851 gold was discovered in the island; and, in consequence, the tide of emigration set so rapidly thither that its settlements soon reached a point of great magnitude and importance. Its present population is about 2,500,000, including about 55,000 natives. The possession of the island by Great Britain is based upon the discoveries of Captains Cook, Bass, Flinders, and others.

2. **Tasmania,** or **Van Diemen's Land,** was discovered in 1642 by a Dutch navigator named Tasman, after whom it has been named. It was named by him Van Diemen's Land, in honor of the governor of Batavia. Bass, in 1798, by sailing through the strait which bears his name, discovered it to be an island. The British for some time used it, as well as New South Wales, as a penal settlement, but in 1825 it was made an independent colony, under the name of *Tasmania*. The island has an area of 26,375 square miles, and a population of 137,211 (1886).

3. **Norfolk Island,** situated more than a thousand miles to the east of Australia, was made a British penal settlement in 1825; but it was broken up in 1855, and the island given to the inhabitants of Pitcairn's Island, 194 in number, the descendants of the mutineers of the ship *Bounty*. The island is under British control. It contains an area of seventeen square miles, and a population of 741 (1887).

4. **New Zealand.**—This colony consists of three islands, two large and one much smaller, with a number of islets near the coasts. The group is situated in the South Pacific ocean, about 1,200 miles southeast of Australia, and contains an area of 104,235 square miles. It was discovered in 1642 by Tasman, and was visited several times by Captain Cook, who explored the coasts in 1770. It was at first frequented by English and American whale-ships, attracted thither by the excellent shelter afforded by its numerous harbors, particularly in the Bay of

Islands. Missionary enterprise began in 1814, and a British resident, or consul, was appointed in 1833. The sovereignty of the islands was formally ceded to Great Britain by the native chiefs in 1840. The unjust treatment of the Maories, or natives, brought on a series of fierce and bloody conflicts, which were not terminated until quite recently. The population in 1886 was 589,386, besides 41,969 Maories.

5. **Fiji Islands**, a group of islands in the South Pacific ocean, having a total area of 8,034 square miles, and a population of 126,010 (census of 1886). These islands were annexed to the British empire in 1874.

6. **New Guinea** is the largest island in the world next to Australia. It contains an area of 306,000 square miles. Recently the eastern portion has been occupied by the British, including an area of 88,460 square miles, with 137,500 inhabitants.

7. **Cook's Islands**, or the **Hervey Archipelago**, in the South Pacific, discovered by Captain Cook in 1777. They contain an area of 142 square miles, and the population in 1877 was 7,400.

8. **Northern Borneo**, including a territory of 85,000 square miles, and a population estimated at 600,000, has been recently (1888) declared a Protectorate of Great Britain.

Besides the above, the British dependencies in this part of the globe include *Chatham I.*, *Auckland I.*, *Lord Howe I.*, *Fanning I.*, *Starbuck I.*, and the *Caroline Is.*

AFRICAN.

1. **Cape Colony** embraces an extensive region, the area of which is estimated to contain about 200,000 square miles. It derives its name from the Cape of Good Hope, at which the capital, *Cape Town*, is situated. It was for many years a dependency of the Dutch, by whom it was first settled in 1652. In 1795 it was taken by the British, but restored by the treaty of Amiens (1802). In 1806 it was again captured by the British, and since then has remained in their possession. Fierce wars have been waged with the *Kaffirs*, or *Caffres*, a native tribe of great courage and ferocity. From these was wrested, in 1847, a region called *British Caffraria*, which was annexed to Cape Colony. The population of Cape Colony, including West Griqualand on the north, by the census of 1885, is 919,513.

2. **Natal**, which was so called by the Portuguese because it was discovered on Christmas day (1498), became a British colony in 1843. Its capital, Port Natal, contains the only good harbor on that coast. It is situated about 850 miles from Cape Town. The population of Natal, by the census of 1887, is 477,100.

The other portions of south Africa belonging to the British are

Basutoland, *Zululand*, the *Protectorate of the Bechuanas*, and the *Colony of Walfish Bay*, estimated to contain in all about 200,000 inhabitants.

3. Sierra Leone consists of a district about twenty-five miles in length, by twelve miles in breadth. The colony was established in 1787, for the purpose of providing a home for negroes rescued from the slave-traders. It has a population of over 60,000.

4. Gambia is a colony consisting of the island of St. Mary and town of Bathurst, at the mouth of the Gambia river. It has a flourishing trade. Population about 14,000.

5. Gold Coast, a portion of the coast of Guinea, formerly belonging to the Dutch, but ceded to Great Britain in 1872. It includes an area of about 19,000 square miles, and had a population of over 650,000.

6. Lagos, a town and island near the coast of Guinea, at the entrance of the Bight of Benin, formerly notorious for its slave traffic. It was captured by the British in 1851, but not occupied till 1861. Its population was 87,165 in 1883.

7. Mauritius, an island about 500 miles east of Madagascar, and containing more than 700 square miles, affords another important station for British vessels. It was discovered in 1505 by the Portuguese, but received its name from the Dutch, in honor of Prince Maurice, who, in 1644, formed a settlement upon it. In 1721 it was colonized by the French, by whom it was named "Isle of France." It was taken from them in 1810 by General Abercrombie, and has since then been occupied by the British. With its dependencies, its population in 1886 was 386,340.

8. Amirante and **Seychelle Islands,** two groups of islets north of Madagascar Island, are dependencies of Mauritius, obtained at the time of the occupation of that island.

9. St. Helena, a rocky islet in the South Atlantic, was discovered by the Portuguese in 1502; but afterward was occupied by the Dutch, from whom it was taken by the English in 1651. Its position in the direct line of the great ocean thoroughfare from Europe to the east has made it important as a stopping-place for vessels performing that long voyage. Its chief celebrity is derived from the exile of the Emperor Napoleon, who lived there from 1816 till his death, in 1821. It has an area of forty-seven square miles, and in 1886 contained 5,200 inhabitants.

10. Ascension, another small solitary islet, situated in the Atlantic, about 800 miles to the north of St. Helena, has been occupied by the British since 1815. It was discovered by the Portuguese in 1501, on Ascension day, from which circumstance it received its name. Its area contains thirty-four square miles, and its population in 1881 was 300.

11. Tristan d'Acunha, a group of islands to the south of St. Helena,

is also claimed by Great Britain, by whom a garrison was kept there during the banishment of Napoleon. Its area is forty-five square miles.

In south Africa the British crown granted, in 1888, a charter to a trading company, the territories of which include an area of 50,000 square miles. From this territory, commonly known as Rhodesia, Dr. Jameson, in 1895, crossed into the country of the Boers, the Transvaal, or South African Republic, with eight hundred armed men, was met by the sturdy yeomen of the Transvaal, and after heavy fighting, was compelled to surrender (December, 1895.)

NORTH AMERICAN.

1. **Canada.**—This name was first applied to the region watered by the St. Lawrence, a river discovered by Cartier in 1535. It is an Indian word, meaning "a collection of huts." The province was ceded by the French to Great Britain by the treaty of Paris in 1763. It was afterward divided into the two provinces of Upper and Lower Canada, subsequently called Canada West and Canada East. These divisions are now designated respectively *Ontario* and *Quebec*, and constitute a part of the Dominion of Canada, which comprises besides these the other British provinces, except Newfoundland.

2. **Nova Scotia** was colonized first by the French under the name of Acadia, but ceded to the English by the treaty of Utrecht in 1713. Cape Breton Island became a British possession by the capture of Louisburg in 1758, during the French and Indian war.

3. **New Brunswick** formed a part of Acadia, and was ceded to Great Britain by the treaty of Utrecht.

4. **Prince Edward Island,** formerly known as St. John's Island, was taken after the fall of Louisburg, in 1758.

5. **Newfoundland,** discovered by the Cabots in 1497, was formally taken possession of by Sir Humphrey Gilbert in 1583. Its valuable fisheries led to rival claims to it on the part of the French and English. These were settled by the treaty of Utrecht, the island being surrendered to the English, the French reserving only certain fishing rights.

6. **British Columbia and Vancouver Island.** These regions formerly constituted a portion of the Hudson's Bay Company territory (now Northwest Territory), a vast region embracing a large part of British America, chiefly valuable for the trade in furs. After the discovery of gold in the vicinity of the Frazer river, the region soon became quite populous, and was organized as a separate province (1865). Since then it has been divided into several provinces.

7. **Honduras,** or **Belize,** forms the southeastern part of the peninsula of Yucatan, and has an area of about 20,000 square miles. The claim of

Great Britain to this region was formally sanctioned by Spain in 1783. It has an area of 7,562 square miles, and a population of 27,452.

8. The **Bermudas**, a group of islands in the Atlantic ocean, were named after Bermudez, a Spaniard, by whom they were discovered in 1527. The wreck upon these islands of a part of the expedition sent to Virginia in 1609, under Sir George Somers, led to their colonization. They are on this account sometimes called the Somers Islands. The group is said to contain about three hundred and sixty islets, separated by very narrow channels, and hence occupying but a small space in the ocean, estimated at about one hundred square miles. Five only of these islands are of any considerable size. The whole area is about twenty square miles; its population in 1887 was 15,347.

9. The **Bahamas** constitute a group, or chain, of islands, about 600 in number, and extend a distance of 600 miles southeastwardly from Florida. The whole area is estimated to contain 5,390 square miles, and the aggregate population of the fifteen inhabited islands in 1881 was 43,521. This group was first discovered by Christopher Columbus, San Salvador being the first land which he reached in 1492. The islands belonged to the Spaniards for a time, but in 1783 were permanently annexed to the British empire.

WEST INDIAN.

1. Jamaica, discovered by Columbus in 1494, was colonized by the Spaniards in 1509, and held by them till its conquest by Admirals Penn and Venables in 1655, since which time it has been under the government of Great Britain. Its area contains 4,193 square miles, and its population in 1887 was 607,798.

2. Trinidad, a considerable island (fifty miles by thirty), near the northern coast of South America, opposite one of the mouths of the Orinoco river, was discovered by Columbus in 1498, and colonized by the Spaniards in 1588. It was taken by the British in 1797. Its area is 1,754 square miles ; population, 178,270 (1886).

3. Barbadoes is the most easterly of the Caribbean group of islands. It is noted for its dense population, surpassed in this respect only by Malta. It has an area of 166 square miles, and a population of 180,000. The first English colony was founded in 1625, and it has been in the possession of the British ever since.

4. The other possessions of the British in the West Indies include the *Cayman Islands* and most of the *Lesser Antilles*, including *Tobago*, *Grenada*, *St. Vincent*, *St. Lucia*, *Dominica*, *Montserrat*, *Antigua*, *St. Christopher*, *Barbrida*, *Nevis*, *Anguila*, and most of the *Virgin Islands*. These islands are divided into the two groups of *Leeward* and *Windward* islands.

SOUTH AMERICAN.

1. **British Guiana** was colonized at first by the Dutch, but fell into the possession of the British in 1781, being taken by Sir George Rodney. It was, however, restored in 1783, but again captured in 1796, and again restored by the treaty of Amiens in 1802. The next year, on the breaking out of the war, it was once more captured, and since then has remained a British dependency. It contains 85,425 square miles, and its population in 1886 was 274,311.

2. The **Falkland Islands** were discovered by Davis in 1592, but did not receive their present name till 1690, when they were visited by Captain Strong, an English navigator. Settlements were afterward made on them by the French and Spaniards as well as the English; but since 1771 they have formed a part of the British empire. No permanent settlement was made till 1831, and their population at the present time is only about seven hundred. They constitute, with *Staten Island*, near the southern extremity of South America, the most southerly of the organized colonies of Great Britain. The entire area is 4,839 square miles, and the population in 1884 was 1,553.

Great Britain also possesses the two small volcanic islands, *St. Paul* and *New Amsterdam*, in the Indian ocean.

The whole extent of this vast empire embraces more than nine million (9,117,260) square miles, and contains a population of a little over three hundred and fourteen millions.

INDEX.

[*For Topical Study and Recitation.*]

A

Ab-dur-rah'man Khan, 367.
Ab-er-crom'bie, Sir Ralph, 320.
A'bra-ham, Plains of, 302.
Ab-ys-sin'i-a, 363.
A-ca'di-a, Appendix, 11.
Acre (*a'ker*), 103, 104, 318, 355.
Act of Security, 278.
Act of Supremacy, 198.
Act of Uniformity, 198, 252.
Act of Union, 278.
Ad'ams, John, 313.
Ad'ding-ton, Henry, 321.
Ad'di-son, Joseph, 280.
A'den, Appendix, 7.
A'dri-an VI., Pope, 179.
Aëtius (*a-e'she-us*), 25.
Af-ghan-is-tan', 353, 354, 374.
Af'ghan War, 366, 367.
Ag'in-court (*aj-*), Battle of, 149.
A-gric'o-la, Julius, 22.
Agriculture, 141, 165, 213, 237.
Aix-la-Chapelle (*akes-lah-sha-pel'*), Treaty of, 301.
A'ken-side, Mark, 343.
Al-be-marle', Duke of, 251, 254.
Al-be-ro'ni, Cardinal, 294.
Al'bert, Prince, 353, 357, 365 (*n*).
Al'bi-on, 11.
Alchemy, 166.
Alcuin (*al'kwin*), 34, 35.
Al-ex-an'der, Czar of Russia, 359.
Alexander III., of Scotland, 116.
Al-ex-an'dra, Princess, 365.
Al-ex-an'dri-a, 317, 320, 355, 371.
Al'fred the Great, 43, 45 (*n*), 46.
Alice Lisle (*lile*), 265.
Al'i-son, Sir Archibald, 387.
Al'ma, Battle of, 358.
American Colonies, 282, 299, 310, 311, 312, 313, 335.
American Revolution, 312.
American Settlements, 245.
Am'i-ens, Treaty of, 321.
A-moy', 354.
Angevins, 96 (*n*).
An'gles, 29, 33.
An'gle-sey, 19, 21.
Anglo-Saxon Language, 10.
Anglo-Saxons, 40, 47, 66, 75.
Anjou (*ahn'joo*), 85, 154.
An'laf, or Olaf, 52, 53.
Anne As'cue, 187.
Anne Boleyn (*bul'en*), 180, 182, 183, 184 185.
Anne of Cleves, 186.
Anne, Queen, 266, 275, 279.
Anne, Wife of Richard III., 162.
An'selm, Archbishop, 80, 82.
An'son, Commodore, 297.
Anti-Corn-Law League, 353.
An-to-ni'nus, Emperor, 23.
Ant'werp, 210.
A'quæ-So'lis, 8.
Aquitaine (*ak-we-tane'*), 107.
Ar-a-bel'la Stuart, 219.
Ar'a-bi (*-be*), Pasha, 371, 372.
Ar'a-can, 347.
Ar-ca'di-a, 208.
Arch-an'gel, 211.
Architecture, 167.
Ar'cot, 305, 306.
Ar-gyle', Duke of, 293.
Argyle, Earl of, 262.
Argyle, Marquis of, 252.
Ark'wright, Sir Richard, 338 (*n*).
Arles (*arlz*), Council of, 27.
Ar'ling-ton, Lord, 284 (*n*).
Ar-ma'da, Spanish, 201, 212.
Ar-mor'i-ca, 31.
Arne, Dr. Thomas Augustine, 341 (*n*).
Arnold, Matthew, 386.

Arnold, Thomas, 384.
Arrears Act, 370.
Arthur, King, 31.
Arthur, Prince, 106, 107.
Arthur, Son of Henry VII., 175.
Arts, 26, 68, 102, 167, 212, 287, 337, 340, 381.
As'ca-lon, 103, 104.
Ascension Island, Appendix, 10.
Ascham (*as'kam*), Roger, 193 (*n*), 215.
A-shan'tees, War with, 366.
As'pern, Battle of, 326.
As-tra-chan', (*-kan*), 212.
Astrology, 142.
Astronomy, 142, 166, 288.
Ath'el-stan, 48.
Attainder, Bill of, 190 (*n*), 231.
At'ti-la, 25.
Augustan Age of England, 280.
Au'gus-tine (*-tīne*), 33.
Au-gus'tus, 20.
Au'lus Plautius (*plaŭ'she-us*), 21.
Au-rung-zebe', 304.
Austerlitz, Battle of, 323.
Aus-tra'li-a, Appendix, 8.
Aus'tri-a, 297, 299, 322, 326.
Austrian Succession, War of, 298.
Ay'mer de Valence (*vah-lons'*), 120.

B

Bacon, Francis, Lord, 208, 223.
Bacon, Roger, 121, 141.
Bacon, Sir Nicholas, 198.
Backgammon, 68.
Ba-ha'ma Islands, Appendix, 12.
Bal-ak-la'va (*-lah'vah*), 358.
Ba'li-ol, Edward, 127.
Baliol, John, 116, 117, 118.
Ballot Act, 365.
Baltimore, Lord, 282.
Ban'nock-burn, Battle of, 123.
Bar-ba'does, 254.
Bar'ba-ry Powers, 248.
Bar'bauld, Anne Letitia, 384.
Bar-ce-lo'na, 277.
Bards, 20.
Barebone's Parliament, 247.
Bar'net, Battle of, 158.
Bath, 8, 11, 50.
Battle Abbey, 66 (*n*).
Battle of the Spurs, 176.
Bavaria, Elector of, 298 (*n*).
Beaconsfield (*bek'unz-feeld*), Earl of, 366, 368.
Beattie, James, 344.
Beaufort (*bo'furt*), Cardinal, 153.
Beaufort, Duke of, 254.
Beaumont (*bo'mont*) & Fletcher, 289.
Becket, Thomas à, 95, 96, 97, 98.
Bede, or Beda, 34, 36.
Bed'ford, Duke of, 151, 153.
Beggars' Opera, 341.
Bel'gium, 329.
Bell, Henry, 336 (*n*).
Bengal (*ben-gawl'*), 307.
Ben Jonson, 208, 289.
Bent'ley, Richard, 308.
Berke'ley Castle, 126 (*n*).
Ber'lin, Capture of, 323.
Berlin Decree, 323, 324.
Berlin, Treaty of, 366.
Ber-mu'da Islands, Appendix, 12.
Bernicia (*ber-nish'e-ah*), 8.
Berwick (*ber'rik*), 123.
Bible, 27, 138, 188, 225.
Bill of Rights, 267.
Bir'ming-ham, 284.
Black Death, 130.
Black Hole of Calcutta, 306.
Black Prince, 128.
Black-letter, 160, 166.
Bla'dud, King, 11.
Blair, Robert, 308.
Blake, Admiral, 245, 246, 248.
Blenheim (*blen'hime*), Battle of, 276.
Blon-del', 106.
Bloody Assize, The, 264.
Bloody Tower, 161 (*n*).
Blucher (*bloo'ker*), General, 329.
Boadicea (*bo-ah-dis'e-ah*), Queen, 21, 22.
Board of Trade, 284.
Boers (*boors*), War with, 366.
Bolingbroke (*bol'ing-brûk*), Henry St. John, Viscount, 280.
Bo'mar-sund, 357.
Bom-bay', 284.
Bo'na-parte, Napoleon. See *Napoleon.*
Bonaparte, Joseph, 324.
Bonner, Bishop, 194, 195.
Book of Common Prayer, 191, 252.
Books, 142, 289.
Bos'ca-wen, Admiral, 303.
Boston, 311.

Boston Port Bill, 311.
Bos'worth, Battle of, 162, 163, 169.
Both'well, Earl of, 203.
Boyle, 288.
Boyne, Battle of the, 272.
Braddock, General, 301.
Bradshaw, John, 242, 244, 252.
Brazil (*brah-zeel'*), 324, 336.
Bretagne (*bret-ahn'*), 31.
Bret'wal-da, 30.
Brewster, Sir David, 3-8.
Bridgewater, Duke of, 339.
Bright, John, 353.
Brindley, James, 339 (*n*).
Bristol, 284.
Britain, 7, 10, 13, 15, 16.
Bri-tan'ni-a, 7, 16.
British Christians, 27.
British Constitution, Appendix, 1.
British Empire, Appendix, 4.
British Isles, 7.
Britons, 16, 18, 20, 21, 24, 25, 31.
Brit'ta-ny, 31, 95.
Brontë, Charlotte, 387.
Brougham (*broo'am*), Lord, 346, 385.
Browning, Elizabeth B., 385.
Browning, Robert, 385.
Bruce, David, 127, 129.
Bruce, Robert (elder), 116.
Bruce, Robert (younger), 119, 120, 122, 123.
Brunswick, Duke of, 313.
Brunswick, House of, 293.
Brus'sels, 329.
Brut, or Bru'tus, 11, 13.
Bu-chan'an, George, 219 (*n*).
Buck'ing-ham, Duke of, 161.
Buckle, Henry T., 387.
Bulwer (*bŏŏl'wer*), 386.
Bunker Hill, Battle of, 312.
Bur'leigh, Lord, 199, 214.
Burmah, 347, 357.
Burmese War, 347, 357.
Bun'yan, John, 261.
Bur-goyne', General, 313.
Bur'gundy, Duchess of, 172, 173.
Burke, Edmund, 312, 315, 316, 332, 344.
Burney, Dr. Charles, 341 (*n*).
Burney, Frances, 341 (*n*), 384.
Burns, Robert, 243.
Bu sa'co, Battle of, 326.
Bushire (*boo-sheer'*), 363.
Bute, Earl of, 308, 310.
Butler, Bishop, 308.
Butler, Samuel, 261.
Byng, Admiral, 279, 294.
By'ron, Lord, 347, 382.

C

Ca-bal', The, 256.
Cabinet, Appendix, 2.
Cab'ot, John and Sebastian, 175.
Cabul (*kah-bool'*), 353, 367.
Cade's Insurrection, 154.
Cædmon (*ked'mon*), 35.
Caernarvon (*ker-nar'von*), 116.
Cæ'sar, Julius, 10, 16.
Caf-fra'ri-a, Appendix, 9.
Caffre (*kaf'fir*), War, 357.
Cairo (*ki'ro*), 317, 320, 372.
Calais (*kal'is*), 129, 197.
Cal-cut'ta, 306.
Cal-e-do'ni-a, 7, 22.
Cam'bri-a, 31.
Cam'e-ron of Lochiel (*lok-heel'*), 300.
Campbell, Sir Archibald, 347.
Campbell, Sir Col'in, 362.
Campbell, Thomas, 383.
Can'a-da, 302, 352.
Canal Navigation, 339.
Can-da-har', 367.
Candles, 140.
Cannes (*kan*), 328.
Canning, George, 325, 347, 348.
Cannon, 128.
Canrobert (*kuhn-ro-bare'*), 359.
Can-ton', 354, 363.
Can-ute', or Knut, 54, 55, 56, 57.
Cape Bret'on, Appendix, 11.
Cape Colony, Appendix, 9.
Cape Town, Appendix, 9.
Cape of Good Hope, 200.
Cape Horn, 200.
Cape La Hogue, Battle of, 273.
Car'a-doc, or Ca-rac'ta-cus, 21.
Ca-ran'si-us (*-she-us*), 23.
Car'diff, 82.
Car'di-gan, Earl of, 358.
Carding Machine, 337.
Car'is-brook castle, 241.
Carlisle, 120.
Car-lyle', Thomas, 388.
Car-na'tic, 305 (*n*), 307.

Car'o-line of Brunswick, 345, 346 (*n*).
Caroline, Queen, 296.
Carpets, 287.
Carr, Robert, 222.
Car'rick-fer'gus, 272.
Car-tha-ge'na, 297.
Cartier (*kar-te-a'*), Appendix 11.
Cas-sib'e-laun, 12.
Castlereagh (*kas'sel-ra*), Lord, 346, 347.
Cas-wal'lon, or Cas-si-ve-lau'nus, 17.
Cath'a-rine of Ar'a-gon, 176, 181, 183.
Catharine of Bra-gan'za, 253.
Catharine Gordon, 174.
Catharine Howard, 186.
Catharine Parr, 187.
Catharine, Wife of Henry V., 150, 161.
Catholic Association, 348.
Catholic Church, 258.
Catholic Disabilities, 321.
Catholic Emancipation, 348, 380.
Catholic Relief Bill, 334.
Catholics, 220, 258, 265, 282, 334.
Cato Street Conspiracy, 345.
Cavaliers, 236, 281.
Cavendish, Lord Frederick, 370 (*n*).
Cawn'pore, 361.
Caxton, William, 160, 166 (*n*).
Cecil (*ses'il*), Sir William, 198, 199.
Celtic Language, 9.
Censorship of the Press, 286.
Ceorls, or Churls, 66.
Cer'dic, 34.
Cey-lon (*see'lon*), Appendix, 5.
Channel Islands, Appendix, 4.
Charles I., of England, 225, 242.
Charles II., of England, 244, 245, 251, 261.
Charles IV., of France, 128.
Charles V., of France, 132, 134.
Charles VI., of France, 149, 150, 151.
Charles VII., of France, 151.
Charles VIII., of France, 173.
Charles V., of Germany, 178.
Charles II., of Spain, 274.
Charles XII., of Sweden, 294.
Charles, Archduke of Austria, 326.
Charles Edward, the Pretender, 299, 301 (*n*).
Charleston, 311.
Charlotte, Queen, 309, 332, 339.
Charter of Liberties, 82.
Chartists, 352, 353, 356.
Chat'ham, Earl of, 311, 312, 314.
Chatterton, Thomas, 343.
Chaucer (*chaw'ser*), Geoffrey, 133, 138, 142.
Cherbourg (*sher'burg*), 303.
Chester, 8.
Chevalier de St. George, 279.
Chev'y Chase, Ballad of, 147.
China, 354.
Chinese War, 363.
Chivalry, 88.
Christianity, 26, 27, 33, 34, 99, 380.
Christ Church, Oxford, 188.
Church of England, 252.
Church, Irish, 364.
Churchill, Lord, 266, 276 (*n*).
Churls, Saxon, 66, 88.
Cin'tra, Convention of, 325.
Circumnavigation of the Globe, 297.
Clarence, Duke of, 158, 159, 348.
Clar'en-don, Constitutions of, 97.
Clarendon, Earl of, 251, 255, 289.
Classics, Study of the, 214.
Clau'di-us, Emperor, 21.
Clement VII., Pope, 179.
Clergy, 333.
Clive, Robert, Lord, 306 (*n.*)
Clon'tarf, Battle of, 99.
Cloth Manufacture, 213.
Coaches, 287.
Coal, Use of, 140.
Cob'bett, William, 330 (*n*).
Cob'den, Richard, 353 (*n*).
Cobham, Lord, 149, 219, 220.
Cod'ring-ton, Sir William, 359.
Coercion Act, 375.
Coffee, 284.
Coffee Houses, 268.
Coinage, 286.
Coke, Sir Edward, 220, 226.
Colleges, 167.
Cole'ridge, Samuel T., 383.
Collins, William, 343.
Colonies, American. See *American Colonies.*
Co-lum'bus, 175 (*n*), 210.
Commerce, 68, 121, 133, 141, 165, 197, 210, 211, 282, 335.
Common Law, Appendix, 3.
Common Prayer, Book of, 191.
Commons, House of, 113, 118, 138, 148
Commonwealth, English, 243.
Com-pur-ga'tors, 67.

Con'stan-tine, Emperor, 23, 24.
Con-stan'ti-us (*she-us*), 23.
Constitution, British. See *Appendix.*
Constitutions of Clarendon, 97.
Convention Parliament, 267.
Coo-mas'sie, 366.
Coote, Sir Eyre (*ire*), 307, 315.
Cope, Sir John, 300.
Co-pen-ha'gen, 320, 324.
Corn Laws, 320, 352, 353.
Corn-wal'lis, Lord, 313, 315.
Corporation Act, 252.
Co-run'na, Battle of, 325.
Costume, 91, 140.
Cotton, 336.
Cotton Manufacture, 286, 337.
Court of High Commission, 209.
Court of Star Chamber, 209.
Covenant of Scotland, 229.
Covenanters, 230, 232, 240, 245.
Cov'er-dale, Miles, 188.
Cow'ley, Abraham, 289.
Cow'per, William, 343.
Cranmer, Thomas, 183, 189, 191, 194, 196.
Crecy (*kres'se*), Battle of, 128.
Cri-me'a, 358.
Cri-me'an War, 357, 358, 359, 360.
Criminal Law, 380.
Cromwell, Henry, 250.
Cromwell (Minister to Henry VIII.), 186.
Cromwell, Oliver, 228 (*n*), 238, 239, 240, 241, 242, 244, 245, 246, 247, 248, 249, 252.
Cromwell, Richard, 250.
Cronstadt, 358.
Crowning-stone, 49 (*n*).
Crusades, 79, 80, 89, 102, 114.
Crystal Palace, 357.
Cul-lo'den, Battle of, 300 (*n*).
Cum'ber-land, 58, 79.
Cumberland, Duke of, 299, 300, 303.
Cum'bri-a, 31, 39.
Curfew, 75.
Cur'ran, 319.
Customs, 210.
Cym'be-line (*-line* or *-lin*), 12.
Cymric Language, 10.
Cyprus, 366.

D

Dal-hou'sie, Lord, 361.
Dalrymple, Sir John, 270.
Damme (*dam*), Naval Battle of, 108.
Dam-no'ni-a, 31.
Dane'geld, 53, 59.
Dane'lagh, 45, 59.
Danes, 40, 41, 46, 52, 53, 63.
Danish Kings, 56.
Darien, Isthmus of, 297.
Darn'ley, Lord, 202, 203.
Darwin, Charles, 389.
Davenant, Sir William, 289.
David Bruce, of Scotland, 127, 129, 130.
David of Wales, 115.
Davis, John, Navigator, 211.
Davy, Sir Humphry, 341 (*n*).
Deal, 16.
Death Penalty, 380.
De-ca'tur, Commodore, 327.
Declaration of Right, 267.
Defender of the Faith, 179.
Defoe, Daniel, 307.
De-i'ra, 8, 30.
Del'a-ware, Lord, 221.
Delhi (*del'le*), 305, 361.
Denmark, 254, 314, 320, 324.
De Quincey, Thomas, 385.
Derby, Countess of, 245.
De Ruyter (*ri'ter*), 246, 254, 255.
Der'wentwater, Earl of, 293, 294.
Des'bor-ough, 244.
Det'ting-en, Battle of, 298.
De'va, 8.
De Witt, John, 255, 256 (*n*).
Dickens, Charles, 387.
Dieskau (*de-es-ko'*), 302.
Di-o-cle'ti-an (*-she-an*), 23, 26 (*n*).
Directory of France, 317.
Disraeli, Benjamin, 387.
Dod'dridge, Philip, 334, 344.
Domes'day Book, 77, 78 (*n*), 88.
Dor'set, Marquis of, 176.
Do'ver, 61.
Drake, Sir Francis, 200 (*n*), 201, 211.
Drama, 167.
Dress, 91.
Dru'idism, 19.
Druids, 10, 19, 20, 21.
Dry'den, John, 262.
Duel, Origin of, 91.
Dub'lin, 321, 336.
Dudley, Lord Guilford, 192, 194.
Dufferin, Lord, 372.
Dun'bar, Battles of, 118, 244.

Dun'can, Admiral, 317.
Dun-dee', Viscount, 270.
Dun'kirk, 248, 253.
Duns'tan, 49, 50, 52, 69.
Du Quesne (*-kane*), Fort, 301.
Dutch, the, 210, 246, 248, 254, 255, 257, 304, 315.
Dutch Republic, 246.
Dyeing, 286.

E

East Anglia, 8, 29, 39, 42, 45, 48, 56.
East India Company, 221, 362.
East Indies, 283, 284.
Eb-o'ra-cum, 8, 26.
Eck'muhl, Battle of, 326.
Ed'gar, King, 50.
Edgar Ath'e-ling, 64, 72, 74, 82.
Edgehill, Battle of, 236.
Edinburgh (*ed'in-bur-ruh*), 101, 244.
E'dith, Empress, 51.
Edith, Queen, 60.
Edmund, King, 49.
Edmund Ironside, 55, 56.
Edmund, King of East Anglia, 42, 43.
Edmund Mortimer, 146.
Ed'red, King, 49.
Ed'ric, Duke of Mercia, 56.
Education, 167, 365, 381.
Edward I., 113, 121, 139.
Edward II. (of Caer-nar'von), 121, 126.
Edward III., 126, 133, 141.
Edward IV., 156, 157.
Edward V., 160, 173.
Edward VI., 185, 189, 192.
Edward, the Black Prince, 128, 130, 131, 132, 133.
Edward the Confessor, 60, 62, 63.
Edward the Elder, 47.
Edward the Martyr, 51, 52.
Edward the Outlaw, 62.
Edward, Prince, son of Henry VI., 156, 159.
Ed'wy, the Fair, 49.
Eg'bert, 34, 39.
Egypt, 317, 320, 355, 366, 371.
El'ba, Island of, 327, 328.
Eleanor, of Provence, 112.
Eleanor, Queen (of Henry II.), 86, 100, 105.
Eleanor, Queen (of Henry III.), 112.
Electrical Discovery, 341.
Electric Telegraph, 342.
Elfrida (*el'fre-dah*), 51, 52.
El'gin (*el'ghin*), Lord, 363.
Elgiva (*el'je-vah*), 50.
Eliot, George (Mrs. Lewes), 386.
El'i-ot, Sir John, 226, 228.
Elixir of Life, 166.
Elizabeth (Plantagenet), 162, 171.
Elizabeth, Queen, 188, 195, 198, 207, 215.
El-len-bor'ough, Lord, Governor of India, 353 (*n*).
Emma, Queen, 53, 57.
Emmet, Robert, 321.
Empress of India, 362.
Empson & Dudley, 175, 176.
England, 7, 34.
English Bible, 188, 225.
English Church, 183.
English Justinian (Edward I.), 120.
English Language, 114, 167.
English Literature, see *Literature.*
English Reformation, 184 (*n*), 189.
English of the Pale, 232.
En-nis-kil'len, 272.
Episcopacy, 270.
Equity, Laws of, Appendix, 3.
E-ras'mus, 214.
Esquire, 89.
Essex, 8, 29.
Essex, Countess of, 223.
Essex, Earl of, 205, 236, 239.
Esterlings, 121 (*n*).
Eth'el-bald, 42.
Eth'el-bert, 42.
Ethelbert, King of Kent, 30, 33.
Eth-el-fle'da, 48.
Eth'el-red I., 42.
Ethelred II., 52, 53, 54, 55, 56.
Eth'el-wold, 47.
Eth'el-wolf, 41.
E'ton College, 157.
Eugene, Prince, 276 (*n*), 277.
Eu'stace, Count of Boulogne, 61.
Eves'ham, Battle of, 113.
Exchequer, closing of, by Charles II., 257.
Eylau (*i'low*), Battle of, 323.

F

Fairfax, Lord, 238.
Fairfax, Sir Thomas, 239, 240.
Fairs, 121.

Falkland (*fawk'land*) Islands, Appendix, 13.
Falkland, Lord, 237.
Falkirk (*fawl'kirk*), Battle of, 118.
Family Compact, 308.
Father of English Commerce, 133.
Fel'ton, 227.
Fenians, 369.
Feud, or Fief, 77.
Feudal Castles, 87, 168.
Feudal System, 77, 86, 88, 138, 165, 251.
Field of Cloth of Gold, 178.
Fielding, 344.
Fine Arts, 69, 287, 340.
Fire Arms, 128 (*n*).
Fire of London, 255.
Fisher, Bishop, 184.
Fisheries, 165.
Flam'steed, 288.
Flanders, 276, 277, 286, 299.
Fla'vi-a Cæ-sar-i-en'sis, 7.
Flod'den Field, Battle of, 177.
Flying Coach, 285.
Fontenoy (*fon-ta-nwah'*), Battle of, 299.
Foth'er-in-gay Castle, 201 (*n*).
Fox, Charles James, 312, 316, 323.
Fox, George, 281.
France, 128, 130, 149, 179, 314, 357.
Franchise, Elective, 349, 364.
Francis I. of France, 178, 180.
Francis II. of France, 190, 202.
Frank'fort, 200.
Franklin, Dr., 341.
Franklins, 86.
Fraser, Simon, 301 (*n*).
Frederick the Great, 302.
Frederick (son of George II.), 304.
Frederick William (of Prussia), 365.
French, The, 304, 306, 308.
French Convention, 317.
French Revolution, 317, 333.
Fried'land, Battle of, 323.
Fro'bish-er, Martin, 200, 201, 211.
Froude, James A., 387.
Fuller, Thomas, 289.
Fulton, Robert, 336 (*n*).
Furniture, 68, 140, 168.

G

Gam'bi-a, Appendix, 10.
Gam'bi-er, Admiral, 324.
Gar'di-ner, Bishop, 189, 194, 195.
Gas'coigne (*-koin*), Chief Justice, 149.
Gates, General, 313.
Gaul, 16.
Gav'es-ton, 122.
Gay, John, 341 (*n*), 342.
Gen-e'va, 200.
Geoffrey (*jef're*) of Monmouth, 10, 92.
Geoffrey (son of Henry II.), 101.
Geology, 342.
George I., 293, 295.
George II., 296, 304.
George III., 308, 331.
George IV., 344, 348.
George, Prince of Denmark, 260, 266, 275, 276 (*n*).
George, Lake, 302.
Georgia, 297.
Georg'i-um Sidus, 342.
Germany, 178.
Ghent, Treaty of, 328.
Gibbon, Edward, 344.
Gibraltar (*jib-rawl'ter*), 276, 315.
Gibraltar of America, 299.
Gil'das, 36.
Ginger, 284.
Gladstone, William E., 368, 369, 374, 375, 388.
Glass, 68, 140, 287.
Glee-man, 44.
Glen'coe, Massacre of, 270.
Gloster, Duke of, 159.
Gloucester (*glos'ter*), Duke of, Protector, 153, 154.
Gloucester, Earl of, 113.
God'win, Earl, 58, 59, 60, 61.
Good Duke Humphrey, 154.
Gordon, Lord George, 335.
Gordon, Charles George, General, 373 (*n*).
Gordon Riots, 335.
Goldsmith, Oliver, 343.
Goths, 24.
Gow'er, John, 133.
Go'zo, Appendix, 5.
Gra'ham of Claverhouse, 270.
Graham, General, 373.
Gram'pi-an Hills, 22.
Grand Alliance, 274, 276.
Grat'tan, 319.
Gray, Thomas, 343.
Gray, Elizabeth, 158.

Great Britain, Island of, 7.
Great Charter, 109, 111, 120, 139.
Great Commoner, The, 308.
Great Fire, 255.
Great Harry, 175.
Great Plague, 254.
Greece, Revolt of, 347.
Greek Language, 188, 214, 215 (*n*).
Greenhouses, 337.
Green'land, 284.
Greenwich Hospital, 280.
Greg'o-ry, Pope, 33.
Gren'ville, George, 310, 311.
Grey, Earl, 349.
Grey, Lady Jane, 192, 193, 194, 195 (*n*), 215.
Grey, Lord, 219, 220
Grote, George, 387.
Grouchy (*groo'she*), Marshal, 329.
Guernsey (*ghern'ze*) Island, 245.
Guiana (*ghe-ah'nah*), 222.
Guienne (*ghe-en'*), 86, 118.
Guilford Dudley, Lord, 192, 194.
Guinea (*ghin'e*), 283.
Guise (*gweez*), Duke of, 197.
Guise, Mary of, 186.
Gunpowder, 121.
Gunpowder Plot, 220.
Gurth, 65.
Guth'rum, 44, 45.
Guy Fawkes (*ghi fawks*), 220.

H

Ha'be-as Cor'pus Act, 259.
Had'ri-an, Emperor, 22.
Hadrian's Wall, 7, 23.
Hale, Sir Matthew, 262.
Hal'idown Hill, Battle of, 127.
Hallam, Henry, 384.
Halley, 288.
Hampden, John, 233, 234, 237.
Hampden, John (Grandson), 260.
Hampton Court, 182.
Handel, George Frederick, 341 (*n*).
Hanover, 293, 294, 295, 302, 303, 351.
Hanse Towns, 212.
Har'di-can-ute', 58, 59.
Har'fleur, 149.
Har'greaves, James, 337 (*n*).
Harold I. (Harefoot), 58.
Harold II., 61, 62, 63, 64, 65.
Harold Hardrada, 64.
Harry Percy (Hotspur), 147.
Harvey, 288.
Hastings, Battle of, 65.
Hastings the Dane, 46.
Hastings, Lord, 161.
Hastings, Warren, 315, 316 (*n*).
Hats and Caps, 141.
Ha-va'na, 309.
Hav'e-lock, General, 362.
Hawke, Admiral, 303.
Haw'kins, Admiral, 201, 283.
Heb'ri-des, 8.
Hel'i-go-land, Appendix, 4.
Hemans, Felicia D., 383.
Hen'gist and Horsa, 25, 28, 29.
Henrietta Maria, 224, 226.
Henry I. (Beauclerc), 81-84.
Henry II., 85, 95, 139.
Henry III., 111, 114.
Henry IV., 146, 148.
Henry V., 148, 149, 150.
Henry VI., 150, 153.
Henry VII., 171, 175.
Henry VIII., 175, 188, 214.
Henry IV., of France, 206.
Henry V., of Germany, 83.
Henry, Cardinal of York, 301 (*n*).
Henry, Duke of Lancaster, 137.
Henry Howard, Earl of Surrey, 187, 188.
Henry of Huntington, 92.
Henry (son of Henry II.), 101.
Henry (son of William I.), 77.
Henry Stuart, 202.
Henry Tudor, Earl of Richmond, 161, 162
Hep'tar-chy, 30, 34.
Her'rick, Robert, 289.
Herring Fisheries, 165, 166.
Herschel, Caroline L., 342 (*n*).
Herschel, Sir John F. W., 342 (*n*), 388.
Herschel, Sir William, 342 (*n*).
Hew'son, Colonel, 281.
Hey'wood, John, 215.
Hi-ber'ni-a, 8, 98.
Hicks, General, 372.
Highlanders, 270.
Highlands, 270.
Hin-do-stan', 354.
Ho'garth, William, 340 (*n*).
Holland, 205, 256, 257, 274, 299, 314.
Holyhead, 336.
"Holy Living and Dying," 289.

Home Rule, 369, 375.
Hong Kong, 354.
Hood, Thomas, 383.
Hooper, Bishop, 196.
Hooke, 288.
Horticulture, 141, 213.
Hotspur, 147.
House of Commons, 113, 118, 138, 148.
House of Keys, Appendix, 4.
House of Lords, Appendix, 1, 2.
Howard, Lord, 201.
Howard, William, Viscount Stafford, 259, 260.
Howe, General, 312.
Howe, Lord, 312, 317.
Hu'bert de Burgh, 111.
Hu'di-bras, 261, 281.
Huguenots (*hu'ghe-nots*), 226, 228.
Hull, 185, 235.
Hull, Captain, 327.
Hume, David, 344.
Humphrey, the Good Duke, 154.
Huns, 25.
Hunt, Henry, 330.
Hunter, John, 342.
Hutchinson, General, 320.
Huxley, Thomas H., 389.
Hyde, Anne, 251.
Hyde, Sir Edward, 251.
Hy'der Ali (*ah'le*), 315.

I

Independents, 229, 236, 239, 250.
India, 200, 304, 315.
Indian Mutiny, 361.
Industrial Arts, 337.
In'i-go Jones, 288.
Ingelow, Jean, 385.
Ink'er-man, Battle of, 359.
Innocent III., Pope, 107, 108.
Inns, 285.
Interludes, 215.
In-ver-ness', 300.
Invincible Armada, 201.
Ireland, 7, 8, 98, 206, 232, 244, 245, 271, 346, 350, 355, 356.
Ire'ton, 244, 245, 252.
Irish Church, 364.
Irish Coercion Bill, 350.
Irish Insurrection, 206, 232, 319, 321.
Irish Land Bill, 368, 369.
Irish Land League, 369, 370.
Iron Manufacture, 338.
Iron-clad War Steamers, 381.
Isabella, Queen, 125, 126, 128.
Istria, 104.
Italy, 317.

J

Jackson, General, 328.
Jack Cade, 154.
Jack Straw, 135.
Jac'o-bites, 274, 293.
Jaf'fa, 318.
Ja-mai'ca, 248.
James, Duke of York, 251, 254, 257, 258
James I., 219, 224, 284.
James II., 262, 267, 274.
James the Pretender, 265, 268, 271, 279, 293, 294.
James I., of Scotland, 151.
James IV., of Scotland, 174.
James V., of Scotland, 186.
James VIII., of Scotland, 300.
Jamestown, 221.
Jane Seymour, 185, 186.
Ja-pan', 363.
Java (*jah'vah*), 284.
Jeffrey, Lord, 384.
Jeffreys, Judge, 264.
Je'na, Battle of, 323.
Jen'ner, Edward, 342.
Jer'sey, Isle of, 245.
Je-ru'sa-lem, 80, 104.
Jews, 102, 103, 116, 380.
John Ball, 135.
Joan of Arc, 152.
John, of France, 130, 131, 132.
John of Gaunt, 134, 137, 138, 161.
John, Earl of Lincoln, 172.
John, King (Lackland), 101, 105, 106, 107, 108, 109, 110.
Johnson, General, 301.
Johnson, Samuel, 344.
Jones, Inigo, 288.
Jones, John Paul, 315 (*n*).
Jonson, Ben, 208, 289.
Joust, 90.
Judicial Combat, 91.
Judith, Wife of Ethelwolf, 42.
Jury, Trial by, 139.
Jutes, 31.

K

Keats, John, 382.
Ken'dall, Duchess of, 295 (*n*).
Ken'il-worth Castle, 125 (*n*), 214.
Kent, 8, 29.
Khar-toom', 373.
Kil-lie-crank'ie, Battle of, 270 (*n*).
Kim'bol-ton, Lord, 233.
"King James's Bible," 225.
King's College, 157.
King's Evil, 64.
Kingsley, Charles, 387.
King-Maker, The, 155.
Kin-sale', 271.
Kirke, Col., 263 (*n*).
Kirke's Lambs, 263.
Knighthood, 88.
Knight-Errant, 89.
Knights of the Round Table, 31.
Knight's Service, 251.
Knowles, James Sheridan, 384.
Knox, John, 202.
Knut the Great, 55, 56, 57.

L

Labuan (*lah-boo-an'*), Appendix, 7.
Lackland, John, 107.
Lady Anne, niece of Charles II., 260
La Hogue (*lōg*), Battle of, 273.
Lamb, Charles, 385.
Lambert Simnel, 172.
Lan'cas-ter, Duke of, 134.
Lancaster, Earl of, 123.
Landon, Letitia E., 383.
Lan-franc', 75, 79, 80.
Lang'ton, Stephen, 107, 108.
Lat'i-mer, Bishop, 189, 196.
Latin Language, 9.
Laud, Archbishop, 229, 240.
Lear, King, 11.
Learning, 69, 92, 142, 214.
Leeds, 284.
Legendary History of Britain, 13.
Leicester (*les'ter*), Earl of, 112, 113.
Leicester, Earl of (Dudley), 205, 214.
Leicester Abbey, 182.
Leipsic (*lipe'sik*), Battle of, 327.
Lent'hall, Speaker, 234.
Le'o-fric, Earl of Mercia, 61.
Leopold, Duke of Austria, 104.
Les'lie, Earl of Leven, 238.
Le vant', 283, 287. 355.
Lew'es, Battle of, 113.
Lexington, Battle of, 312.
Liberty of the Press, 286.
Light Brigade, Charge of, 358.
Ligny (*leen'ye*), Battle of, 329.
Lil-li-bu-le'ro, 266.
Limoges (*le-mozhe'*), 132.
Lincoln, 8.
Lindsay, Earl of, 228, 236.
Lin'dum, 8.
Lingard, John, 384.
Lion of Justice, 84.
Lis'bon, 324.
Lisle, Alice, 265.
Literature, English, 133, 142, 208, 261, 280, 289, 342, 382.
Liverpool, 284.
Livingstone, Dr., 365.
Llew-el'lyn (*loo-el'in*), 115.
Lochiel (*lok-heel'*), Cameron of, 300.
Loch-lev'in Castle, 203 (*n*).
Locke, John, 262.
Locomotive, 339.
Lollards, 146, 149.
Lombard Merchants, 165.
Lombe, Mr., 337.
Lon-din'i-um, 8.
London, 11, 22, 42, 69, 108, 284.
London Bridge, 81.
Londonderry, 271.
Long Parliament, 230.
Lord Protector, 247.
Lords, House of, 243, Appendix, 1, 2.
Louis VII., of France, 100.
Louis IX., of France, 110, 111, 113, 114.
Louis XI., of France, 158.
Louis XII., of France, 176, 177.
Louis XIV., of France, 254, 256, 267, 273
Louis XV., of France, 297.
Louis XVI., of France, 317, 328.
Louis XVIII., of France, 328.
Louis Philippe (*loo-e fe-leep'*), 356.
Louisburg, 299, 302.
Lov'at, Lord, 301 (*n*).
Luck-now', 361.
Lud'gate, 12.
Luther, Martin, 179.
Lyell, Sir Charles, 388.
Lytton, Lord (Bulwer), 387.

M

Ma-cau'lay, Thomas B., 386.
Mac-Ian, Chief of the Macdonalds, 270.
Mackintosh, Sir James, 380, 384.
Mad-ras', 284, 306.
Mag'da-la, 364.
Ma-gel'lan, 210.
Magna Charta, 108, 109, 111, 112, 120, 138.
Mah-di (*mah'de*), El, 372 (*n*).
Maid of Orleans, 153.
Maine, 77, 85, 154.
Ma-lac'ca, Appendix, 6.
Mal'a-koff, Taking of, 360.
Mal'colm, King of Scotland, 58, 74, 79.
Malplaquet (*mal-plah'ka*), Battle of, 277.
Malta (*mawl'tah*), Appendix, 4.
Mamelon, Taking of, 360.
Mam'e-lukes, 317.
Man, Isle of, 245.
Manchester, 284.
Manchester, Earl of, 238, 239.
Man'de-ville, Sir John, 133.
Manor-Houses, 168.
Mansfield, Lord, 235.
Manufactures, 165, 212, 286.
Mar, Earl of, 293, 294.
Marblehead, 312.
March, Earl of, 126.
Margaret of Anjou, 153, 156, 157, 158, 159.
Maria Theresa (*te-re'zah*), 297, 301.
Marl'bor-ough, Duke of, 266, 273, 276 (*n*), 277, 278 (*n*).
Marlborough, Duchess of, 276 (*n*), 279.
Marmont (*mar-mong'*), General, 326.
Marston Moor, Battle of, 238.
Mary, Queen, 194, 197–214.
Mary, Queen of Scots, 186, 190 (*n*), 201, 202, 203, 204 (*n*), 205, 215 (*n*).
Mary of Guise, 186.
Mary of Mo'de-na, 258.
Mary, Wife of William of Orange, 267, 273.
Maryland, 282.
Mas'ham, Mrs., 279 (*n*).
Mas-sa-chu'setts, 229, 282, 311.
Mas-se'na, General, 326.
Mas'sin-ger, Philip, 289.
Matilda, Wife of Henry I., 82, 93 (*n*).
Matilda (Plantagenet), 83, 85.
Matthews, Admiral, 299.
Maud the Good, 82, 93 (*n*).
Mauritius (*mau-rish'e-us*), Appendix, 10.
Maxima Cæ-sar'i-en-sis, 7.
Max-i-mil'i-an, Emperor, 176, 178.
Meagher, Thomas Francis, 356.
Medical Science, 342.
Mee'rut, 361.
Mehemet Ali (*ma'he-met ah'le*), 355.
Melbourne (*mel'burn*), Lord, 350.
Men'shi-koff, Prince, 358.
Mer'ci-a (*-she-ah*), 8, 30, 39, 42, 43, 45, 48, 56.
Merivale, Charles, 387.
Methodists, 334.
Mezzotint (*metz'o-tint*), 287.
Middle English, 142, 215.
Middlesex, 8, 29.
Mill, John Stuart, 387.
Miller, Hugh, 388.
Milton, John, 261 (*n*).
Min'den, Battle of, 303.
Minstrel, Dress of, 92.
Mints, Establishment of, 69.
Miracle Plays, 167.
Mississippi River, 313.
Mis-so-lon'ghi, 348.
Mitchell, John, 356.
Modern English, 215.
Mol-da'vi a, 357.
Mona, 21.
Monasteries, Suppression of, 183, 184, 185.
Monck'ton, Colonel, 302.
Monk, General, 245, 250, 251.
Monmouth, Duke of, 260, 262, 263.
Montcalm (*mont-kam'*), Marquis of, 302.
Montgomery, James, 383.
Mon-trose', Earl of, 240.
Moore, Sir John, 325.
Moore, Thomas, 382.
Moral Plays, 167.
Mordaunt, Charles, 277 (*n*).
More, Sir Thomas, 182, 184.
Morrison, General, 347.
Morse, 342.
Mortimer, Edmund, 146.
Mortimer, Roger, 125, 126.
Mowbray, Philip de, 124 (*n*).
Murray, Regent of Scotland, 203.
Music, 341.
Mutiny of the Scottish Troops, 269.
Mutiny Bill, 269.
Mysteries, 167.

N

Nan-kin′, 354.
Na′pi-er, Sir Charles, Admiral, 355 (*n*), 357.
Napier, Sir Charles James, 354 (*n*).
Napier, Sir Robert, 364.
Napier, Sir William F. P., 354 (*n*).
Na-po′le-on Bonaparte, 317, 318, 319, 322, 326, 327, 328, 329.
Nase′by, Battle of, 239.
Na′tal, Appendix, 9.
National Debt, 275 (*n*).
Naval Signals, 268.
Navigation, 210, 282, 335.
Navigation Laws, 246, 356.
Navarino (*nah-vah-re′no*), Battle of, 347.
Navy, British, 175, 212, 268.
Nelson, Lord, 317, 318, 320, 321 (*n*), 322 (*n*).
Nena Sahib (*sah-eeb′*), 362.
Ne′ro, Emperor, 21.
Netherlands, 201, 212, 256.
Neville's Cross, Victory of the English at, 129.
Newark, 240.
Newbury, Battle of, 237, 238.
New Brunswick, Appendix, 11.
New Castle, 230.
Newcastle, Marquis of, 238.
New England, 225, 229, 245, 282.
New Forest, 75.
New′found-land, 313.
New Netherland, 254.
New Or′leans, Battle of, 328.
New Troy, 11.
New York, 313.
Newspapers, 268, 285, 286.
Newton, Sir Isaac, 288, 295.
Nicholas, Czar, 357.
Nightingale, Florence, 360 (*n*).
Nile, Battle of the, 318.
Non-jurors, 269.
Norfolk, 8, 29.
Norfolk Island, Appendix, 8.
Norman Barons, 87, 95, 102.
Norman Conquest, 66, 77, 86.
Normandy, 76, 77, 82, 83, 85, 107.
Norman French, 10.
Normans, 61, 65, 66, 92.
North America, 175.
Northampton, Battle of, 155.
North, Lord, 311, 312.
Northmen, 40.
Northumberland, Duke of, 192, 194.
Northumberland, Earl of, 147.
Northumbria, 8, 29, 39, 42, 45, 48, 49, 56, 74.
Norwegians, 40, 52.
Norwich (*nor′ridge*), 284.
Not′ting-ham, 236.
Nottingham, Countess of, 207 (*n*).
Nova Scotia, 302.

O

Oath of Supremacy, 348 (*n*).
O'Brien, William Smith, 356.
O'Connell, Daniel, 348, 350, 355.
O'do, Archbishop, 69.
O'gle-thorpe, General, 297 (*n*).
Oil-cloth, 287.
O'laf, or Anlaf, 52, 53, 56.
Opium War, 354.
Orangemen, 319.
Ordeal, Saxon, 67, 91.
Ordnance, 381.
Organzine Thread, 337 (*n*).
Orkney Isles, 8, 201.
Orleans, 152.
Orleans, Duchess of, 257.
Orthography, English, 167.
Os′so-ry, Lord, 284 (*n*).
Os-to′ri-us, 21.
Otho, Prince of Bavaria, 347.
Ot′ter-bourne, 147.
Ottoman Empire, 357.
Ot′way, Thomas, 262.
Oude (*owd*), 361.
Ou′de-nar-de, Battle of, 277.
Overbury, Sir Thomas, 223.
Oxford, 240.
Oxford, University of, 46.

P

Page, Knight's, 89.
Paine, Thomas, 333 (*n*).
Painters, 340.
Pakenham (*pak′n-am*), General, 328.
Pal′es-tine, 102, 103, 114.
Palmer, or Pilgrim, 92.
Panama, Isthmus of, 297.
Palmerston (*pam′er-stun*), Lord, 359.
" Paradise Lost," Milton's, 261.
Paris, 328.
Paris, Treaty of, 310, 313.
Parker, Sir Hyde, 330.

Parliament, 113, 121, 139, 209, 223, 267, 279 332, 365, Appendix, 1.
Parliamentary Reform, 330, 332, 348, 349, 350 (*n*), 364.
Parnell, Charles Stewart, 369, 375.
Paterson, William, 275 (*n*).
Pa'vi-a, Battle of, 180.
Paxton, Sir Joseph, 357.
Peasantry, Condition of, 213.
Peel, Sir Robert, 356 (*n*), 357.
Pe-gu' (*-goo*), 357.
Pekin, 363.
Pelissier (*pa-lis'e-a*), General, 359.
Pembroke, Earl of, 111.
Pe-nang', Appendix, 6.
Peninsular War, 324, 325.
Penn, Admiral, 248.
Penn, William, 282.
Pennsylvania, 282.
Percy, Harry, 147.
Perkin Warbeck, 173, 174.
Persia, 363.
Peter, Bishop of Winchester, 112.
Peterborough, Earl of, 277 (*n*).
Petition of Right, 227.
Phil-a-del'phi-a, 313.
Phil'i-bert, Duke of Savoy, 197.
Philip I., of France, 76.
Philip II., of France, 101, 102, 103, 105, 107, 108.
Philip IV., of France, 118.
Philip VI., of France, 128.
Philip II., of Spain, 194, 196, 199, 201, 205.
Philip, Duke of Anjou, 274.
Phil-ip'pa, Queen, 126, 129.
Phil'ip-pine Islands, 309.
Philosopher's Stone, 166.
Phœnix Park Murder, 370.
Picts, 24, 28.
Pilgrimage of Grace, 185.
"Pilgrim's Progress," Bunyan's, 261.
Pillory, 298 (*n*).
Pins, Making of, 213.
Pitt, William, Earl of Chatham, 302, 303, 308 (*n*), 311.
Pitt, William, the Younger, 316, 319 (*n*), 321, 322, 323 (*n*).
Plague (Black Death), 130.
Parliament, Consent of, 139, 151.
Plague, the Great, 254.
Plains of Abraham, Battle of, 302
Plantagenet, Geoffrey, 83.
Plantagenet, Origin of Name, 88 (*n*).
Plantagenets, Last of the, 174.
Plas'sey, Battle of, 306.
Pleasure Gardens, 213.
Plymouth, North America, 225.
Poet Laureate, 289 (*n*).
Poitiers (*poi-teerz'*), Battle of, 131.
Poitou (*pwah-too'*), 86.
Pole, Cardinal, 195, 197.
Pollok, Robert, 383.
Pon-di-cher'ry (*-sher-*), 307.
Pope, Alexander, 280.
Popish Plot, 258.
Population of England, 7, 78.
Population of London, 284.
Porto Bello, 297.
Portsmouth, Duchess of, 257.
Por'tu-gal, 324.
Portuguese, 245, 304.
Postal Service, 285.
Potatoes, 214, 337.
Pottery and Porcelain, 339.
Pottinger, Sir Henry, 354.
Praise-God Barebone, 247.
Prerogatives, Royal, Appendix, 3.
Presbyterianism, 270.
Presbyterians, 241, 250, 252, 281.
Press, the, 286.
Preston Pans, Battle of, 300.
Pride's Purge, 241.
Prince Albert, 353, 357, 365.
Prince Edward Island, Appendix, 11.
Prince Eugene, 276 (*n*), 277.
Prince Imperial, 368.
Prince of Wales Island, Appendix, 6.
Prince of Wales, Title of, 116.
Prince Rupert. See *Rupert.*
Prince Rupert's Drop, 287.
Printing, 160, 166, 381.
Privy Council, Appendix, 3.
Proctor, Richard A., 389.
Prorogation of Parliament, Appendix, 2 3
Protector, 247.
Protestants, 195, 200 (*n*), 206.
Prussia (*proo'she-ah*), 320.
Pun-jab' or Punjawb (*-jawb*), 354.
Puritans, 199, 225, 253, 282.
Pym, John, 233.
Pyramids, Battle of the, 318.
Pyrenees, Battles of the, 327.

Q

Quakers, 281.
Que-bec′, 302.
Queen of the Northern Seas, 199.
Queen's Jubilee, 375.
Queen's Ware, 339.

R

Radicals, 333.
Raglan, Lord, 358, 359.
Raikes, Robert, 334.
Railways, 339.
Raleigh (*raw′le*), Sir Walter, 200, 214, 220, 221, 222.
Ram′il-lies, Battle of, 277.
Ran-goon′, 347.
Re-dan′, Taking of, 360.
Reformation, English, 184 (*n*), 189.
Religion, 333, 380.
Religious Persecution, 282.
Restoration, 251.
Revenue of Queen Elizabeth, 210.
Revolution of 1688, 268.
Reynolds, Sir Joshua, 340 (*n*).
Rheims (*reemz*), 152.
Richard I., 102, 106.
Richard II., 134, 137.
Richard III., 161, 162.
Richard de Clare (Strongbow), 100.
Richard, Duke of Gloster, 159, 160.
Richard, Duke of York, 154, 155, 156.
Richard, Son of William I., 77.
Richardson, 344.
Richard Neville, 155 (*n*).
Richard Scrope, 147.
Richelieu (*reesh′e-lu*), 227, 230.
Richmond, Duchess of, 187 (*n*).
Richmond, Earl of, 161, 162.
Ridley, Bishop, 191, 196.
Rivers, Lord, 161.
Rizzio (*reet′se-o*), 203.
Roads, 285, 339.
Robert, Duke of Normandy, 76, 79, 81, 82.
Robert II., of Scotland, 134.
Robert, Earl of Essex, 205, 206, 208.
Robertson, William, 344.
Roberts, General, 367.
Rochelle (*ro-shel′*), 226, 228.
Rod′ney, Admiral, 303, 315.
Roger Ascham, 193, 215.
Roger Bacon, 121, 141.
Roger Mortimer, 125, 126.
Rogers, John, 195.
Rogers, Samuel, 383.
Romans, 15, 20, 21, 22, 25, 26.
Rome, 180.
Romilly, Sir Samuel, 380.
Rooke, Sir George, 276.
Root-and-Branch Men, 239.
Rosamond Clifford, 100.
Rosetta Stone, 320.
Rouen (*roo′en*), 152.
Roundheads, 233, 236, 281.
Ro-we′na, 28.
Royal Academy of Arts, 340.
Royalists, 236, 246, 250, 252.
Royal Oak, 245.
Royal Society for the Promotion of Science, 288.
Royal Wool Merchant, 141.
Ru′bens, 288.
Runnymede, 109.
Ru′pert, Prince, 236, 237, 238, 240, 254, 258, 287.
Rushes, 67, 287.
Ruskin, John, 388.
Russell, Admiral, 273.
Russell, Lord John, 349.
Russell, Lord William, 260.
Russia (*roo′she-ah*), 197, 211 (*n*), 314, 320, 357, 374.
Rye-House Plot, 259.
Rys′wick, Treaty of, 274.

S

Sabbath, Observance of, 225, 229.
Sackville, Lord, 303.
Sailor King, 348.
St. Alban (*awl′ban*), 26.
St. Alban's, 8.
St. Alban's, Battle of, 155.
St. Alban's, Second Battle of, 156.
St. Arnaud (*ar′no*), General, 358 (*n*), 359.
St. Au-gus-tine′ (*-teen*), 33.
St. Brice, Massacre of, 53.
St. Dunstan, 49, 69.
St. George, Chevalier de, 279.
St. George, Fort, 304.
St. Germains (*zher-mang′*), 267, 268.
St. He-le′na, 284, 329.
St. John, Minister to Holland, 246.
St. Patrick, 99.

St. Paul's Cathedral, 255 (*n*), 288, 340.
St. Quen'tin, Battle of, 197.
St. Thomas of Canterbury, 186.
Sal'a-din, 104.
Salamanca, Battle of, 327.
Sa'lem, 311.
Salem Witchcraft, 282.
Sal'ic Law, 128.
Salisbury (*salz'ber-re*), Lord, 374, 375.
San'croft, Archbishop, 265.
Sandwich, Earl of, 254, 284.
Sar'a-cens, 104.
Sar-a-to'ga, 313.
Sar-a-wak', Appendix, 7.
Saunders, 196.
Saxe (*sax*), Marshal, 299.
Saxon Heptarchy, 30.
Saxons, 23, 24, 25, 28, 32, 74 (*n*)
Scandinavian Language, 9.
Schomberg (*shom-*), Marshal, 272.
Schools, 69, 167, 365.
Science, 69, 141, 166, 288, 341, 381.
Scilly (*sil'ly*), Islands, 277.
Scinde (*sind*), 354.
Scone, 119, 244 (*n*).
Scotch Soldiers, Mutiny of, 269.
Scotland, 7, 116, 118, 119, 122, 123, 134, 151, 186, 237, 244, 278, 279.
Scots, 24, 28, 30, 117, 118, 122, 126, 129, 147, 177, 190, 240, 243.
Scots and Picts, 24, 25, 28.
Scott, Sir Walter, 383.
Scottish Reformers, 202.
Scrope, Richard, 147.
Se-bas-to'pol, 258 (*n*), 360.
Security, Act of, 278.
Sedgemoor, Battle of, 263.
Self-denying Ordinance, 239.
Semi-Saxon, 142.
Sen'lac, Battle of, 65.
Serfdom, 136, 139, 164.
Serfs, Saxon, 88, 92, 139.
Seven Years' War, 302, 310.
Se-ve'rus, Emperor, 23.
Seychelle (*sa-sheel'*) Islands, Appendix, 10.
Seymour, Admiral, 371.
Seymour, Jane, 185, 186.
Seymour, Lord, 190.
Shakspeare, 11, 12, 163, 208, 216, 289.
Sheffield, 284, 338.
Sheil, Richard, 348.
Shelley, Percy Bysshe, 382.
Sheppy, Isle of, 42.
Sheridan, 316.
Ship Money, 226.
Shiremote, 67.
Shires, 67.
Shovel, Sir Cloudesley, 277.
Shrewsbury, Battle of, 147.
Sicily, Attempted Conquest of, 112.
Sidney, Algernon, 260.
Sidney, Sir Philip, 205, 208.
Sierra Leone, Appendix, 10.
Sikhs (*siks*), 354.
Silk Manufacture, 165, 337.
Simnel, Lambert, 172.
Simon de Montfort, 112.
Simon, Priest, 171, 172.
Simpson, General, 359.
Sin-ga-pore', Appendix, 6.
Siward, Earl of Northumbria, 61.
Slave-trade, 283, 350 (*n*).
Slavery, 139.
Slavery, Abolition of, 350 (*n*), 351.
Smith, Sir Sidney, 318.
Smollett, 344.
So-bi-es'ki, John, 294.
Society of United Irishmen, 319.
Solway Moss, Battle of, 186.
Somerset, Duke of, 189, 190, 191, 192.
Somerset, Earl of, 222.
Sophia, 278.
Sophia Dorothe'a, 295 (*n*).
Soo-dan', or Soo-dan', 372, 373, 374.
Soult (*soolt*), Marshal, 325, 327.
South America, 222.
South Sea Scheme, 294.
Southey, Robert, 383.
Spain, 176, 222, 226, 248, 309, 314, 324, 325, 347.
Spanish Colonies, 347.
Spanish Netherlands, 256 (*n*).
Spanish Succession, War of, 276.
Spencer, Herbert, 388.
Spenser, Edmund, 208.
Spenser, or Despenser, 124.
Spices, 284.
Spinning-Jenny, 337.
Spinster, 68.
Spitz-ber'gen, 284.
Stafford, Viscount, 259.
Stage, The, 216.

Stage-coaches, 285.
Stamford Bridge, Battle of, 64.
Stamp Act, 310.
Standard, Battle of the, 85.
Standing Army, 267.
Stan'hope, Lord, 295.
Stanley, Lord, 163.
Stanley, Sir William, 163.
Star Chamber, 209, 228, 232.
Steam Engine, 336, 338.
Steam Navigation, 336.
Steele, Sir Richard, 280.
Stephen, of Blois, 84, 85, 86.
Stephen Langton, 107, 108.
Stephenson, George, 339, 340 (*n*).
Sterling Money, 121 (*n*).
Sterne, Laurence, 344.
Stilicho (*stil'e-ko*), 24.
Stirling, 118, 122.
Stocks, 298 (*n*).
Stoke, 172.
Stone of Destiny, 115 (*n*).
Stonehenge, 19 (*n*).
Strafford, Earl of, 229, 230, 231.
Strathclyde, 8, 9, 31, 39.
Strongbow (Richard de Clare), 100.
Stuart, General, 374.
Stuart, Henry, 202.
Stuart, Robert, of Scotland, 134.
Stuarts, 287, 288.
Sue-to'ni-us (*swe-*), 21, 22.
Suez (*soo'ez*) Canal, 366.
Suffolk, 8, 29.
Suffolk, Duke of, 154.
Somerset, Duke of, 154.
Sunday Law, 229.
Sunday Schools, Establishment of, 334.
Supremacy, Act of, 198.
Su-ra'jah Dow'lah, 306.
Su-rat', 221.
Surrey, Earl of, 177, 187, 188.
Sussex, 8, 29.
Sweden, 256, 314, 320.
Sweyn (*swane*), King, 53, 54.
Sweyn, Son of Canute, 58.
Sweyn, Son of Earl Godwin, 61.
Swift, Jonathan, 280, 307, 308, 341.
Swinburne, Algernon C., 386.
Syria, 318, 355.

T

Tal-a-ve'ra, Battle of, 325.
Talfourd, Thomas Noon, 384.
Ta'ra, 99, 355.
Tas-ma'nia, Appendix, 8.
Taylor, 196.
Taylor, Jeremy, 289.
Tea, 284.
Tea, Tax on, 311.
Telegraph, Electric, 381.
Telephone, 381.
Telescope, Herschel's, 342.
Temple, Sir William, 256.
Te-nas'se-rim, 347.
Ten'ny-son, Alfred, 385.
Test Act, 258, 265.
Tewks'bury, Battle of, 159.
Thack'e-ray, William M., 387.
Thane, law concerning, 49.
Thanes, 67.
Theaters, 216.
Than'et Island, 25, 28, 42.
Theodore, King, 363, 364.
The-o-do'sius (*-she-us*), 24.
Thistlewood, 345.
Thomas à Becket, 95, 96, 97, 98.
Thomson, James, 308, 343.
Thur'kill, 56.
Tiles, used for Roofs, 140.
Til'sit, Treaty of, 323.
Tin, 15.
Titus, Colonel, 249.
Titus Oates, 258.
Tobacco, 214, 284.
Toleration Act, 270.
Tonnage and Poundage, 226 (*n*).
Torbay, 266.
Tor'res Ve'dras, 326.
Tostig, 63, 64.
Tou-raine', 85.
Tournaments, 90.
Tou-louse', Battle of, 327.
Tours, 85.
Tower of London, 161.
Tow'ton, Battle of, 157.
Trade, Board of, 284.
Trade with American Colonies, 282.
Traf-al-gar', Battle of, 322.
Transvaal Republic, 366.
Traveling, 285.
Trial by Jury, 139.

Trin'i-dad, Appendix, 12.
Trinity College, Cambridge, 188.
Triple Alliance, 256.
Tris'tan d'Acunha (*dah-koon'yah*), Appendix, 10.
Trojan Kings of Britain, 12.
Troubadours, 106.
Troyes (*trwah*), Treaty of, **149.**
Tudor, Henry, 161, **171.**
Tudor, Sir Owen, 161.
Tudors, 208.
Tu'rin, 277.
Turkey, 212, 283, 355.
Turnpikes, 285.
Tyn'dale, William, **188.**
Tyndall, John, 388.
Tyr-con'nel, 271.
Tyrrel, Walter, 80.

U

Ulm, Battle of, 322.
Uniformity, Act of, 198, 252.
Union of England and Ireland, 319.
Union of England and Scotland, 278, 279.
United States, 313, 327, 336, 356.
University of London, 381.
University of Oxford, 46.
U'ra-nus, Discovery of, 342.
U'trecht, Treaty of, 277, 279.

V

Vaccination, 342.
Vagabonds, Laws against, **213** (*n*).
Va-len'tia (*-she-ah*), 7.
Val-en-tin'i-an I., 24.
Van Die'men's Land, Appendix, 8.
Van Dyke, 288.
Vane, Sir Henry, 237, 239.
Van Tromp, Admiral, 246, 247.
Varlet, 89.
Var'na, 359.
Vassalage, 77.
Ven'a-bles, Admiral, 248.
Ver'non, Admiral, 297.
Ver-u-la'mi-um, 8.
Vicarius, Roman officer, 26.
Victoria, Queen, 351 (*n*), 389.
Victoria, Province of, Appendix, 8.
Vi-en'na, Congress of, 328.
Villiers (*vil'yerz*), George, Duke of Buckingham, 223, 224, 226, 227.
Villains, Saxon, **88.**
Villanage, **136, 164.**
Vimeira (*ve-ma'e-rah*), **Battle of, 324.**
Virginia, 200, 221.
Vit-to'ri-a, Battle of, 327.
Vor'ti-gern, 25, 28, 29.

W

Wa'gram, Battle of, 326.
Wakefield, Battle of, 156.
Wales, 8, 29, 115.
Walker, Defender of Londonderry, 272.
Wallace, William, 118, 119.
Wal-la'chi-a, 357.
Wal'ler, Sir William, 238, **239.**
Wallis, 288.
Walpole, Horace, 344.
Walpole, Sir Robert, 295, **296, 298.**
Walter Tyr'rel, 80.
Waltham, 66.
Wal'worth, Mayor of London, **136.**
War of the Roses, 155, 163, 164.
Warbeck, Perkin, 173.
Warwick (*war'rik*), Earl of, **155, 156, 157,** 158.
Warwick, Earl of, Duke of Northumberland, 191, 192.
Warwick, Earl of (son of Clarence), **171,** 172, 174.
Washington, George, 301, **312.**
Watling Street, 45.
Wat Tyler, 135, 136.
Watson, Admiral, 306.
Waterloo, Battle of, 329.
Watt, James, 338 (*n*).
Watts, Isaac, 308, 334.
Wedgwood, Josiah, 339 (*n.*)
Wel'les-ley (*welz'le*), Sir Arthur. See *Wellington.*
Wellesley, Province, Appendix, 6.
Wel'ling-ton, Duke of, 324 (*n*), **325, 327,** 328, 329, 356.
Welsh, 10, 31, 63.
Wentworth, Sir Thomas, 226, 229.
Wesley, John, 334.
Wessex, 8, 29.
West Indies, 283, 309.
Westminster Abbey, **26, 34, 63.**
Westminster Hall, 81.
West Wales, 31.
Whale Ships, 284.

Whewell, William, 388.
White Rose of England, 173.
White Tower, 173 (*n*).
Whitefield, George, 334.
Whitehall, 182, 288.
Whittington, 165.
Wickliffe, John, 133, 138, 142.
Wight, Isle of, 241.
Wilberforce, William, 350 (*n*), 351.
Wilkes, John, 310.
William I., 72, 73, 74, 75, 76.
William II., 78, 79, 80, 81.
William III., 267, 274, 275.
William IV., 349–351.
William, Duke of Guienne, 80.
William Fitz Robert, 83.
William of Malmesbury, 92.
William of Normandy, 61, 62, 64, 65.
William, Prince (son of Henry I.), 83.
William, Prince of Orange, 258 (*n*), 266, 267.
William, King of Scotland, 100.
William and Mary, 267, 269.
Winchester, 75 (*n*), 81.
Wind'ham, William, 316.
Witchcraft, 282.
Wit-en-ag'e-môt, 66.
Wolfe, General, 302, 303, 308.
Wolseley (*woolz'le*), Sir Garnet, 366, 367, 371, 372, 373, 374.
Wolsey (*wool'ze*), Cardinal, 177 178, 179, 181, 182, 188.
Wolves, Extirpation of, 51.
Wool, 69, 133, 141, 160, 165.
Worcester, City of, 59, 236.
Worcester, Battle of, 245.
Wordsworth, William, 383.
World's Fair, 357.
Wren, Sir Christopher, 255, 288.
Writing-Room, 92, 142.
Wy'att, Sir Thomas, 188, 194.
Wych'er-ley, 262.

Y

Yar'mouth, 166.
York, 42, 185.
York, Duke of, Richard, 154.
York, Duke of (son of Edward IV.), 166.
York, Duke of, James II., 251, 254, 257 258.
Yorktown, 313.
Young, Edward, 342.
Young Ireland Party, 356

Z

Zu'lus, or Zoo'loos, 367.
Zut'phen, Battle of, 205 (*n*).